PRINCIPLES

OF

MILITARY MOVEMENTS,

CHIEFLY APPLIED TO INFANTRY.

ILLUSTRATED

By MANOEUVRES of the PRUSSIAN Troops,

AND BY AN

OUTLINE of the BRITISH CAMPAIGNS in GERMANY,
during the WAR of 1757.

TOGETHER WITH

An APPENDIX, containing a practical ABSTRACT of the Whole.

BY COLONEL DAVID DUNDAS.

LONDON;

PRINTED FOR

T. CADELL, IN THE STRAND.

M.DCC.LXXXVIII.

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

To the KING;

THIS WORK,

HUMBLY OFFERED IN THE HOPE OF ITS
PROVING IN SOME DEGREE
USEFUL TO HIS MAJESTY'S SERVICE,

IS,

WITH THE MOST PROFOUND RESPECT,

INSCRIBED,

BY HIS MAJESTY'S
DUTIFUL
SUBJECT AND SERVANT,

DAVID DUNDAS.

PREFACE.

THE want of uniformity, of method, and of regulation, in the movements of the BRITISH troops has been long felt, the attendant bad conſequences too apparent, and the remedy earneſtly and univerſally deſired.

There may have been times when an army in theſe countries was eſteemed dangerous to liberty, but it is now conſidered as indiſpenſably neceſſary to retain empire, and has become ſo interwoven with the conſtitution, ſupport of government and the welfare of the whole, that although its apparent exiſtence is only annual, it may be looked upon as permanent, ought to be cheriſhed, and its improvement ſhould be cultivated to the higheſt extent—From the low eſtabliſhment of this army in time of peace, we labour under every diſadvantage at the commencement of a war. Beſides well founded apprehenſions for home, our foreign poſſeſſions are at ſuch time in the moſt imminent danger from an enterprizing enemy, for we then are but ill enabled to detach a conſiderable body of formed troops to their aſſiſtance: ſhips alone cannot protect them, nor can ſhips alone attempt any conſiderable conqueſt.

On the policy or neceſſity of ſuch a ſituation when the reſt of Europe remains in an armed ſtate, we preſume not to decide—But the lower the ordinary numbers of our army are, the higher ought to be the diſcipline which inſpires it, the more exact ſhould be the ſyſtem of uniformity which directs it, and the deeper ought to be the foundations laid, for its immediate increaſe and quick training when war breaks out. Under theſe ideas are the MILITIA of England juſtly included, on whoſe numbers and ſpirit their country has ſo full and ſo deſerved a reliance—they have no time to employ in attending to the ſhowy and leſs eſſential parts of parade, which have been ſo much cultivated. To them ſhould the moſt ſimple, moſt eſſential, and moſt univerſal modes be minutely pointed out, of performing that ſervice which the very beginning of a war may require from them.

Conſiderable improvements have taken place in the general tactique within theſe few years; and while the other nations of Europe have endeavoured to copy the leſſons of the great maſters, moſt of the alterations that we have made are not for the better; more founded on particular fancy, and caprice, than on the uniform, comprehenſive, and immutable principles which ſhould ever direct the operations of great bodies, and of their component parts. Our ſoldiers are active and brave, our officers intelligent and willing, much good internal œconomy exiſts in our infantry; many of our battalions are individually well drilled, but no ſyſtem regulates or connects their joint exertions. During the late war, the annual encampments formed in the different parts of England offered the moſt favourable opportunity of eſtabliſhing uniformity of diſcipline in all its branches. It is only to be regretted that no ſuch attempt was made; that a proper direction was not given to much laudable zeal, and good diſpoſition; and that we concluded as we began, leaving every one in a great meaſure to follow his own mode and imagination.

After a ſervice of many years in varied ſituations, of much regimental practice, and of five campaigns in the war of 1760—a thorough conviction of the want, and of the neceſſity of a permanent and general ſyſtem of diſcipline in the Britiſh army has now induced the writer to purſue in part, ſo deſireable an object: he has only to lament his inability to execute it in a manner more clear and ſatisfactory. He has endeavoured to avail himſelf of information wherever he could find it, and flatters himſelf that he has not been unſucceſsful in pointing out many of the principles and reaſons on which the Pruſſian practice is founded. In this he has been more particularly inſtructed and aſſiſted by the invaluable work of General Von Saldern, and from the opportunities he had in 1785 of attending the Pruſſian exerciſes, which have enabled him to reviſe and correct what he had long before more imperfectly arranged. In a work of this kind repetition is unavoidable, often neceſſary, and ſhould be excuſed; much inaccuracy, he relies, will not be found. His language he preſumes not to defend, and truſts it will not be made the object of criticiſm; if it ſuffices to convey clear and diſtinct ideas of his ſubject, its other defects he hopes will be overlooked.

The formation of the officer and ſoldier is his profeſſed deſign: the preparation of the materials with which the general is to act his great object: the elements of movement, and the circumſtances connected with them, have principally claimed his attention. The abſolute neceſſity of uniformity, and unity of ſyſtem he has endeavoured to incultate and demonſtrate. He has avoided as much as poſſible going beyond his preſcribed line, or entering on the higher ſcenes of ſervice. He preſumes not to deal out leſſons to the general, but at the ſame time muſt remark, and means to enforce that a practical and ready knowledge of the detail, and execution of all poſſible movements of the troops, ought to be the firſt and leading ſtudy of all ranks, and is indiſpenſable in the general as well as in the ſoldier; otherwiſe his application of them to ſituation and cir-

cumſtances will be accidental and inaccurate.—Our ſervice in time of peace affords too few opportunities of extenſive practice; in time of war it is dangerous, and too late to make experiments; our regulations ſhould therefore be the more pointed, explicit, and prepared for that event.

The general ſyſtem hereafter laid down is as far as the writer's knowledge extends, taken from that followed by the great armies of Europe, and of its excellence there can be no doubt. This attempt at its explanation may perhaps appear prolix; but in a work of this kind, where it is wiſhed to convince as well as to lay down precept, an aſſent to its propriety can only flow from a full poſſeſſion of the principles on which it is founded. If it poſſeſſes no other merit, it has however that of the moſt ardent zeal, and earneſt deſire to promote the honour, and enſure the ſuperiority of His Majesty's arms. But ſhould it alſo in the ſmalleſt degree tend—to put an end to the uncertain practices of our ſervice; the prevalence of review ſhow; of looſe deſultory movements, and conſequent unconnected ſupport; of want of ſolidity, &c. &c.: to convince officers, that partial modes are incompatible with that general uniformity which alone invigorates and gives energy to the collective body: to recall and fix the attention of the troops to the great and immutable principles that ſhould ever direct their movements; and ſhould it be found to point out in any degree thoſe principles and their practical application, the warmeſt wiſhes of the writer will be moſt amply gratified.

CONTENTS.

Page

INTRODUCTION.

REVIVAL of military ſcience — 1
Modern improvements — — 2
Former and preſent State of { Cavalry - 4, Artillery - 6, Infantry - 7
Pruſſian principles and ſyſtem — — 8
Defects of Britiſh practice - — — 11
Light troops { Foreign, Britiſh } — — 13
Situation of the general officer — — 15
Advantages of an eſtabliſhed ſyſtem — 17
General heads — — — — 18

PRINCIPLES of MOVEMENT.

General principles - — — — 21
Movements made on fixed points - — 22
Application of movements - — — 23
Words of command - — — — 27

Page

Signals — — — — — 28
Muſic, drums, &c. - — — — 29

Points of { March — — — — 29, Formation — — — 30, Appui — — — — 31

Of the ALIGNEMENT.

Points fixed in the alignement — — 32
Intermediate points determined - — 33
Points aſcertained, Line prolonged } by adjutants - — 34

INSTRUCTION of OFFICER and RECRUIT.

Officer — — — — — 36
Recruit — — — — — 37

General

Page

General attentions of inſtructor - — 38
Poſition — — — — 39
Of the march in front - — — 40
——— march in file — — 44
——— oblique march — — 45
——— ſide march - — — 46
——— halting / dreſſing - — — 47
——— wheeling - — — 48
Diſtance of { files / ranks } - — — 50

Of the COMPANY.

Its compoſition and formation - — 56

Of the BATTALION.

Its compoſition and formation - — 59
Mode of inſtruction — — — 65
Attentions in exerciſe - —. — 66
Attentions of general officers at reviews, &c. 67

Of the COLUMN. 69

Of the OPEN COLUMN.

General circumſtances attending the open column — — — 70

The BATTALION in OPEN COLUMN.

When the battalion breaks to a flank - 75
Entry and march in the alignement - 76
Halt, formation in line, and dreſſing - 79
When the rear of the column files to enter the alignement — — — 83
When the column forms line on a { rear / central } alignement - 84
Countermarch of the column { Of diviſions ſingly - 86 / Of the wings — — 87 / Of the battalion on the center — — 89
Taking diſtances from the rear - — ib.

Page

The LINE in OPEN COLUMN.

General march in column - — — 91
March in the alignement - — — 92
Formation of the line from column — 93
Arrival of a conſiderable column in the alignement - — — — ib.
Entry of the rear battalions of the column into the alignement when the head halts - — — — 94
Arrival of ſeveral columns in the alignement - — — — 95
March and formation of Pruſſian infantry ib.

CHANGES of POSITION in the LINE.

General principles — — — 96
General mode of changing poſition — 97
The line breaks to the directing diviſion.
General ſituation of the open column to form in line - — — 98
Relative poſitions { parallel / interſecting } — 99
Taking a new poſition on a central diviſion 100
Forming when the central diviſion is moveable - — — — 101
General attentions in change of poſition 104
Change of poſition by the diagonal march of diviſions - — — 105
Situations which require the excluſive movements of the open column — 106
Neceſſity of wheeling diviſions backwards into column — — — ib.
Wheel in the column of march — 107

Of the CLOSE COLUMN.

General circumſtances attending the cloſe column — — — — 109
Cloſe column when formed from { line / open column } — 111
Forming the battalion from cloſe column on the - { Front / Rear / Central } { diviſion of the column } - 112

Form-

Page

Forming the line from a conſiderable cloſe column — — — 116
Formations of two columns into line to the - { front / flanks / rear } of the march - 118
Formation in two lines of ſeveral columns } 119
Formation from ſeveral columns — }
Pruſſian movements in 1785 — 121

Movements of the Battalion in front.

When to march - — — 127
——— halt — — — 129
——— dreſs — — — ib.
——— incline — — — 130
——— alter the direction of the march } 131
——— retire — — }
——— front — — }
Paſs an obſtacle — — — ib.
When the battalion wheels on a flank backward or forward — — 133
——— Paſſage of lines - — 134
Reforming the firſt line { parallel / oblique } — 135
Refuſing a wing - — — ib.

Movements of the Line in front.

When to march in front — — 136
——— halt } - — — 140
——— dreſs }
——— retire — — — 141
——— front }
——— paſs obſtacles } — — 142
——— incline }
Pruſſian movements in line - — 143

Page

Of the Echellon.

General application and movements of the echellon for the battalion and line - 144
Attack in echellon from the { parallel line / oblique line / column - } 152
Movement in line and echellon — — 155
Pruſſian movements in echellon — — ib.

Of Second Lines.

General rules in the movements of ſecond lines - — — — — 156
Change of poſition of ſecond lines — 160

Passage of Lines.

Paſſage of the firſt line through the ſecond 164
Reforming the firſt line - — — 166
Throwing back a wing after paſſing — 168
Retiring a line and marching on the enemy's flank — — — — 170
March and oblique formation on an enemy's flank - — — — 171
Inverſion in line, and Pruſſian movement 172

Of the Retreat.

General method of retreat — — 176
Of the chequered retreat in line - — 177
Refuſing a wing in retreat } - — 178
Chequered retreat of two lines }
Retreat of infantry before cavalry - { in line / without baggage / with baggage } 180
Manœuvre at Berlin in the Square — 183

Of

Page

Of the DEFILE.

Paſſage of the defile { to the { front / rear } of the column; from the { flank / center } of the line } 185

General attentions in paſſing a defile — 187

Reducing / Increaſing } the front of the march — 188

COLUMN of MARCH.

General principles - — — — 189

Various attentions neceſſary in the march 191

——— March by lines to the flank }
——— March to the front or rear } — 193

Columns of march formed to { front / rear / flank } — 194

March and attack of ſmall corps poſted — 195

Marches of an army in different ſituations 196

March and formation of an army previous to the attack - — — — 197

Neceſſity of regulation for the marches of an army — — — — ib.

Page

Regulations given for the marches and movements of the Britiſh and French armies in Germany during the war of 1756 — — — — 198

OUTLINE of the Britiſh campaigns in Germany - from 207 to 263

APPENDIX.

ABSTRACT of words of command and circumſtances of execution neceſſary in moſt of the preceding movements.

Form of review, and movements neceſſary for the practice of a ſingle battalion, and of a ſmall corps.

Idea of a manœuvre for a ſmall corps.

INTRODUCTION.

THE revival of military ſcience may be dated from the days of the NASSAUS, and GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS, who in their arms and tactique, blending the Grecian, and Roman ſyſtems, formed armies eminent in diſcipline, and renowned for the great actions they atchieved.

But at that time the ſlender revenues of princes only brought moderate numbers into the field: thoſe not always well appointed, and often entirely dependant on the country in which they made a predatory war for a precarious ſubſiſtence: there were few places of great ſtrength: armies were too ſmall to carry on a war of poſitions: a battle decided the fate of a large tract of country: the vanquiſhed retired to a diſtance to recruit: the victors at their leiſure carried on their ſubſequent operations in cantonments, and did not again unite, till the approach of the enemy called them anew to the field: heavy armed cavalry ſtill made the principal force of the army: the greateſt proportion of the infantry were armed with pikes; the reſt with matchlocks, which, as well as the artillery of thoſe times, were very deſpicable.

Revival of military ſcience.

Since that period the improvement in fire arms, and the arts of modern fortification; the alterations in the conſtitutions of moſt countries in Europe; the numerous bodies of men, which the ambition of Louis the XIVth brought into the field; the univerſal eſtabliſhment of ſtanding armies, and the modern methods of conducting war, have made a great change in the military art, and increaſed the difficulty and intricacy of it as a ſcience.

After the experience of above a century, during which time each arm and ſyſtem has had its warm partiſans: the pike has given way to the improved muſquet and bayonet, as to a weapon more univerſal, and adapted to all varieties of ſituation.

Modern improvements.

The thin order of formation (bringing more men into action where fire is now ſo material) has become the fundamental one in preference to that on a greater depth, which however is ſtill retained, and applied on particular occaſions.

Defenſive heavy armour has been laid aſide as inſufficient againſt muſketry, and productive of more inconvenience than advantage.

The lance is alſo diſuſed, as requiring a man to be covered with heavy armour, and as incompatible with the cloſeneſs and vigour of the charge in which the ſtrength of cavalry is allowed to conſiſt.

Artillery has been increaſed, and the uſe of it improved in a ſurpriſing manner.

The internal diſcipline and œconomy of the troops have been well eſtabliſhed, and the authority of the officers fully founded: nor is there a modern inſtance of great mutiny or defection; which were ſo common, when corps and armies were the property of individuals, or of the general, rather than of the ſtate or prince whom they ſerved.

If the compoſition of modern armies is inferior as to the ſpecies of men; the manner of modelling them ſufficiently compenſates; where the authority of the prince, of the general, of the officer, and the ſubordination of each to each is ſo thoroughly enſured.

The

The laſt great improvements in the military art we owe to the KING of PRUSSIA; who (maſter of the ſcience, and practice of the profeſſion) to the moſt perfect uſe of their arms, that men are capable of, and to the obedience, and order of the Grecian ſyſtem, has added the Roman art of movement and manœuvre, which before him, our numerous, and extended armies, but ill underſtood.

Pruſſian ſuperiority of ſyſtem.

From the ſuperior diſcipline of his troops, and from the wonderful reſources of his own genius, he has atchieved actions not to be paralleled in antiquity; events in which fortune has had little ſhare; not combats of Greeks and Romans againſt Barbarians, where the advantages of the former were ſo deciſive: but battles of Germans againſt Germans, armed and nearly diſciplined alike—His extraordinary talents alone turned the ſcale.

It is rivality, and a parity of attack and defence, that beget improvement. As all Europeans are armed in the ſame manner, and mean to follow the ſame military ſyſtem, it is in the more dextrous uſe of their arms, and in a more profound knowledge of the ſcience of war, that one nation muſt hope to have a decided advantage over another.

Reaſons of improvement.

From a near equality we muſt expect exertion, not from decided ſuperiority. We are not to look for it in the *Eaſt*, where that of the Europeans, (and thoſe not the beſt conſtituted troops) is at leaſt as remarkable as in the days of the ancients.

There can be no inſtance more ſtriking of the improvement of modern military ſcience, than the late and conſtant ſucceſs of the RUSSIAN againſt the TURKISH troops.

Turkiſh defects.

Theſe laſt, from the nature of their religion, government, and manners, cannot be much degenerated. There was a time, and even then European bravery was diſtinguiſhed, when they were at leaſt equal to their neighbours, and threatned the conqueſt of chriſtendom: but not keeping pace with the improvements of laſt

century, and ſervilely adhering to their old cuſtoms; we have ſeen, by degrees, the Germans ſucceſsfully make head againſt them; and the Ruſſians, at laſt, riſe ſo ſuperior, as with a very inconſiderable force to endanger the capital of their empire, which without the interpoſition of other powers, would certainly have fallen.

Overawed by the ſucceſs and diſcipline of the Ruſſian troops, we have ſeen an immenſe army (brave as individuals) refuſe to follow their general, and ignominiouſly deſert that ſtandard, under which their anceſtors had conquered ſo many kingdoms.

When the ſtrength of armies conſiſted in CAVALRY, the lance men charged in a ſingle rank, and then retired in order to renew the charge, or to allow the cuiraſſiers (who advanced at no great pace) to improve the advantage with their ſwords. The *melée* and confuſion became general; the exploits of individuals were wonderful, and determined the fortune of the day, more than the uniform and united ſhock of large bodies, and thoſe repeated and ſupported.

Ancient ſtate of cavalry.

But when a higher degree of order came to be introduced into armies, the German cavalry, who in their Turkiſh wars were oppoſed to a more numerous and nimble enemy, were obliged to truſt to their armour, and to the ſolidity of their order, and became only capable of ſlow movements, advancing to the charge at a gentle trot.

The French cavalry, from the impetuoſity of the nation, were accuſtomed to charge with velocity, though generally diſunited and in great diſorder; yet this was ſufficient in the time of Turenne and Luxembourg, to give them a decided ſuperiority over the ſolemn German cavalry, whom we find again ſucceſsful, when animated by the ſuperior genius of Marlborough and Eugene.

But no certain principles were yet eſtabliſhed, and the ſlow regularity introduced into the cavalry, tended to cramp the ſpirit, inſtead of adding to the vigour of the body; every thing ſeemed calculated

calculated for reſiſtance only; a ſquadron was thought hardly capable of a trot; for a line it was ſuppoſed impoſſible; ranks and files were ſo crouded, that the leaſt violent movement, put them in confuſion: It remained a lifeleſs and inactive maſs, till put in motion by the wonderful talents of the KING of PRUSSIA.

Modern cavalry improvements.

He ſaw that the great buſineſs of the cavalry, is the offenſive, rather than the defenſive; giving the attack, rather than receiving it; that the velocity of its movements, and quick change of place, muſt enſure the moſt decided advantage over an enemy, inferior in either, and while it inſpirits the one body, in the ſame proportion tends to intimidate the other.

He has ſhown the facility of moving great bodies of cavalry from one point to another.

From experience, he has proved the poſſibility of a full line arriving upon the enemy with rapidity and order; and in the impulſe of the charge has ſhown, that the ſpur tends as much to overſet the oppoſite enemy, as does the ſword which ſhould complete that defeat.

Senſible, that the great intervals betwixt ſquadrons when in line, only tended to make them irreſolute, and to ſwerve in advancing upon the enemy, under pretence of taking them in flank; he formed his firſt line of cavalry in a full line, and inſiſting on the rapidity of the charge, obliged them to the direct attack upon the oppoſite enemy. Behind that line he had his bodies of reſerve to ſupport; to repair any loſs; or improve any advantage gained.

The ſuperior advantages of the PRUSSIAN ſyſtem, has obliged moſt of the nations of Europe to adopt it, and to endeavour to improve upon it.

The French ſince the war of 1756, ſenſible of their want of method and order, have taken uncommon pains. But perhaps by attending more to the minute than the eſſential, they have not hitherto made all the progreſs they might have done. Still the alteration for the better is very evident in their cavalry; and they are now capable of a vigorous and united charge, inſtead of that

Cavalry.

en

en fourageurs: a term, implying the diſorder in which they formerly attacked.

The improvements of ARTILLERY have kept pace with thoſe of the other arms; and it now makes a principal part of every military eſtabliſhment. From being unweildy, unmanageable, and uncertain in its effects; it is become numerous, light, and tranſportable—accompanying the movements of the troops, worked with dexterity, and often turns the ſcale of victory.

Although it certainly confines and retards the progreſs of armies; yet there are ſituations where it decides, and none where the advantages that attend it can be given up. Its combinations with the movements of the infantry and cavalry, are therefore an eſſential part of the General's calculation; and every thing that tends to accelerate its motions, becomes a moſt deſirable circumſtance.

Artillery.

No place can now long reſiſt the improved modes of attack, and the heavy and unremitting fire of a numerous well directed artillery. In the field, where battles are often reduced to affairs of poſt, its operations are of the greateſt conſequence: and where an enfilading fire in a greater or leſs degree, can be obtained (and which is always endeavoured at) its effects are great, and it prepares the way for a leſs vigorous reſiſtance from the enemy.

For ſome time paſt it has been the cuſtom, to attach one or more field pieces to each battalion. But this method has by many been thought diſadvantageous; and that it is better to aſſemble them in brigade; and to poſt them properly according to circumſtances, rather than to truſt to their accidental poſitions on the flanks of battalions.

In all armies therefore, the conduct and management of the artillery is a very great part of military combination, and influences much the movements and operations of the whole.

If the improvement in the tactique of the cavalry and artillery have been conſiderable; that of the INFANTRY has not made leſs progreſs. Independent of internal œconomy, and arrangement, and the

the moſt perfect uſe of their arms that men can attain; the king of Pruſſia has renewed and perfected the ſcience of movement and manœuvre, which in latter times was but little underſtood.

From the time that artillery became formidable, the muſquet the univerſal weapon of the infantry, and that the thin order of formation took place; our modern and extended armies had become unmanageable. Former ſtate of infantry.

Though frequent, great, and perſevering marches had been occaſionally performed, yet each was the product of intricate arrangement, calculated for one particular purpoſe, and no other. Hours were taken up in forming in line of battle in the proceſſional manner, which was then the only one known: and when ſuch line was once formed, it was difficult to make any conſiderable alteration in it, without much previous explanation, and endangering the order of the whole.——Attacks were planned upon ſome determined ſituation, in which it was expected to find the enemy, and the columns of march were compoſed accordingly: but on approaching him, if he had taken a different poſition, it was not eaſy to adapt the attack to ſuch change of circumſtance; and the precious and deciſive moment of action was often loſt in explaining the new and neceſſary diſpoſition.

The infantry were brave and ſteady, though ill trained—their movements were ſlow—their formations tedious, and not varied to apply to all ſituations—the relative motions of the line were but ill underſtood, and worſe executed on all ſides: and moderate generals were much embarraſſed in the conduct of a machine ſo complicated, and where the great ſprings of action were ſo ill regulated.

It was reſerved for the KING of PRUSSIA to diſcover in the mechaniſm and application of the marching and cloſe *Column*, a ſimple remedy for all theſe defects, and to apply its principles to the training of all bodies great or ſmall. The juſtneſs of them being once aſcertained, he has enſured the preciſion and ſameneſs of execution by poſitive rules, from which no one dare vary, and by the unremitting attention of his ſervice.——This ſyſtem, founded by his predeceſſor, improved by the experience of his camps of peace, and ſanctified by his Pruſſian improvements.

his great ſucceſs in war, has upheld the wonderful ſuperiority of his arms for theſe forty years; and as yet he is but followed at a diſtance (not overtaken) by the reſt of the world.

Speculation only, aided by the practice of ſmall bodies, will often miſlead, when applied to the movements of large ones. It is in the camps of peace alone where juſt rules can be determined. In time of war, there is ſeldom opportunity or ſufficient exactneſs of execution, to aſcertain the neceſſary and minute parts of ſuch a ſyſtem. In camps of peace therefore, the theory has been eſtabliſhed, and ſucceſsful wars have confirmed the practice.

Simplicity and generality of principle are the diſtinguiſhing features of his ſyſtem—by the preciſion to which every thing is reduced; by the permanent and great diviſions of the troops in the field, which he firſt eſtabliſhed, he has organized his army in ſuch a manner, that in his hands, the moſt numerous has become as flexible and manageable as the ſmalleſt body; nor has he ever failed in the face of the enemy to perform movements, that have always been deciſive in his favour.

Pruſſian principles.

The formation of his columns are ſimple, in direct progreſſion, and from either, but always the ſame flank of the different bodies which compoſe them. Their unfolding and formation into line on any one given diviſion, as circumſtances require a greater or leſſer number of men to be thrown to either hand, are equally ſimple, and never made on accidental points, but always on ſuch as are fixed, determined, and relative to the ſituation of an enemy.

The preciſion with which his troops, when in line, can incline to a flank, at the ſame time that they advance in front, enables them on many occaſions imperceptibly to outflank an enemy.

The movements in *echellon* give a great facility in advancing: the corps better ſupport in the attack, and in the retreat more effectually protect by gradually falling back upon each other.

At the moment of attack, his ranks, files, and different bodies compoſing the lines are cloſe; and ſhould his enemy, leſs firm and compact,

compact, preſent an opening, it is there he ſeizes the opportunity of entering with his cavalry, and probably gaining a decided advantage.

Quick movements, with conſiderable columns or lines of infantry, he conſiders as impracticable and ruinous from the hurry and diſorder that muſt thence enſue, and which a good cavalry will in an inſtant take advantage of: but brigades, or ſmaller diviſions of the line, occaſionally lengthen their ſtep, and move on with rapidity at the moment of attack.—Although the general movements of the infantry may appear ſlow and ſolemn, yet they are ſo accurate, that no unneceſſary time being loſt in dreſſing, or correcting diſtances, they arrive ſooner at their object than any other, immediately form, and at the ſame inſtant proceed in perfect order to the attack. Pruſſian principles.

Superior order, regularity, and weight of fire, are the great objects of the Pruſſian infantry, and the rapid movements of cavalry, make this circumſpection neceſſary. His cavalry are bold, active, and enterprizing, and never fail to ſeize and improve any advantage that offers; their order, rapidity, and quick movements, are equalled by no other, and have been often deciſive in the day of battle.

The diſcipline of his troops, enſures ſucceſs againſt an enemy not capable of ſuch rapid movements, who cannot ſuddenly counteract him, and with difficulty know where he will direct his force, as his diſpoſitions change in an inſtant, and his formations are made under cover of any advantage the ground preſents, as well as of the movements of cavalry, and of the ſmoke and fire of a numerous artillery, which make it leſs neceſſary to ſacrifice infantry in attacks of poſt, ſoon diſlodge an enemy, and reduce the deciſion to opener ground.

Organized as this army is, a few general intimations, inſtead of long and detailed orders, are ſufficient to put it in motion for any purpoſe of march or attack.—The general, the officer, and the ſoldier, are each capable to execute his part, and each has the mode of movement invariably aſcertained to him, whatever poſſible change

Pruſſian principles.

of ſituation can be required; and from which mode no individual dare deviate.

Thus prepared, and moving with ſuch facility, he ſeldom waits the attack.—When he approaches the enemy, it is at the head of a ſtrong advanced guard, behind which his columns are collected and combined, according to circumſtances.—In that ſituation, he determines on his future diſpoſition; the heads of his columns are carried to their ſeveral given points; diſtances are juſt; the celerity of forming is great; the detail of execution, in all poſſible caſes, is known to every one.—One part of his army is ſtrengthned by reſerves, or the advanced guard; the reſt of his line is refuſed: the flank of the enemy is probably gained; and wherever he makes his attack, by theſe means he acts with ſuperiority, although on the whole, his army may be inferior in number.

Though his combinations, as a general, were infinite; yet the requiſites in the ſoldier were few, though eſſential, and never varied; otherwiſe, from the diſadvantages of compoſition, his army could not have maintained, (conſidering its yearly loſſes and recruits) that capacity and ſuperiority of manœuvre, ſo conſpicuous, during the whole courſe of the laſt war.

The countries in which his armies have acted, offered all the varieties of wood, mountain, plain, and incloſure: the ſame principles of movement and formation have ſtill taken place, modified according to ſituation: they apply equally to his infantry, cavalry, and artillery, ſingly, or when combined: the ſmalleſt portions of his troops, are individually trained to act their part in the columns or lines of the army.

Permanent and detailed *regulations* for the conduct of every military individual, in every poſſible ſituation, obviouſly uſeful in all ſervices, are particularly neceſſary in the BRITISH. Such regulations prepare the materials, wind up the ſprings, and give unity and energy to the whole machine: without ſuch, chance

and

and caprice direct, negligence and confuſion follow, and the operations of ſo Tartar like an army, can only be attended with ruin and diſgrace.

Neceſſity of regulation.

It is our misfortune to have had no line of conduct laid down: the good order of regiments has leſs depended on the rules of the ſervice, than on the accidental efforts of individuals, and on the faſhion of the day, equally as that changing: where zeal or ſcience were wanting, the conſequences have been too often apparent.

Defects of the Britiſh practice.

Hence our very thin and extended order to make more ſhow—an affected extreme of quickneſs on all occaſions—the running of one movement into another, without thoſe neceſſary pauſes which tend to ſhow their propriety, and juſtneſs of execution—the ſyſtem of central dreſſing, filing, and forming on almoſt all occaſions—the ſingle perſon attempting to direct the battalion, and its parts, in every ſituation, in order to beget a falſe and improper preciſion—the forming and breaking on the move, the eaſier to conceal and cover loſt diſtances and accidental lines, which otherwiſe would be apparent—the ſeveral methods of wheeling eſtabliſhed—the different and falſe compoſition of columns, which each battalion at pleaſure adopts—the chance movement of the line in front, regulated by no fixed principle.

Unaccuſtomed to form or move on determined points, (the neceſſity of which, is not ſo immediately ſtriking in the management of a ſingle battalion) a given poſition is taken up with no degree of preciſion—filing, which was formerly little known or practiſed in the infantry, is now general and often miſapplied where diviſion-marching ſhould take place—the hurry practiſed by individual regiments, becomes improper and impoſſible when acting in conjunction with others; confuſion and inaccuracy follow; and time is conſumed in endeavouring in vain to correct thoſe errors, which original method would prevent from ever ariſing.

Our ranks are ſo thin, our files ſo open, and ſuch intervals permitted between companies of the ſame battalion when in line; that all idea of ſolidity ſeems loſt.—We have begun at the wrong

Defects of the British practice.

end, and have endeavoured to deduce the uſeful movements of the line, from the ſhowy and review ones of the battalion. We have eſtabliſhed as general rules, what ought to be regarded only as exceptions—we have ſtarted from parade, as our primary order, inſtead of conſidering it as only ſecondary to that of attack—our concluſions have been falſe, as our *data* were defective.

Nor do theſe irregularities operate only in the field, and in great bodies. They equally take place in the internal compoſition and management of our battalions; each has its ſingular mode of diſcipline, unknown to the other, and often as oppoſite as thoſe of two diſtinct ſervices.—A detachment or guard, is as heterogeneous a body as an army, and the command of it on a ſmall ſcale, is attended with the ſame difficulty. The whole forms a ſcene of intricacy, which no individual can be ſufficiently maſter of, and which nothing but the ſubſtitution of one over-ruling and univerſal method can ever diſſolve.

The very ſmall proportion of *cavalry* employed in the American wars, has much tended to introduce the preſent looſe and irregular ſyſtem of our infantry.—Had they ſeen and been accuſtomed to the rapid movements of a good cavalry, they would have felt the neceſſity of more ſubſtantial order, of moving with concert and circumſpection, and of being at every inſtant in a ſituation to form and repel a vigorous attack.

Reaſons of thoſe defects.

The weakneſs of our battalions in time of peace has farther confirmed it; for not ſufficiently reſtrained by regulation, an attention to ſhow has univerſally taken place, and the facility of dancing about a ſmall body has deluded many, who if they had larger numbers to direct, would have found the neceſſity of method, and of more order in their operations.

In other ſervices, garriſons being numerous, and regiments compoſed of two battalions at leaſt, they are in the practice of exerciſing, and manœuvring together; and therefore ſuch modes will always be preſcribed as are general, and proper for combined movements in the field: but our ſingle battalions not feeling that neceſſity,

neceſſity, from ſeldom acting with others, and having no proper ſyſtem laid down for them, naturally adopt ſuch partial methods as ſeem to each convenient, and may perhaps be ſo for a ſingle battalion, although totally repugnant to, and deſtructive of the unity of the line when ſeveral are to act in concert.

The importance alſo which the *light infantry* have acquired, has more particularly tended to eſtabliſh this practice. During the late war, their ſervice was conſpicuous, and their gallantry and exertions have met with merited applauſe.—But inſtead of being conſidered as an acceſſory to the battalion, they have become the principal feature of our army, and have almoſt put grenadiers out of faſhion. The ſhowy exerciſe, the airy dreſs, the independent modes which they have adopted, have caught the minds of young officers, and made them imagine that theſe ought to be general and excluſive.—The battalions, conſtantly drained of their beſt men, have been taught to undervalue themſelves, almoſt to forget, that on their ſteadineſs and efforts, the deciſion of events depends; and that light infantry—yagers—markſmen—riflemen, &c. &c. vaniſh before the ſolid movements of the line.

Light infantry.

In all the armies of Europe, there is a great proportion of light infantry and cavalry; but they do not unneceſſarily deviate from the general principles of the ſervice, nor are their peculiar modes adopted by the more important bodies of the line.

They form ſeparate corps, but ſtill preſerve the greateſt order. Their ſkirmiſhers and diſperſed men are looſe, detached and numerous, according to circumſtances; but a firm reſerve always remains to rally upon, and to give ſupport as may be wanted—their attacks are connected, and their movements the ſame as the reſt of the line—their great province is to form advanced and rear guards; to patrole, to gain intelligence, to occupy the out poſts, to keep up communications, and by their vigilance and activity to cover the front, and enſure the tranquillity of the army—they decide

Foreign light troops.

decide not, nor are they chiefly relied upon in battle, although on many ſuch occaſions they perform regular and eminent ſervice.

Whether the eſtabliſhment of our battalion light companies, is an advantageous mode, may admit of ſome doubt. When aſſembled in corps, they ought to act as other battalions do; but while attached to their ſeveral regiments, they had beſt be conſidered as out of the line, and placed in the rear of the battalion as a reſerve, ready to ſally forth, and execute the part allotted them.

There ſeems no reaſon why the light infantry ſhould not conform to the ſame principles of order and movement, as the battalion. The frequent diſperſion and peculiarities which they are taught, ſhould be conſidered as occaſional exceptions. By their preſent open order, and independent ideas, they are under very little controul of their officers; and their practice ſeems founded on a ſuppoſition of the ſpirit and exertion of each individual, more than on the real feelings by which the multitude are actuated. Were our battalions, alſo, more accuſtomed to act in line, and with cannon; they would ſee the impropriety of every inſtant ſcattering and throwing forward the light infantry, whoſe ſituation muſt often prevent the proper uſe of the artillery.

Britiſh light infantry.

Our preſent prevailing modes, are certainly not calculated either to attack or repulſe a determined enemy, but only to annoy a timid and irregular one—they are not general, but were firſt adopted in local ſituations that may not ſoon recur. There is great danger in an *irregular* ſyſtem, becoming the *eſtabliſhed* one of a Britiſh army; and the moſt fatal conſequences may one day enſue, if we do not return to a due ſenſe of the neceſſity of ſolidity, effort, and mutual dependance, which it is the great buſineſs of diſcipline to inculcate and regulate.

In the *progreſs* of military ſcience, the other nations of Europe have of late reviſed, ſimplified, and improved their ſyſtem of diſcipline: but we have rather complicated ours.—For the modes of

of our battalions being various as their numbers, each is wedded to its own partial practice; and the whole form an aggregate of parts, too obviously discordant when assembled together, and when any conjunct and regular operation is required from them. Their different methods must be first reconciled, or a neutral one substituted; each is tenacious of its own; much arrangement is required, and in this manner we are always beginning, always changing, and never arrive at the object we have in view.

Consequences of the want of system.

The fatal consequences arising from this want of system and concert, have been severely felt, and the remedy of universal regulation long demanded, as the only means that can keep in any kind of order, the distant parts of an army, which has never the advantage of assembling in large bodies in camps of peace, as is the practice of other nations, or of being formed into considerable divisions, in cantonments and quarters, under the permanent inspection of the general officer, but where on the contrary, even the companies of the same battalion are separated from each other the greater part of the year.

Necessity of establishing of it.

The situation of the GENERAL OFFICER in our service, is at present, particularly embarrassing. Let his talents be ever so eminent, with such jarring materials as our battalions now present, it is absolutely impossible for him to attempt the most simple manœuvres before an enemy, much less such complicated ones, as the circumstances of his situation might point out and require. He can take no advantage; he can risque no movement; and the moment which is so precious in all military operations, is lost in previous arrangement, at such an instant ill explained and worse understood. Instead of finding his part, and that of every individual, ascertained by the general rules of the service, he is either obliged to give way to chance, and risk universal confusion, or to endeavour to procure unity and concert, by substituting his own temporary and perhaps crude methods.

Peculiar situation of the general officer.

But were system and science established and strictly adhered to; there would only remain for him, as is his great and distinguishing province,

province, to judge and determine of the application, and propriety of movements with reſpect to the enemy's ſituation. He would not then be embarraſſed in explaining the manner of execution, which in all poſſible caſes ſhould be known to each individual, ſhould be invariable, and follow as ſoon as he ſignifies his intentions.——Famed as we are for the valour of our ſoldiers, what might not be expected from the ability and zeal of our generals, if the ſame means of inſtruction and conduct, which regulates other ſervices, exiſted in ours!

It is needleſs to collect reaſons for the promulgation of a general *military code*. The experience of every hour points out the immediate neceſſity of it; and that it is high time that uniform method ſhould take place of accidental caprice, variety, and faſhion.

Neceſſity of a military code.

There are many proper and excellent regulations and cuſtoms, exiſting in the Britiſh ſervice; but it is difficult to know which are obſolete, and which are in force. They are no where collected under one view; are ſilent on ſome of the moſt material heads of diſcipline, and fall very ſhort of laying out a line of conduct for each individual. They have been framed at various times, to remedy the inconveniences of the day; and do not originate from the one great and fundamental point, to which all military regulations, as to a center, ſhould refer.

Execution of it.

However numerous and comprehenſive the different articles neceſſary to military inſtruction may appear, yet the detailing and filling up the moſt important of them is perhaps not difficult to attain. Many of the materials exiſt in our own, many are to be found in other ſervices: arrangement and the labour of competent individuals will accompliſh the reſt; and, although the parts are dependant on each other, yet they may with propriety be ſeparately promulgated.

But in the progreſs of ſuch an undertaking, it is neceſſary to aſcertain the great *principle*, which ſhould be conſtantly held in view,

view, and to the completion of which, each circumſtance ſhould tend. This principle we muſt look for in the *field* operations of the troops; it muſt neceſſarily refer to their actions and exertions; and can only have for it's object, the conqueſt of the enemy by ſuperior movement and arrangement. All circumſtances of ſhow, diſcipline, regulation, &c. &c. muſt therefore tend to this point, and be ſubſervient to it.

Great leading principles.

The ultimate object of the army being fixed, we muſt follow it through its ſeveral diviſions; and in tracing the principles of its juſt movements in the line, the column, the *echellon*, &c. we ſhall ſee the means by which its great end is accompliſhed. In its intermediate place we ſhall find the battalion, and diſcover the neceſſary detail and application of theſe circumſtances to its various operations. We muſt determine its primary and moſt eſſential order, that in which it meets an enemy; every other change of its ſituation muſt be relative thereto, and its component parts formed accordingly. Regulations of diſcipline, police, &c. muſt conſtantly be referred to and examined by this teſt, which ſhould be ever kept in view, and nothing ſuffered to interfere with, or militate againſt it.

From this broad baſis, we muſt aſcend in regular gradation, till we ſee the ſingle ſoldier ſtationed on the point of the pyramid—we muſt reaſon from the great to the leſs; and after aſcertaining the effects, diſcover the means and the cauſes.

Such a general ſyſtem when introduced, ſhould be enforced, and upheld by the ſtrong hand of authority; and no deviation permitted from it, at the diſcretion of individuals; nor ſhould any one have a right to diſpenſe with obſervances, which ſo nearly concern the general good, and which by ſituation he may be placed to watch over. Whatever changes time and circumſtances might make neceſſary, ſhould come from authority—when eſtabliſhed and well underſtood, the military machine and all its parts would then with eaſe be managed; every thing be in uniſon; its efforts conſolidated and formidable, and the minds and knowledge of in-

Advantages of ſyſtem when once eſtabliſhed.

 dividuals

dividuals be enlarged—nor would this tend to confine or cramp genius, but rather to regulate and direct it aright; and full ſcope would be ſtill left for military talents, in the application of juſt principles, to the boundleſs variety which time, numbers, ſituation of ground, and other circumſtances will always preſent.

Poſitive regulation ſhould ever ſpeak in a tone of command, and not make uſe of unneceſſary explanation. But ſuch tone is not here aſſumed; and therefore, beſides laying down rules, it is wiſhed to diſcover, and point out the ſubſtantial reaſons of each, in order to induce conviction.

In purſuit therefore of this object, it is here propoſed to enter on one great diviſion of ſuch a work, and to eſtabliſh a ſyſtem of order and movement, founded on the moſt acknowledged and undoubted principles, and by which the *field ſervice* of the troops, as far as it relates to thoſe circumſtances, ſhould be regulated.

The GENERAL HEADS, under which it will appear, are as follows.——The ſubdiviſions which ſpring from them, are in their place detailed.

Principles of Movement -	General, and ſuch as ſhould on all occaſions direct the various operations of the troops.
Points of — *March* - - -	The uſe of theſe in order to procure accurate and juſt movements, are explained.
Points of — *Formation* - -	
Points of — Appui - - -	
Points of — Alignement -	
Inſtruction of Officer and Recruit	The eſſential and fundamental rules of training, are here pointed out; but a fuller detail of ſeveral of the articles will be neceſſary.
Company - - - - - -	Their compoſition and formation, modes of aſſembling, inſtruction, and exerciſe.
Battalion - - - - - -	

Move-

Movements of the { *Battalion* } *in Open*
{ *Line* } *Column*

All poſſible formations from column, are made by one general method, which requires no previous directions being circulated, is adapted to all varieties of ſurface, and allows the formation of the line to a certainty, at any one inſtant, or in any poſition, however intricate.

Changes of Poſition of the Line

Changes of the line from one ſituation to another, in embarraſſed ground, are made upon the principles of the open column. As filing is the great mean uſed in all theſe movements, the flanks which in that caſe ſeem preſented to the enemy, need give no uneaſineſs, as their relative ſituations, and the precautions taken at every moment, will enſure them from harm. An inſtant is ſufficient to form in order of battle, and to put the body, however great, in a poſture of defence againſt the enemy's cavalry, if they attempt to interrupt the movement.

The cloſe Column - - -

March in Front of the { *Battalion* }
{ *Line* }

Rules are given for the march of great bodies in front, which is a moſt eſſential and difficult operation.

The Echellon - - - - -

Shows its general principles, and the application of its movements to the battalion, column, or line.

Second Line - - - - -

Shows the methods of executing its relative movements, in conſequence of any change of poſition made by its firſt line.

Paſſage of a Firſt Line through the Second - - - - -	When preſſed by an enemy and obliged to retire, and take up a new poſition in the rear.
Paſſage of the Defile - -	By the line or column, and to front or rear.
The Retreat - - - - -	The general conduct of the retreat of lines, and the defence that infantry can make, when retiring in line or columns againſt cavalry.
Column of March - - - -	General rules, which ought to regulate the marches of all bodies, are given and exemplified in the practice of the Britiſh and French armies in Germany.
General circumſtances eſſential to be obſerved in the movements of Battalions, Lines, Columns, &c. - - -	Theſe circumſtances are briefly recapitulated and pointed out.
Abſtract of words of command, and circumſtances of execution neceſſary in the movements, and formations of the Open Column, Cloſe Column, Battalion, Line, &c.	Points out the particular nature of each movement—the ſeparate words of command, whether given by leaders of battalions or diviſions, and the order in which they follow. As alſo the chief circumſtances of execution attending each—the whole being meant as a practical abſtract of what has been more particularly detailed.
General heads of review exerciſe for a Battalion or larger Body - - - - - -	Deduced from the eſtabliſhed principles, meant to comprehend the moſt eſſential movements, and given as an example of what may be required of a battalion or larger body, at a regular review or inſpection.

The

The application of the principles laid down under theſe ſeveral heads, embrace all the general and particular operations of an army, and may be modified and adapted to all ſituations, and in all varieties of ground. They are occaſionally exemplified in the combinations and movements of conſiderable bodies, and in the actual exerciſes of the PRUSSIAN troops.

A knowledge of theſe paths neceſſarily conducts to the more elevated and ſublime points of the military ſcience; and to eminent rank, diſtinguiſhed talents, and great experience any further or deeper inveſtigation would belong. But the many capital and inſtructive works on the higher parts of war, joined to the illuſtrious examples of able generals, ſufficiently elucidating ſuch ſcenes, furniſh complete leſſons for thoſe who ought to profit from them, and leave us only to regret, that the inferior but eſſential branches of the profeſſion have not been equally cultivated and well underſtood.

PRINCIPLES of MOVEMENT.

THE manœuvres of the battalion and of ſmaller bodies muſt be deduced from thoſe of the line, calculated for all varieties of ground; and ſuch only adopted as are of uſe in the field, and equally applicable to one or to fifty battalions.

All partial methods therefore of movement or formation fitting only for a battalion or its parts ſhould be rejected—Such as are not connected with, or cannot be conſidered as thoſe of the great body, are defective, uſeleſs, and may be even hurtful, as tending to deſtroy the unity and harmony of the whole.

General principles.

The duties of the commander of line, battalion, company, diviſion, as well as of every other individual, muſt be detailed in ſuch a manner; that any number of battalions when aſſembled, may at once execute any manœuvre required, by the ſame one univerſal and determined method.

Com-

Complication in exerciſe, or movement muſt be avoided: every poſſible operation of the battalion muſt be adapted to the capacity of the ſoldier, or at leaſt of the non-commiſſioned officer, who may frequently have his part in the command.—Where intelligence can be united with great practice and attention, perfection in the execution will be ſoon attained.

As the movements of lines, or of great bodies, ſhould only be the application, and repetition of thoſe of the battalion—the method of taking up any new poſition ſhould therefore be fixed, and obvious to every individual.

Movements made on a fixed point.

All movements muſt be made on determined diſtant points, which the commanders of leading bodies will ſcrupulouſly obſerve: uncertainty and wavering will be thereby avoided in the march; the fatigue, and attention of the ſoldier leſſened; the direction of the body always regulated according to circumſtances; and the greateſt nicety, and eaſe obtained in the formation of the line.

The ſoldier muſt not be puzzled with various and unprofitable ways of attaining the ſame end.—Simplicity and generality of principle are the great objects to be aimed at; they imply perfection in the military machine, as much as in the mechanical one.

Simplicity in the execution.

In the execution of manœuvres, the greateſt preciſion is eſſential and requiſite in ſmall bodies, as the want of it will operate in proportion to the extent of large bodies.

Cavalry and infantry principles the ſame.

The principles for cavalry and infantry muſt be as analogous as the nature of the two arms will admit—The ſame words of command, and methods of formation and movement ſhould as far as poſſible be adopted, and take place in their ſeparate or combined manœuvres. The great advantages thence ariſing are ſufficiently obvious.

Cloſe order the fundamental one.

The order of attack, or cloſe order, muſt always be conſidered as the primary, and fundamental one; from which thoſe of exerciſe and parade are deduced and occaſionally taken.

No

No movement is in itſelf (properly ſpeaking) dangerous; it is only ſo with regard to its application, and the calculation of its being finiſhed before advantage can be taken of it.

No movement ſhould be begun, till the commander is ſatisfied with the propriety and ſafety of its execution. And whatever troops can perform judicious movements with the greateſt celerity and order, will always be enabled to place themſelves in the moſt advantageous ſituation to give or receive the attack; or if circumſtances require, to avoid it. Application of movements.

The practice of movement in all kind of ground is what alone can give the requiſite *coup d'œil*, which in an inſtant ſees defects, and remedies them; ſeizes advantages, and improves them; calculates juſtly the time neceſſary in the execution, according to local circumſtances; above all, enables at once to take a decided part, which never fails to communicate vigour to thoſe that are to execute—In all caſes indeciſion is fatal. *Coup d'œil.*

The intelligence and readineſs of officers is the great ſpring of all action and movement; unleſs that point is attained, it is in vain to expect exertion from the ſoldier. The regulations of the ſervice ſhould rigidly inſiſt upon it—From the principles which ought to direct the conduct of officers, one would ſuppoſe it no matter of difficulty; yet general experience evinces the neceſſity of the moſt expreſs rules for that purpoſe: none ſo important as that the deſerving ſhould always be diſtinguiſhed from the negligent and incapable.

An officer who cannot thoroughly diſcipline and exerciſe the body intruſted to his command, is not fit in time of ſervice to lead it to the enemy; he cannot be cool and collected in the time of danger; he cannot profit of circumſtances, from an inability to direct others; the fate of many depends on his ill or well acquitting himſelf of this duty. It is not ſufficient to advance with bravery; it is requiſite to have that degree of intelligence, which ſhould diſtinguiſh every officer according to his ſtation: nor will ſoldiers ever act with ſpirit and anima- Officer.

animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of thoſe that do conduct them.

In military plans and arrangements, thoſe that execute are not ſo ſanguine as he who deſigns; and therefore the event generally falls ſhort of the expectation: experience ſhould make allowances, and not require more than human nature in common furniſhes.—What we have a right to expect from the ſoldier is, undaunted bravery in the firſt attack; but obſtacles unſurmountable are not to be thrown in his way.—After a repulſe, perſeverance depends on circumſtances; where there is not a great probability of prevailing, the multitude will not greatly exert themſelves: the few inſtigated by principles of honour are capable of it, but the many muſt have their proſpect of ſucceſs pretty apparent; every method muſt be taken to enſure it, by order, diſcipline, and example.

Soldier.

Movements of March.

The movements of march uſed in going from one camp or quarter to another, are made in one or more columns; and are generally ſlow, as being combined with thoſe of cavalry, artillery, baggage, and with the nature of the country. In this ſituation ſuch additional precautions are taken, as to be in no danger, from attempts of the enemy, who are then commonly at a diſtance.

Movements of manœuvre.

The movements of manœuvre are ſuch as are executed near, or in preſence of an enemy; and have for their object the formation of the line, in order to make the attack in the moſt advantageous manner that circumſtances will allow of—Therefore celerity in change of place cannot be too great, when conſiſtent with order, as it gives the enemy leſs time to ſee the intention of, or to counteract ſuch movements.

The movements of all great bodies are made either in line or column; and in both caſes are regulated by ſome one given diviſion, as that of general direction.

In column, the leading diviſion is always that of direction, and is conducted by the commander himſelf.

In

In line, ſome one battalion, according to circumſtances, and the views of the commander, and in general a flank one, is named as that of direction. Regulating diviſion.

To the movement of this body the commander himſelf will attend, and ſee that its points of march, and pace, are ſuch as he wiſhes to conduct the line by, and which in every reſpect conforms to its motions.—He will change his place, whenever he finds it neceſſary to name a new diviſion or battalion of direction, and will by a caution apprize the line of ſuch alteration.

It can never be too often repeated or recollected, that one or other of the flank battalions of the line, directs the operations of the whole. To its movements every other part yields, and conforms; there are very few caſes in which the center ought to regulate. In line, the flank battalion regulates its movements.

If an enemy is to be turned, or an attack made, it is by the flank that ſuch movements are led. It is the flank that muſt preſerve the point of *appui* in all movements in front. If the line is thrown into column, it is the head, or leading flank of that column which conducts, and whoſe writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body; and ſuch head becomes a flank when formed into line.—It is ſeldom that an attack is formed from the center, but a movement never need, nor ſhould be, although (relative circumſtances not conſidered) it is certain, that in the march of the line in front, it appears to be eaſieſt conducted by the center.

The commander will therefore be with whichever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he propoſes to make the attack, or counteract the attempts of the enemy.

All marches, and movements muſt be made in given lines, and all formations on fixed and determined objects; and thoſe lines and objects muſt be correctly given before the movements or formations are begun.—Intermediate points, where heads of columns are to arrive, or where flanks of lines are to be placed, muſt be carefully aſcertained by officers advanced on purpoſe.

Commanding officers of a line muſt always be aſſiſted by ſeveral intelligent and detached officers, and non-commiſſioned officers, who Movements made on fixed points.

ſhould be employed occaſionally in aſcertaining points and diſtances. The method of finding intermediate points, betwixt two given diſtant and inacceſſible objects, muſt be practiſed by every officer, and often employed in formations of the line.

Mounted officers.

The ſuperior ſtaff officers of the battalion, muſt be at all times mounted; to give ground in movements; ſpeedily to correct miſtakes; to circulate orders; and above all, exactly to dreſs the pivots of diviſions on the diſtant forming points, when the columns halt and are adjuſted, before wheeling up into line; an operation, which no diſmounted officer can effectually perform, in an extended line.

All changes of poſition originate from the halt.

The exerciſe of ſmall bodies, when within the command of one voice, appears more ſhowy, by keeping ſuch bodies conſtantly in motion, and by changing from one manœuvre to another while on the march. But ſuch movements, and the formations made from them, muſt be on accidental points, and however brilliant in regimental practice and review appearance, where the leſſon of the day has been previouſly arranged, they can only be conſidered as occaſional exceptions, not applicable to large bodies, where hurry muſt be avoided, and where concert and relative poſition are indiſpenſable.

If the principle of moving, forming, and dreſſing, upon given and determined points is juſt; all quick alterations of the line while upon the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however ſhort) are falſe and defective: the effects of which, though not ſo apparent in a ſingle battalion, would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.——A pauſe between each change of ſituation, ſo eſſentially neceſſary in the movements of great bodies, ſhould ſeldom be omitted in thoſe of ſmall ones: ſquareneſs of dreſſing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative movements of the whole are thereby aſcertained.

All alterations of poſition from one ſituation to another, made by conſiderable bodies, muſt begin from a halt, except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or diminiſhing or increaſing their front, which may be done while in movement.

Alterations

Alterations of poſition made from the halt, may ſucceed each other quickly. No unneceſſary time need be taken up in ſcrupulous dreſſing, but every one be inſtantly apprized of the following movement. Alterations of poſition made from the halt.

Words of command, for all movements of lines or columns, muſt be given— Words of command.

In ſuch manner, and in ſuch extent of voice, that every individual ſhould be apprized of what is to be done. Explanatory

Short—Quick—Loud—ſo as to be caught and repeated from right to left of a line, or from front to rear of a column, in the ſhorteſt time poſſible. Executory.

All alterations in carrying arms, change of pace, facing, inclining, halting, marching, and in general every operation of the battalion, whether in line or column, which ought to be executed by the whole, at the ſame inſtant, are made in conſequence of one word from the commanding officer. But when broke and in column on many occaſions, the leaders of diviſions repeat or give the words of—march—wheel—halt, &c. to their ſeveral diviſions as is neceſſary.

Every individual is apprized by a caution of what is intended to be done, before any alteration of poſition takes place. Commands given.

The commandant of the line or column, gives the firſt explanatory direction to the battalion or diviſion, which then regulates, and from thence it circulates.

Every movement muſt be divided into its diſtinct parts, and each part executed by its explanatory and ſeparate words of command. Diviſion of movements.

No time is loſt in complying with theſe directions; confuſion, hurry, and uncertainty will be thereby avoided; preciſion, order and uniformity attained.

On all occaſions when words of command are not heard; if the directing diviſion has made a change of ſituation, the reſt of the body will conform to it, as ſoon as the intelligence of the officer, has pointed out what is meant to be done. Diviſion of commands.

Every officer muſt practiſe giving his words of command, even to the ſmalleſt bodies, in the full extent of his voice, and in a ſharp tone. By ſuch bodies he muſt not only be heard, but alſo by the leaders of others, who are dependant on his motions. The juſtneſs of execution, and the confidence of the ſoldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner, in which every officer of every rank gives his orders.

Neceſſary attentions.

In the midſt of ſurrounding noiſes, the eye, and the ear of the ſoldier, ſhould be attentive only to his own immediate officer: the loudneſs of whoſe commands, inſtead of creating confuſion and unſteadineſs, reconcile to the hurry of action, which is generally ſo oppoſite to the ſtillneſs of common exerciſe. All ſuperfluous or drilling directions are improper, when the regiment or line is together; and every one ſhould be alone attentive to the exact execution of his allotted part.

The eye will often point out the propriety and moment of conforming to the movements of the regulating body, when the ear does not receive the explanatory word of command.

Signals.

Signals are improper in exerciſe, becauſe dangerous and apt to be miſtaken in ſervice: every direction ought to proceed from the voice, which is explanatory to the underſtanding. But a few well diſtinguiſhed ſignals of the drum or trumpet, may on ſome occaſions be permitted as expreſſive of the alterations of pace, and as preparations to a march—halt—quick ſtep—ſlow ſtep—forming line from column. But theſe which come only from the commanding officer, are to be conſidered as addreſſed to the leaders of battalions or other bodies, who are in conſequence to give their verbal orders for the execution.

On all occaſions of parade, the drums and muſic add much to the appearance of the troops; but they are improper in manœuvre, and counteract the regular movements of great bodies. They are conſtantly varying the times of march, they create noiſe, prevent that equal ſtep which habit alone can give to troops, and tend to deſtroy

deſtroy the very end they are meant to promote; for the uncertain time of an inſtrument, can never regulate the cadenced march; and the ſame ſound is progreſſively heard at different inſtants, in proportion to the diſtance of the point from which it iſſues; as this perceptibly takes place even in the extent of a battalion, its operation on a greater body or on a line, is evident. The tact or cadenced march, can be preſerved from the eye and habit alone, and troops muſt be accuſtomed to maintain it, notwithſtanding drums, muſic, or other circumſtances may be offering a different marked time. Their general uſe therefore is on occaſions of ſhow and parade; at the moment of the charge, they may however be allowed, as inſpiriting and directing the attack, and alſo in the column of march; but in moſt movements of manœuvre, during every tranſition from line to column, or from column to line, in all formations, and in the march of the line in front, they muſt be ſparingly uſed, and never as directing the cadence of the ſtep, or in the inſtruction of the recruit, officer, or battalion.

Muſic, drums, &c.

POINTS of MARCH and FORMATION.

EVERY leader of a body, which is to move directly in front, muſt take care to conduct it in a line, truly perpendicular to that front, otherwiſe, it can never preſerve its order intire, but muſt cloſe on one flank, and open out on the other.

To march on one object with certainty, and without wavering, is exceeding difficult, and not to be depended on—two objects therefore, placed in the ſame direct line, are neceſſary for the purpoſe of correct movement.

Points of march.

This rule of marching on two objects, is general, and muſt be obſerved by the leaders of all bodies, great or ſmall, whether in front or file.

Therefore, before ſuch movement is begun, a principal diſtant and remarkable object, perpendicular to the front, and to the point by which the body is to move, muſt be choſen. Fig. 1.

The

The leader will then fix on ſome intermediate ſtone, tuft of graſs, or whatever occurs on the ſurface of the ground (and ſuch always occurs) and will conduct his body, ſo as to preſerve theſe two objects in the ſame line.

From time to time as he approaches the old ones, he will chooſe new intermediate points; and by this means will be able to advance in the ſame direct line with a mathematical exactneſs, which is eſſential in the movements of great bodies.

When neceſſary to alter the direction of any body, new points of march muſt be aſcertained; and by wheeling or other operation, ſuch body muſt be placed ſquare with ſuch points, before it can properly move upon them.

Points of march.

Fig. 1.

A perſon placed in the front of any body, can with difficulty determine the line which is perpendicular to ſuch front—but, if he poſts himſelf in the rear of it, he can then, having the ſquare of ſuch body before him to direct his eye, more eaſily aſcertain the perpendicular. It is therefore from the rear that ſuch points ſhould be given; and could we ſuppoſe ranks and files moſt perfectly correct, the prolongation of each file, would be a perpendicular to the front of the body.

Points of formation.

As the points of march, are thoſe on which bodies move, and are always perpendicular to the front; ſo the points of formation are thoſe on which they are at any time formed, and are on the flanks in the prolongation of the front, after ſuch formation.

The more remarkable and detached thoſe points are from other objects, the better.

Of the POINT D'APPUI, or POINT of SUPPORT.

THE point of APPUI is that to which the wing of a battalion, or of a more conſiderable corps is placed. From that fixed point when the body forms, muſt it begin to line itſelf on the oppoſite point

point of formation. Therefore, the *alignement* is taken from the right wing, when broke from the right; and from the left wing, when broke from the left; becauſe the body is ſuppoſed marching to the point of *appui*, to place itſelf there. One caſe is an exception from this principle, when diſtances are taken from the rear of the column. Fig. 2.

As when moving, or when halted, one of the flanks of every body follows out a preſcribed line, or reſts on a given point; dreſſing is therefore always to that hand, as to the line or point of *appui*. And this great principle is to be obſerved from the ſmalleſt body to the moſt conſiderable corps, and regulates the combined attack of the army as well as the march of the platoon. Point of *appui*.

The exact dreſſing of the battalion is one of the moſt important of evolutions; and the proper advancing or retiring of the line depends upon it. The beſt choſen and well trained ſoldiers will fall into diſorder, if they remain ill dreſſed in their battalion.

It may be ſuppoſed, that the faults which ſpring from a defective *alignement*, can be corrected while in motion—this may be done with a ſingle battalion, but is nearly impoſſible with a line compoſed of ſeveral. It will be always beſt to dreſs it, as it ought, before marching: and every officer muſt therein aſſiſt, as the moſt eſſential requiſite to advance well in line.

For this purpoſe it is neceſſary—

That officers always dreſs the faces of the ſoldiers of their diviſions, and not their breaſts.

That an officer ſhould never dreſs a body without determining, or at leaſt ſuppoſing a line on which the diviſion or battalion is to be formed.

That he ought conſtantly to ſtop at the point choſen for his point of *appui*, and to which his flank is to be placed: From thence he will dreſs till he has dreſſed his platoon, or at leaſt a part, on the diſtant point of formation. If he does then move, he muſt always conſider the laſt man whom he has ſo correctly dreſſed as the point of *appui*, and proceed accordingly—But when employed in the act of dreſſing, Dreſſing from the point of *appui*.

dreſſing, he muſt not run along the diviſion; for while moving, he cannot preſerve his intended direction, and a falſe *alignement* will thence ariſe.

In the ſame manner is a whole battalion dreſſed; the diviſions of which may be conſidered as the individuals were in the diviſion—The flank of the firſt is not to be quitted, till the ſecond diviſion, or at leaſt part of it, is dreſſed; nor muſt the flank of the ſecond be quitted, till the third is dreſſed.

The ALIGNEMENT.

THE ALIGNEMENT is the ſtraight line drawn between two given points, either of march or formation. To march, or form in the *alignement*, is to make troops either march or form in that ſtraight line. Fig. 3.

On the juſtneſs and obſervance of this line depends the accuracy of all movements and formations, and therefore every relative help muſt be applied to enſure it.

Points fixed in the *alignement*.

1ſt. The general direction of this line is always determined before the troops arrive on it.—2d. The point of that line at which the head of the troops is to arrive, muſt next be aſcertained.—3d. That line muſt be accurately traced out and ſubdivided, in order that the troops may march and form correctly upon it.

Therefore before a column open or ſolid, approaches the ground where it is to form—the commander will aſcertain, as circumſtances may determine him, the advanced and diſtant points, at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of his line when formed.

If he enters his *alignement* at one of thoſe determined points, he continues his march ſtraight upon the adjutants and the other.

But if he enters the *alignement* ſomewhere betwixt them; it then becomes neceſſary to aſcertain the point where the direction of the march interſects the new *alignement*, and which is the point where the head of the column firſt arrives in it.

The

The following method of finding an intermediate point between two given, and perhaps inacceſſible objects, muſt be thoroughly underſtood and conſtantly practiſed: and if one column in this manner aſcertains its point, any other number connected with it in their movements, will in ſame manner, or eaſier determine theirs. Fig. 4.

When the head of the advancing column approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon—Two officers A, B are ſhown the flank points of the *alignement*, D P, and are ſent forward to determine the intermediate point O, at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction. Method of finding intermediate points in the *alignement*.

They ſeparate ſeventy or eighty yards, go to the ſide to which the column is to wheel, and B immediately places himſelf in the line of A P, advanced before the head of the column—They then both move on, B always preſerving A in a line with P, and each deſcribing the portion of a circle upon P, as a center—A looks to B, and moves on while the point D continues to be advanced before him: but the inſtant he has brought B in a line with D, they both halt; and the four points are then in the ſame line. Fig. 4.

A remains fixed—B returns to the column, which has been purſuing its march in its given direction; and when it approaches nearer, he having now the line of march and the *alignement* both aſcertained to him, again advances, and eaſily places himſelf at their interſection O, which is the exact point where the head of the column is to arrive.

The officers employed to give the *alignement*, may in this manner exerciſe themſelves, and determine it at the gallop, and therefore no halt or ſtop of the column is to be apprehended; and all officers whatever, ought to be perfect maſters of this operation, as uſeful in the conduct of the moſt minute diviſions, and particularly in preſerving the flanks of battalions when in line, dreſſed in the general direction of the ſeveral colours.

When two bodies are in march to gain the ſame given point; the above method may moſt uſefully be applied, to aſcertain which of them can firſt arrive at it.

Method of determining which of two columns arrive firſt at a given point.

Fig. 4.

The column C, and enemy E, are both in march on the point O. The leader of C, obſerves a diſtant point at S beyond, and a-head of the enemy E. If he can continue to keep this object open, and in front of the enemy, it is a certain ſign that he approaches faſteſt to his wiſhed for point; but, if it appears moving towards the rear of the enemy's march, it indicates his advantage, and the attempt muſt be given up in time.

When a number of fixed and conſpicuous objects happen to be found in the *alignement* in which the column marches, no farther helps ſeem neceſſary for preſerving the pivot flanks of the diviſions compoſing it, in that line.

Points in the *alignement* beſt aſcertained by adjutants and mounted officers.

But, as there are many ſituations where heights and valleys intervene, and where no remarkable objects, diſtant or intermediate, occur in the direction, which (perhaps on account of that of the enemy) muſt be choſen; the moſt general and ſureſt points to move on, on all occaſions, are the adjutants, when trained for that purpoſe.

As the advanced adjutants, are always front points when marching in the *alignement*; ſo the point of wheeling or entry into the *alignement*, is always a fixed rear point (when more marked ones do not offer) on which to regulate and correct the march of the column, after it has entered on the *alignement*.

Fig. 3.

Suppoſe O P, are two given points in the *alignement*—at O, the line is entered upon; the firſt adjutant of the general or of the leading battalion advances towards P, not more than one hundred and fifty or two hundred paces, otherwiſe he might retard the march of the column. He is lined on the point P, by the commander or by ſome one placed at O; he then marks the point over which his body is, and retires his horſe, till its head is preciſely over that point—the adjutants turn their faces towards the column when it has entered the line.

In this manner, one intermediate point will have been found, viz. the head of the horſe, which the diviſions touch in marching, and which they preſerve in a direct line with the point P. But when

when the officer of the firſt diviſion has arrived at that adjutant, he will find himſelf in the ſame ſituation as when he was at O; conſequently, another intermediate point muſt by this time be prepared for him.

Points in the *alignement* how aſcertained by adjutants and mounted officers.

The adjutant of the ſecond battalion of the line, or another aid of the general's, advances in ſufficient time, and remains with his horſe's head where that of the firſt adjutant was—he immediately moves on about two hundred paces, lines himſelf with the ſecond adjutant and the point O, then places his horſe's head as before directed; and thus a new intermediate point is given. If the line extends farther, a third adjutant relieves the ſecond, he the firſt, who anew arranges himſelf on the horſes heads of the other two, and proceeds as already directed. Fig. 3.

Three adjutants will be ſufficient to give the *alignement* to a whole line, and to keep them in it, if they thus alternately relieve each other: but if the line is very extenſive, it will be proper to detach one or two more to aſſiſt and relieve them, in order to prevent the center and rear from loſing the *alignement*.

In this manner, and in the thickeſt weather, when neither diſtant points, nor the extent of the body can be ſeen, do the moſt conſiderable columns of Pruſſian troops preſerve, and form in a given and determined direction; and in this manner is a line of march or formation prolonged to any length, and ſuch direction given it, with or without the help of fixed points, as beſt ſuits the circumſtances of the movement, and the views of the commander. Another advantage alſo ariſing, is, that though the diſtant point may not be ſeen or known by the pivot leaders, yet the mounted officers always ſtanding faced to the new line, and with their horſes heads directly over it, are known by every one to be there placed for the purpoſe of marching or forming upon—three ſuch officers ſhould be always ſtationary, at the ſame time, in a line of any conſiderable extent.

Although when two diſtant points are given, a perſon placed at one of them, can direct an intermediate point in the line of the

Method of *alignement* from one to another given point.

other: yet he will do it with more exactneſs, if inſtead of remaining at the firſt point, he retires a few paces from it, and looks along both; in this ſituation, he will have his eye more correctly guided in the line of the two given points; as it is in fact obtaining another object of direction. This circumſtance muſt be attended to, when the line is to be prolonged, intermediate points found, or in the dreſſing of all bodies where the flank point, and one other diſtant point is given. If there are ſeveral diſtant points given in the ſame line, this precaution does not become neceſſary.

THE INSTRUCTION of the officer, the recruit, and the ſquad, ſo as to qualify them to diſcharge their duties in the greater bodies of the company and battalion, comprehend a variety of important and neceſſary articles, each of which muſt be particularly detailed. Their GENERAL HEADS are as follows;

OFFICER.

EACH officer muſt be taught every individual circumſtance neceſſary to a recruit, accuſtomed to give words of command, and the exerciſe of the fuſil, ſword, and eſponton.

Squads of officers, ſhould be occaſionally marched and exerciſed by a field officer; they ſhould be much practiſed to judge of and preſerve diſtances, both in front and file: to cover pivot flanks; to take up and prolong lines; from the number of files in their diviſions, to be accurate in the ground neceſſary for each, and to extend that knowledge to the front of greater bodies; to aſcertain perpendiculars and the ſquareneſs of the wheel; to be decided, pointed, and alert in their commands and movements: habit and attention

Inſtruction of officers.

attention will ſoon produce perfection, in theſe and every other requiſite; and individuals from time to time when qualified, muſt be ordered to exerciſe the battalion, or its parts.

The complete inſtruction of an officer, enlarges with his ſituation, and at laſt takes in the whole circle of military knowledge. From the variety required of him, his exertion muſt be unremitting, each to make himſelf maſter of his own part. We have already ſhown the neceſſity of this, and that he is the ſpring, which regulates or diſorders the great machine.

RECRUIT.

RECRUITS muſt be individually taught in the following progreſſion.

Inſtruction of the recruit.

Without Arms.

- Poſition.
- Turning the eyes to the - - - - - Right. / Front. / Left.
- Facings when halted to - - - - - Right. / Left. / Rear.
- March on given points to the - - Front, Flank — Ordinary Time. / Oblique — Quick Time.
- Turning on the march to - - - Right. / Left. / Rear.
- Halting.
- Dreſſing on given points to - - - Right. / Left.

When prepared for it, ſeveral recruits are then joined together in a ſingle rank, but at open files, that they may carry themſelves properly, be independent, and learn not to lean upon one another, or to totter, and ſeparate their arms from their bodies. In this ſituation

ſituation they march for ſome days, and perform together what they have been taught ſingly.

The accoutrements of the recruit are then put on: the firelock is given; and each man is ſeparately inſtructed in the uſe of it.

With arms, he practiſes the ſame movements that he hath been taught without arms; and is then gradually brought forward in the ſeveral parts of the firelock exerciſe, both manual, and platoon.

When thus far individually advanced, the recruits are then aſſembled in ſquads, more or leſs numerous, and proceed firſt in ſingle ranks, and then in bodies, to be inſtructed in,

Inſtruction of the recruit.

With Arms.

- The diſtance of ranks and files.
- Opening and cloſing of ranks and files.
- Dreſſing, Marching, Halting } on given points.
- Facing to the flank, or rear.
- Marching in, Wheeling in, Fronting from } File.
- Wheeling the quarter circle from the { March. / Halt.
- After the wheel - - - - - - - { continuing the march, / or halting.
- Manual, Platoon } Exerciſe.
- Firings { by ſingle men of each file. / by ſingle files. / by ſingle ranks. / by platoons.

All theſe, and other heads of inſtruction for the recruit, muſt be followed out according to more detailed regulation: and it requires

quires in the officers of each company, who have ſuch care, the moſt conſtant perſeverance and knowledge.

They muſt allow for the capacity of their recruits; be patient, and not rigorous, where good will and attention are not wanting. Quickneſs is not to be required at firſt; it is the reſult of much practice. The recruit muſt be carried on progreſſively—he ſhould comprehend one thing before he advances to another. Mode of inſtruction.

The difficult motions muſt be practiſed oftner than the eaſy ones, and an equal command of both thereby attained. The preſcribed modes muſt be minutely followed. In learning each motion and poſition, the firelock, fingers, elbows, &c. muſt be juſtly placed by the inſtructor; but when recruits are more advanced, they muſt not be touched, but taught to correct themſelves when ſo admoniſhed. They ſhould not be kept too long to any particular part of exerciſe, ſo as to fatigue, or make them uneaſy; but marching without arms ſhould be much intermixed with the firelock inſtruction.

It is not meant here to enter into a minute detail of the preceding articles; but the oppoſite points being more immediately connected with field movement, which is the great object of this work, are looked upon as fundamental and indiſpenſable, and unleſs they are obſerved, the whole edifice falls to the ground.

- Poſition.
- March
  - in front.
  - oblique.
  - to the flank.
  - in file.
- Halting.
- Dreſſing.
- Wheeling.
- Diſtance of
  - Files.
  - Ranks.

POSITION.

THE equal ſquareneſs of the ſhoulders and body to the front, is the great principle of the poſition and movement of the ſoldier, and cannot be too much attended to. That poſition ſhould never vary, whether he is halted, or in march; and the ſituation in which he can, Poſition.

can, and ought to move, ſhould therefore determine that in which he is to ſtand ſtill.

The heels are nearly cloſe, the toes a little turned out—The arms hang near the body, but not ſtiff—The flat of the hand touches the thigh—The elbows and ſhoulders are kept back, and the belly is drawn in, which occaſions the breaſt to be advanced, and the body to be upright, but rather inclining forward—The head ſhould be erect, and not turned (or the leaſt poſſible) to right or left, as the ſhoulders would certainly accompany it; but the eyes only being occaſionally glanced, will enſure correct dreſſing, if the body remains ſquare.

Without arms.

When the firelock is given, he is firſt taught to carry it ſhouldered. In this ſituation, his body remains in the ſame exact poſition as before preſcribed; except that the wriſt of the left hand is turned out the better to embrace the butt, and the left elbow a little bent, without being ſeparated from the body. The firelock is placed in the hand; and carried in ſuch a manner, that it ſhall not advance or keep back one ſhoulder more than the other; the butt muſt therefore be forward, and as low as can be permitted without conſtraint; the barrel part muſt reſt in the hollow of the ſhoulder; the left elbow muſt not be drawn back, or the firelock attempted to be carried high; otherwiſe the one ſhoulder will be advanced, the other kept back, and the upper part of the body diſtorted, and not placed ſquare with reſpect to the limbs.

With arms.

Of the MARCH.

ALL military movements ſhould be made with the greateſt quickneſs that is conſiſtent with order: the uniformity of poſition, cadence and length of ſtep produce that equality and freedom of march on which depend their effect and preciſion. To this, the ſoldier muſt be carefully trained; nor muſt he be ſuffered to join the battalion till he is thoroughly perfected in this moſt eſſential duty.

The march in front.

In

In marching, each ſoldier muſt be well balanced on his limbs —his arms muſt be ſteady, and not vibrate—his body muſt turn neither to right nor left, incommode his neighbour, nor ſtoop too forward; much leſs muſt he lean back, for in ſuch poſition he can never gain ground in marching. He muſt never advance or keep back one of his ſhoulders: the left is generally thrown back, from a miſtaken notion, that the firelock is thereby better carried—He muſt not turn his head to the hand to which he dreſſes; as a turning of the ſhoulder will undoubtedly follow: but he muſt be accuſtomed to turn his eyes only along the faces of his neighbours, in order to perceive the flank man.

He will never be taught to march well, if he is not inſtructed to ſtretch his ham, but without ſtiffning his knee; and to point his toe, keeping it near the ground, ſo that the perſon before him cannot ſee his ſhoe ſoals either when he raiſes or puts down his feet. Poſition in the march.

In marching as the ham muſt be ſtretched, ſo muſt the body be rather thrown more forward than in the poſition when halted: the firſt is effected by pointing the foot, and touching the ground with the toe rather than the heel: the ſecond is effected when he underſtands, that the body is ſupported by the leg which is on the ground, and that no weight can reſt on that which is in the air; this circumſtance alſo tends to ſtretch the ham.

Care muſt be taken, that the elbows are at all times kept ſteady, but without conſtraint. If he opens them, he muſt preſs one of his neighbours; if he cloſes them, there becomes an improper diſtance, which muſt be filled up: floating on the march in either caſe ariſes, which is too dangerous, not to demand every poſſible remedy that can be applied.

Many different times of march muſt not be required from a ſoldier, or he will be imperfect in all—Two may ſuffice for all occaſions; the ordinary, and quick march. The cadence of theſe, and the equality of ſtep, muſt be habitually and ſtrongly imprinted on each ſoldier. If at any time the march requires more or leſs ground to be gained by individuals, or by bodies; in the one Times of March.

caſe, it muſt be done by lengthning the ſtep a little, and in the other, by ſhortning it; but the cadence of the then march muſt not be altered.

Length of ſtep.

The general length of ſtep muſt be ſuch as will not demand exertion; as artillery in line can move with; as ſurfaces not perfectly uniform and ſmooth will allow of; as men of a ſmall ſtature, in cloſe ranks, and in great bodies, can conform to and keep their order perfect; and ſuch alſo as will admit of being lengthned when circumſtances require; that part of a line which is behind may move up, that the diviſions of a column may keep or regain their juſt diſtances, or that a body, on no very extenſive front, may ſtep out for a ſhort ſpace on particular occaſions.

The time of march muſt alſo be ſuch as a great body can perſevere and move in, without hurry or diſorder.

Ordinary march.

The ordinary, or ſlow march, may be eighty in a minute; each ſtep, thirty inches. It is the pace in parade, common marching in front, and on all occaſions where greater celerity is not ordered. It is nearly at the rate of two miles and one quarter per hour. It is alſo the pace with which, in an eaſy and unconſtrained manner, the columns of an army perform their marches without being reſtricted to perfect uniformity.

Quick march.

The quick march may be one hundred and twenty in a minute, each ſtep 30 inches. It is the pace in all wheelings, and in all filings of diviſions from line to column, or from column to line; and for quick movements in front, either in column, or occaſionally in line when ordered. This ſtep may, on urgent motives, be increaſed to one hundred and fifty in a minute; beyond that degree of quickneſs, it becomes a run.

A diviſion or company may occaſionally run, a battalion may march quick; but the hurrying of a column or large body in front, will certainly produce confuſion, and diſorder. It is never to be riſked where an enemy is to be encountered; though it may ſometimes be neceſſary where a poſt, or ſituation is to be ſeized.

Although the length of ſtep in movements in rank to the front, is thirty inches; yet in movements in file, it will be found neceſſary

to

to ſhorten it: it muſt therefore on ſuch occaſion be made at twenty-four inches, in order to inſure correct diſtances. Steps ſhortned in defile.

To theſe degrees of march, the ſoldier ſhould be accuſtomed without drum or muſic; and by conſtant practice taught to acquire the given times and length. Plummets, vibrating the above numbers in a minute, ſhould be in the poſſeſſion of every inſtructor, and will prevent the uncertainty which univerſally takes place; they may alſo be advantageouſly employed in regulating the muſic. Accurate diſtances of ſteps ſhould be marked out on the ground, along which the recruit ſhould march, and acquire the juſt length of each. Mode of inſtruction.

Length of plummets nearly, and vibrations in a minute	Inches		
	39	60	A rod or cane of an uniform thickneſs, and one-third longer than a plummet, will vibrate in the ſame time as the plummet.
	28.5	70	
	25	75	
	22	80	
	9.8	120	
	6.2	150	

Marking the time of march by continuing the cadence and movement of the feet without advancing, ſhould be taught and practiſed: it is uſeful in dreſſing the battalion before halting; and in waiting for the reſt of the line, when any particular battalion has overſtepped it. Marking the time.

It has been cuſtomary from the halt, when to march in front to ſtep off with the left foot; and when marching in file, to ſtep off with the foot next the proper front. Beginning the march.

To preſerve equality of front, to prevent opening out, or cloſing in, and the conſequent confuſion that muſt follow; the march of every body, great or ſmall (except in the caſe of inclining) is neceſſarily made on a line perpendicular to the then front of that body; and as its component parts ſhould therefore move on that perpendicular, or on ſo many lines parallel to it; each individual muſt in his perſon be placed and remain perfectly ſquare to the given line, otherwiſe he will naturally and inſenſibly take a direction perpendicular to his own perſon, and thereby open out, or cloſe in, according Attentions in marching.

cording to the manner in which he is turned from the true point of march.

If the diſtortion of a ſingle man operates in this manner, what muſt that of ſeveral occaſion, each of whom is marching on a diſtinct front, and whoſe lines of direction are croſſing each other? they muſt inevitably produce confuſion!

From the want of a due attention to this circumſtance, and to the equality of the march, ariſes that floating, diſorder, and incapacity of movement in bodies, great and ſmall, which we often ſee, and which is attempted to be remedied by the looſeneſs of files, and other dangerous and improper expedients; but which can only be obviated by the accurate poſition above required.

This circumſtance, chiefly combined with the equality of the march, the touch of the files which is never relinquiſhed, juſt diſtances, and the true lines on which the Pruſſian troops move; give to them without apparent conſtraint, the head being turned, or the leaſt trouble taken in dreſſing, the moſt wonderful and deciſive accuracy in the marches and operations of the greateſt bodies.

The MARCH in FILE.

The march in file.

THE whole muſt move at the ſame inſtant, each replacing the feet of the man before him, and no opening out muſt on any account be permitted. The front rank will march ſtraight along the given line: each ſoldier of that rank muſt look along the necks of thoſe before him, and never to right or left; otherwiſe a waving in the march muſt take place, and of courſe the loſs and extenſion of line and diſtance, whenever the body returns to its proper front.

The center and rear ranks muſt look to, and regulate themſelves by their leaders of the front rank, and always dreſs in their file. In general, the ſoldier muſt be accuſtomed to obſerve and keep his file; and muſt underſtand, that he is placed in that manner for the ſole purpoſe of ſuſtaining his leader; and each three men, ſhould conſider themſelves as a complete body, ſo arranged for the purpoſe of effectual reſiſtance.

As

As all file marching is in general made in quick time: the rank or diviſion, after facing to the flank, muſt at the word *march*, inſtantly ſtep off, obſerving what is before directed, but neceſſarily diminiſhing the length of ſtep—the ſoldier muſt be well exerciſed to this pace, much irregularity and time ſpent in adjuſting diſtances, will be thereby avoided.

The OBLIQUE, or INCLINED MARCH.

To this eſſential movement, neceſſary on moſt occaſions, the ſoldier muſt be dreſſed with the utmoſt care. He muſt underſtand that as in marching directly forward, his perſon is perfectly ſquare with the line on which he marches; ſo in inclining, he does not alter that ſquare poſition of his body, but is carried in the oblique line, by the mere movement and croſſing of his legs.

The oblique march.

When for example, he is to incline to the right in rank or diviſion, he muſt carry his right foot to the right, and at the ſame time advance in the diagonal line, in which the body is to incline: the left heel muſt then be placed before the right toe—this operation is repeated till the incline ceaſes, and the diviſion is ordered to reſume its former parallel front.

Attentions in inclining.

But in the courſe of this operation, the ſoldier is naturally induced to advance his left ſhoulder, and keep back his right; a fault which muſt be abſolutely avoided, as inevitably altering the direction of the front, and tending to confuſion in a large body. The officer muſt therefore take care, that the other extreme is not fallen into, when he directs the right ſhoulder to be kept forward, and that each ſoldier underſtands this order as a direction only, not to let it be kept back, but that his whole body and feet ſhould remain in the ſame poſition they were in before he began to incline. The officer himſelf muſt always recollect, that at each pace which his diviſion makes, the whole of it remains on a line parallel to that from which it ſet out.

Diviſions will be accuſtomed to turn their eyes both to the hand to which they incline, and alſo from it; as it is often neceſſary

ceſſary in line for a battalion to incline, the whole continuing dreſſed to its center.

Degree of obliquity.

One certain degree of obliquity muſt be underſtood, at which the body is always required to incline; this will naturally be in the diagonal line between the front, and the perpendicular raiſed upon it; ſhould other directions of march be occaſionally required, it ſeems then difficult to anſwer for the preſervation of the front, which is an indiſpenſable article.

Inclining in file.

Diviſions muſt be accuſtomed when in file to incline to either flank, in the ſame manner as is directed when in front, each file looking upon itſelf as a line which inclines in front; and as this in many ſituations, particularly in flank marchings is highly uſeful, an officer cannot too much train his diviſion to it.

Of the SIDE MARCH.

THE ſide ſtep is very neceſſary on many occaſions, when halted; for diviſions to open or cloſe to either flank without facing, or for one or more battalions to move a ſmall diſtance to right or left, in line, and without changing their front.

At the word *march* (if to cloſe to the right) each ſoldier at the ſame inſtant, puts his right foot directly to the right ſide in the given line, and draws his left foot after him, till the whole arrive at the intended point—in doing this it muſt be obſerved,

The ſide or cloſing march.

That the flank leader takes ſmall but quick paces.

That the ſoldiers as in inclining, preſerve their ſhoulders equally and fully to the front.

That they preſerve their relative diſtances.

That in this movement they do not bend their hams.

That they do not paſs the given line.

That the diviſion looks to the hand it cloſes to.

That no ſoldier on this occaſion, if he has loſt his diſtance, is to halt till he has recovered it, though his officer may have given the word *halt*.

Of

Of the HALT.

As at the word *march*, the whole body ſtep off together; ſo at the word *halt*, when marching in front or file, the whole muſt halt at the ſame inſtant. The foot then in the air, finiſhes its proper pace; the other foot is brought up to it, and the whole remain looking to the point by which they were marching, till otherwiſe ordered by an after command. Of the halt.

All halts are made to the point to which the troops are then looking, and a ſeparate command directs the after dreſſing.

Of DRESSING.

At the word *dreſs*, each individual remains in his true poſition, the eyes are caſt towards the point to which they are ordered to dreſs, and the ſmalleſt turn poſſible of the head allowed, in order to facilitate it; the whole perſon of the man muſt move as is neceſſary, and bending forward or backward, not be allowed. The faces of the ſoldiers are the line of dreſſing, not their breaſts or feet; a man who has a broad or raiſed cheſt will otherwiſe be behind his neighbour, who has a thinner one. Of dreſſing.

No rank or body ought ever to be dreſſed without the officer on its flank, determining or at leaſt ſuppoſing a line, on which the platoon or battalion is to be formed.

In the inſtruction of recruits, all marching, halting, and dreſſing, muſt be made on given objects (at leaſt two) in the ſame direct line; and accident muſt never be allowed to direct ſuch operations.

When the word *dreſs*, is alone given, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking. When eyes are to be turned to another point, it will be expreſſed by the addition of *right*, *left*, or *center*.

WHEELING.

WHEELING.

Of wheeling. To wheel, is to give to a diviſion the ſame poſition, which a ſingle ſoldier takes, when he faces towards either flank. The man does it by turning his body, the diviſion by deſcribing the ordered portion of a circle.

A ſingle rank or diviſion may wheel at any pace preſcribed, and without a ſtop or alteration of the time, at which it is then moving. But when a number follow each other in column, and are to wheel above one-ſixth of the circle ſucceſſively, on the ſame identical ground; it becomes neceſſary, in order to prevent falſe diſtances, and a lengthning out of the column, that the diviſions make their wheels at a pace conſiderably quicker, than what the body of the column is then moving at. Therefore, when marching in ordinary time, the wheels muſt be made in quick time; and if marching in quick time, they muſt be made at a ſtill quicker rate.

Uniformity of front, is to be maintained during the wheel, therefore the whole look to the wheeling flank; the ſame time is obſerved by each man, but his ſtep is ſhorter in proportion, as he is near the ſtanding flank, on which the wheel is made. The whole remain cloſed to the ſtanding flank; that is, they touch without incommoding their neighbour; they muſt not ſtoop forward, but remain upright, and the hams are extended as when marching in front—the outward wheeling man looks to his rank, which ſerves him as a radius, with which as accurately as he can, he deſcribes the required portion of the circle. Opening out from the ſtanding flank, is to be avoided; cloſing in upon it during the wheel, is to be reſiſted.

Mode of wheeling.

When the wheel is compleated, the general march at which the body was moving is reſumed, and dreſſing is ordered by the proper point in advancing, or halted.

The

The neceſſity of ſucceſſive diviſions wheeling in an increaſed time, being apparent; whenever therefore, the leading one arrives at the point where the wheel is to be made, it receives the word *halt*; then inſtantaneouſly *wheel* (to whatever hand it is to be directed); *march*; on which the eyes are turned, the whole move, and the wheel is compleated—*halt*, is then given—*eyes* to the pivot flank (if they are not then looking to it) and whenever the ſecond diviſion, which has continued to advance in ordinary time, arrives cloſe on the wheeling point, the word *march* is given to the leading diviſion, and it moves on ſo as not to occaſion a momentary ſtop to the diviſion behind it, which at that inſtant, and in the ſame manner, receives its words—*halt—wheel—march—halt—eyes*, &c. and *march*, whenever the leading diviſion has gained its proper diſtance from it.

In this manner they ſucceed each other; and if the words of command are juſtly given, the wheels performed at an increaſed time and ſtep, and the proper pauſe made after the wheel, no extenſion of the column will take place, but the juſt diſtances betwixt diviſions will ſtill be preſerved.

The rear ranks are always cloſed up, and during the wheel, they incline and cover their proper front rank men. All the diviſions muſt take care that they march correctly upon, and wheel exactly at the point where the leading one wheeled, and do not ſhift to either flank, which without much attention they are apt to do.

Attentions in wheeling.

It often happens that ſoldiers of the diviſion, and particularly of the flanks, halt before the officer has commanded *halt*, or overwheel ſome paces, although he has already given his orders: this happens from the ſoldier being ſo much accuſtomed to wheel the quarter circle, that he mechanically ſtops whenever that is compleated. It is therefore difficult for an officer to give his diviſion a direction, under or above that portion of the circle; and it is of conſequence, that they ſhould be much trained to unequal

wheelings, the beginning and ending of them, being only determined by the command of the officer.

Wheels muſt be directed by the moving flank.

Wheeling by looking to the ſtanding flank, is a modern method, firſt uſed by ſome of the light cavalry, and adopted among the other looſe practices of our infantry, as arriving by a run quicker at the given point, and not ſhifting the pivot. But it is rather a formation in file, than a wheel, will ſeldom be made exact, the uniform front of the body is broken, which ought to be held ſacred, and it is not at every inſtant under the command of the officer, who ſhould have it in his power to halt it on ſuch degree of wheel, as he finds proper. Cavalry, from the eaſe with which each horſe alters his pace, may preſerve uniformity of front while wheeling in this manner, but infantry cannot. This practice was introduced, when open files took place in our battalions; becauſe the touch of the files, the principal guidance being then gone, it became difficult to preſerve what was before eaſy, the uniformity of front, during the wheel.

Wheeling by files.

The ſquad or diviſion when marching in file, muſt be accuſtomed to wheel to either flank, each file ſucceſſively, without loſing or increaſing diſtance. On this occaſion, each file makes its ſeparate wheel, but without an alteration of time of march, or the eyes of the rear ranks being turned from their front rank. The front rank men (whether they are pivot men or not) muſt keep up to their diſtance, and the wheeling man muſt take a very extended ſtep, and loſe no time in moving on.

Formation on two ranks and at open files.

The METHOD almoſt univerſally adopted in our infantry, and in ours only, of forming two deep, and at open files, deſerves the moſt ſerious conſideration. It was not produced by the experience of the German war, but by that of the firſt American. The deſultory ſervice there carried on by ſmall bodies of men, and the then deficiency of movement, and want of flexibility in our ſolid battalions,

battalions, made us run into the other extreme, and firſt introduced it as proper for that country; review appearance continued it; and the new military modes, brought into faſhion by the light infantry, have tended to make it the prevalent order of the ſervice. Many reſpectable officers are ſatisfied of its propriety; but it ſeems neceſſary to conſider its operations and conſequences, when extended to larger bodies than the ſingle battalion.

Its advantages are ſaid to be,

That as infantry ſeldom or never ſhock with bayonets, all formations on a great depth are unneceſſary.

Reaſons for a thin order of formation.

That as fire now decides; the more men that are thus uſefully employed, the better.

That the fire of a third rank is thrown away, and more incommodes the front rank, than it does the enemy.

That at cloſe files, men have not the uſe of their arms; and are apt to crowd, double, and get into confuſion, when under the enemy's fire.

But it muſt be recollected,

Reaſons againſt a looſe order of formation.

That if theſe reaſons are good with reſpect to two ranks, ſome of them operate in favour of a ſingle rank. That though infantry do ſeldom mix with bayonets, yet it would more frequently happen if two ranks were oppoſed to three, and the conſequence ought not then to be doubtful. That rank firing, or reſerving the fire of the third rank, obviates the inconvenience complained of.

That no general could manage, or poſition contain a conſiderable army formed in this manner; even one of twenty thouſand men, would occupy five miles in front. That the great ſcience and object of movement being to act with ſuperiority on certain points; it is never the intention of an able commander to have all his men at the ſame time in action; he means by ſkill and manœuvre to attack a partial part, and to bring the many to act againſt the few; this cannot be accompliſhed at open files and two deep.

That the experience of other ſervices, does not ſhow the inconveniences we complain of, ſuch as to induce them to adopt

our methods, and to give up the fire of the third rank. That the third rank ſerves to fill up the vacancies made in the others in action; without it the battalion would ſoon be in a ſingle rank. That moſt of our calculations ſeem to be for the attack and purſuit of a timid enemy, but not for defence if vigorouſly aſſailed.

That a firſt line thus formed, would undoubtedly give way; and if once pierced, there are few inſtances of an action re-eſtabliſhed by the efforts of a ſecond line. That it is better to have one ſubſtantial and compact line to prevent the miſchief, than ſeveral redoubled and thin ones to endeavour to repair it. That no ſuch order could in any ſhape oppoſe the attack of a determined cavalry.

That in all other ſervices, they adhere to the old mode of files touching; and each ſoldier is impreſſed with a religious obſervance of never relinquiſhing the touch of his neighbour: by this the idea of the neceſſity of order, mutual ſupport and effort, is ſtrongly felt and obſerved. The inconvenience of very cloſe files chiefly operates when the line is marching in front, which will never take place for any great diſtance, as all conſiderable changes of poſition are made on a reduced front, by diviſion marchings or filings, in column or echellon.

That it cannot be doubted, when a battalion is arrived at its object of attack, at cloſe files; that both its impulſe and quantity of fire, in the ſame extent of front, is greater, than when the files are more open; and at any time, it is more eligible to have a diviſion obliged to fall out of the line and double, than to have openings in it, where the enemy muſt certainly penetrate.

Conſequences of open files.

The perfect and correct march of a battalion or line formed at open files, ſeems impoſſible; becauſe its principal guidance, the touch of the files, is gone. Each man is neceſſarily employed to preſerve a required diſtance from his neighbour; he is obliged to turn his head for that purpoſe, this diſtorts his body, a conſtant opening and cloſing takes place, the whole move looſe and unconnected. If this muſt neceſſarily happen in the regulating battalion, its influence on a line may be eaſily imagined, and alſo the condition in which it will arrive near an enemy; who, if he is formed

at

at cloſe files, if his dreſſing and line are chiefly determined by the touch, if the eyes alone are glanced towards the center, if the figure of each individual is full to the front, if the whole move ſquare along their juſt lines without crowding, at an uniform and cadenced ſtep which habit has given, will, at every inſtant of movement or attack, be firm, united, and animated with that ſenſe of his own ſuperiority, which perfect order, and due conſiſtence will always give.

On the whole therefore, the old ideas of firmneſs, compactneſs, and mutual ſupport, ſhould be reſtored and held ſacred; the formation in three ranks and at cloſe files but without crowding, ſhould be adhered to, as the fundamental *order*, on which the battalion ſhould at all times form and march; and the other, in two ranks and at open files, ſhould be regarded only as an occaſional exception that may be made from it, where an extended and covered front is to be occupied, or where an irregular enemy, who deals only in fire, is to be oppoſed.

The formation on three ranks and at cloſe files to be preferred.

Each ſoldier, when in his true poſition under arms and in rank, muſt juſt feel with his elbow, the touch of his neighbour to whom he dreſſes; nor in any ſituation of movement in front, muſt he ever relinquiſh ſuch touch, which becomes in action the principal direction for the preſervation of his order.

Diſtance of files.

There are two diſtances of ranks, open and cloſe; when open they are three paces aſunder; when cloſe, they are one pace; and when the body is halted and to fire, they are ſtill cloſer locked up.

Cloſe ranks is the conſtant and habitual order, at which troops are at all times formed and move. Open ranks, is only an occaſional exception, made in ſituations of parade.

The diſtances of files and ranks relate to the trained ſoldier; but in the courſe of his tuition, he muſt be much exerciſed at open files and ranks to acquire perfect independence, and the command of his limbs and body.

Diſtances of ranks.

The

Firelock and firings.

The particular uſe of the firelock in all its branches, and the nature of the firings that ſhould be ordered and practiſed, are moſt important articles, and require the moſt minute and conſidered detail.

The foregoing inſtructions for recruits, are meant to enforce the neceſſity of uniformity in training, and the perfect preparation on juſt principles of each individual, for the part he is to act in the great body—till he is fully qualified, he muſt not be allowed to join it; one awkward man, whoſe perſon is diſtorted, and whoſe movements are imperfect, will derange his diviſion, and of courſe operate on the battalion and the line in a ſtill more conſequential manner; the effect that many ſuch would produce, is, abſolute diſorder and confuſion.

FORMATION

OF THE

COMPANY AND BATTALION.

THE general diviſions of modern European armies, are almoſt univerſally the ſame—into companies, battalions, regiments, brigades, diviſions, wings, lines.

General diviſions of armies.

The juſt compoſition and arrangement of the various parts, is, what gives movement and energy to the whole.

The company and battalion are the firſt members.

We can never hope to have our battalions compoſed on the true military principles, that direct the eſtabliſhments of other nations—it were time loſt to inſiſt upon their defects. But taking them as they are, or are like to be, there is no reaſon why their internal arrangement and formations, ſhould not be perfect; and ſuch as are required in the component parts of great bodies.

Compoſition of battalions.

The fundamental order of the battalion, is, that in which it meets an enemy, the order of attack. This ſhould be habitually impreſſed on the mind of every ſoldier, and every poſſible occurrence and alteration of ſituation muſt ſpring from it.

Fundamental order of the battalion.

Simplicity and uniformity, are the great principles of military arrangement. The formation of the battalion when ſingle, muſt be

Uniformity of formation.

be exactly the ſame as when acting in line—no intervals betwixt companies—all officers uniformly poſted on the right of their diviſions, inſtead of being chequered in the plauſible manner of right and left—the ſituation of every individual efficient in line, accurately aſcertained; and in caſes of parade, thoſe of ſtaff, drummer, muſic, pioneer, only regarded as ſecondary conſiderations, &c. &c.

COMPANY.

THE preſent effective eſtabliſhment of the battalion is eight companies, viz.—one light—ſix battalion—one grenadier, beſides the ſtaff.

Eſtabliſhment of the company and battalion.

Each company conſiſts of - - - { three officers. two ſergeants. three corporals. one drummer. forty-eight private.

In time of war, the companies will probably be increaſed with one ſergeant, one corporal, and eighteen private; and two additional or recruiting companies alſo added. But whatever number of companies are in a battalion, or their ſtrength, or of battalions in a regiment, the following general rules muſt be applied.

Fig. 5.

Ranks and files.

The companies form three deep, and may be ſuppoſed under arms - - - { fifteen file in peace. twenty file in war.

The files muſt touch without crowding, and will each occupy a ſpace of about twenty-one inches.

There are two orders of formation—cloſe order, or order of attack; and open order, or the order of parade.

Orders of formation.

Cloſe order, is the fundamental and primary order, on which the battalion and its parts, at all times, aſſemble and form—open order,

order, is only regarded as an exception from it, and occaſionally uſed in circumſtances of ſhow.

Orders of formation.

In cloſe order—the officers are in the ranks, and the rear ranks are cloſed up within one pace.

In open order—the officers are advanced four paces, and the ranks are three paces diſtant from each other.

At all times, the battalion or its parts, aſſemble and join in cloſe order—open order may be afterwards taken for whatever inſpection is neceſſary.

Each company or diviſion forms two platoons. Each platoon forms two ſub-diviſions, when neceſſary for the purpoſes of march.

One officer is poſted on the right of each platoon, in the front rank, covered by a ſergeant in the rear rank, and no coverer in the center rank.

One corporal marks the left of the front rank of each platoon, their files are compleated in the center and rear.

Formation at cloſe order.

The other officer, corporal, drummer, pioneer, are divided in the rear, forming a fourth rank.

When the companies are not ſtrong under arms, and a proportion of officers are abſent—in ſuch caſe, officers will be poſted on the right of companies only, and not of platoons; and the ſupernumeraries in the rear will be thereby increaſed.

When the line is halted, and eſpecially during the firings when engaged—the ſergeant coverers fall back into the fourth rank, and obſerve their platoons.

The fourth rank is at three paces diſtance when halted or marching in line—when marching in column, it muſt cloſe up to the diſtance of the other ranks.

The eſſential uſe of the fourth rank, is to keep the others cloſed up to the front during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; and it is a great defect in our eſtabliſhment, not to allow of a larger number of non-commiſſioned officers being applied for this purpoſe.

The places of abſent officers muſt be ſupplied by ſergeants; thoſe of ſergeants by corporals; and thoſe of corporals by intelligent men.

Whenever the officers move out of the front rank in parade, marching in column, or otherwiſe—their places are always taken by the ſergeant coverers, and preſerved till the officers again reſume them.

Commands — When the COMPANY is to take open order from cloſe order.

Rear ranks take open diſtance - At this *command*, the flank men on the right of the rear ranks, ſtep briſkly back to mark the ground, on which each rank reſpectively is to halt, and dreſs at open diſtance; every other individual remains ready to move.

March - - - At this *command*, the rear ranks fall back two and four paces, each dreſſing by the right, the inſtant it arrives upon its ground—the officers move out in front four paces, and divide the ground—the two ſergeant coverers replace the two officers in the front rank. The third corporal and the pioneer, cover (in the rear rank) the ſergeants—the drummer places himſelf on the right of the right ſergeant.

This regards the company when ſingle; but when united in the battalion, other poſts are allotted to the drummer and pioneer.

Commands — When the COMPANY is to take cloſe order from open order.

Rear ranks cloſe to the front - The officers, drummer, pioneer, third corporal, face to the right.

The

March - - - { The ranks close within one pace, marching two and four paces, and then halting. The officers move into their respective posts. The sergeants fall back, and each individual resumes his place, as in the original close order.

The division of the company into squads.
The assembly, and inspection of squads.
The joining of squads to form company.
The sizing, and forming the company.
The inspection of the company.
The march of the company by divisions, to the battalion parade.

} Make a part of the internal regulations of the battalion, and require being detailed.

BATTALION.

WHEN the companies join, and the battalion is formed, there is to be no interval betwixt each, grenadier, light company, or other, but every part of the front of the battalion should be equally strong—Such intervals present so many flanks, and weak points, and could on no account be allowed in a more extensive line.

Formation of the battalion.

Each company which makes a part of the same line, and is to act in it, must be formed three deep.

When the light company is detached and the grenadiers remain, they will be undivided on one flank of the battalion whenever there are several battalions in line: but when the battalion is single, they are permitted to be occasionally divided on each flank.

Fig. 5, 6.

When the grenadier or light company are detached, and make no part of the line, they may be formed two deep, if it is found proper.

Diviſions of the battalion.

The ſix battalion companies will compoſe three grand diviſions—ſix companies, or diviſions—twelve platoons—twenty-four ſub-diviſions when neceſſary for the purpoſes of march. The battalion is alſo divided into right and left wings.

The company will draw up according to ſeniority of captains from the right.

Poſition of the companies in battalions.

Light infantry——lieutenant colonel, ſecond captain——fourth captain, third captain——major, firſt captain——grenadiers.

The colonel's company takes place only according to the rank of its captain. The three oldeſt captains are on the right of grand diviſions. Officers commanding diviſions and platoons are all on the right of their reſpective ones.

There is no interval betwixt companies.

Ranks are at the diſtance of one pace; except the fourth rank, which has three paces.

Formation at cloſe order.

The colours are placed betwixt the third and fourth battalion companies—one in the front rank, and one in the center rank covered by the ſergeant major in the rear rank; one other ſergeant muſt alſo be ready to move out with the front colour, when the battalion marches.

The commanding officer, is the only officer advanced in front three paces.

The lieutenant colonel is behind the center ſix paces from the third rank.

The major and adjutant are on horſeback ſix paces in the rear of the third and fourth companies.

There is alſo an officer on the left flank of the battalion.

The pioneers are aſſembled behind the center, formed two deep, and nine paces from the third rank.

The

The muſic are three paces behind the pioneers, in a ſingle rank.

The drummers of the ſix battalion companies, are aſſembled in two diviſions, ſix paces behind the third rank of the ſecond and fifth companies.

The grenadier and light company drummers and fifers, are ſix paces behind their reſpective companies.

The ſtaff of chaplain, ſurgeon, quarter maſter, and ſurgeon's mate, are three paces behind the muſic.

Every other individual is at his poſt as already allotted him in company; and in general, officers are to remain poſted with their proper companies.

In marching and manœuvring the ſingle battalion, the commanding officer is mounted, and in general in the front. In the firings, and when engaged, he is diſmounted, and in the center of the front rank before the colours.

Commanding officer.

The commanding officer of the fourth company may occaſionally be ordered in front of the battalion, when marching in line, and may lead it under the direction of the field officers.

Companies equalized.

The companies muſt be equalized, and of courſe the platoons, this being of infinite importance in all the manœuvres of the battalion and line. In time of ſervice ſupernumeraries may be collected, or placed to advantage in the fourth rank, ready to fill up the places of ſuch as may be diſabled in the other ranks.

Commands	When the BATTALION takes open order.
Rear rank take open order - - -	At this *command*—The flank men on the right of the rear ranks, ſtep briſkly back to mark the ground on which each rank reſpectively is to halt, and cover at open diſtance—Every other individual remains ready to move.

At

March - - -

At this *command*, the whole move as follows.

The rear ranks fall back two and four paces, each dreſſing by the right the inſtant it arrives on the ground.

The officers in the front rank, as alſo the colours move out four paces. Thoſe in the rear, together with the muſic move through the intervals left open by the front rank officers, and divide themſelves, viz. The captains covering the ſecond file from the right, the lieutenants the ſecond file from the left; and the enſigns oppoſite the center of their reſpective companies.

The muſic form betwixt the colours, and the front rank.

The ſergeant coverers move up to the front rank, to preſerve the intervals left by the officers.

The pioneers fall back to ſix paces diſtance behind the center of the rear rank.

The drummers take the ſame diſtance behind their diviſions.

The major moves to the right of the line of officers—the adjutant to the left of the front rank.

The ſtaff place themſelves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, viz. Chaplain —ſurgeon—quarter maſter—mate.

The lieutenant colonel and colonel diſmounted, advance before the colours two and four paces.

The whole being arrived at their ſeveral poſts—halt, dreſs to the right, and the battalion remains formed in order of parade.

When

When a battalion is reviewed ſingly, then in order to make more ſhow—the diviſions of drummers may be moved up and formed two deep on each flank of the line—the pioneers may form two deep on the right of the drummers of the right, and the ſtaff may form on the right of the whole.

Commands — When the BATTALION reſumes cloſe order.

Rear ranks cloſe to the front -

All the officers face to the right.
The muſic face to the right.
The drummers, if on the flanks, face to the center.
The pioneers, if on the flanks, face to the center.
The ſtaff face to the right.
The colours and lieutenant colonel face to the right.
The ſergeants, if in the front rank, face to the right.

March - - -

The rear ranks cloſe within one pace, moving up two and four paces, and then halting.
The officers move through, and into their reſpective intervals, and each individual arrives at, and places himſelf properly at his poſt in cloſe order.
The muſic marches through the center interval.
The ſergeants, drummers, pioneers, &c. &c. reſume their places, each as in the original formation of the battalion in cloſe order.

When the battalion wheels by diviſions to either flank into column; both colours always wheel up to the proper front, and place them-

Colours in column.

themſelves behind the new pivot file.—Drummers, muſic, &c. remain in the rear of the diviſions they covered in line.

No colour reſerve.

There is no colour reſerve. There ſeems no reaſon why the center ſhould be much more reinforced than any other part of the battalion; and the pioneers, muſic, &c. ſufficiently ſtrengthen it when in order of attack.

Poſting of officers.

All officers are uniformly poſted on the right of their platoons. Intricacy ariſes from the arrangement by wings. On particular occaſions, and when neceſſary, officers are directed to ſhift to the left of their platoons.

Light company.

The conſtant order of the light company when formed in line, and united with the battalion, is at the ſame diſtance of files as the battalion. Their extended order is an occaſional exception that may be taken when they are ſingle, detached, and when neceſſary.

Numbering battalions.

The companies will be numbered from the right of battalions to the left, 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. The platoons of companies will be numbered right and left of each. The ſubdiviſions of companies will be numbered, 1. 2. 3. 4. of each. And theſe ſeveral appellations will be preſerved, whether faced to front or rear. The grenadier, and light companies will be numbered ſeparately in the ſame manner, and with the addition of thoſe diſtinctions.

Intervals of battalions.

At all times in line, and with cannon attached, the interval betwixt battalions is twelve paces, being a ſpace ſufficient for two battalion guns to work in. Without cannon that interval may be ſix paces.

With a very few obvious alterations theſe general rules take place when the company or battalion is permitted, or ordered to form in two ranks only. And it is alſo evident, that they are meant equally

equally to apply whether the companies are ſtrong or weak, and whether a greater or leſſer number of them compoſe the battalion.

In general the companies ſhould arrive, and halt on the parade of the battalion in open column, either of platoons or companies, and with either right or left in front. The ground is given by whichever diviſion firſt arrives at it, and the others arrange themſelves in front or rear accordingly.

General method of aſſembling the battalions.

In this ſituation are reports made to the commanding officer—companies and diviſions equalized—muſic, drummers, pioneers, &c. aſſembled at their proper ſtations—all other individuals of the battalion placed—pivot files, and juſt wheeling diſtances corrected. The battalion is then formed in line, by wheels of the quarter circle, and by *word* from the commanding officer, the colours are ſent for, and received, and the whole are thus in readineſs to move.

Sending for the colours.
Receiving the colours.
Returning the colours.
&c.

} Make a part of the internal regulations of the battalion, and require being detailed.

On all occaſions of common parade, a battalion or its parts ſhould never aſſemble, or be diſmiſſed without performing ſome one operation or other of movement. The line ſhould be repeatedly wheeled to either flank into open column, and from open column into line. When in open column, the ſeveral companies ſhould be frequently exerciſed in the manual and platoon, each by its reſpective officer; for thereby the men are accuſtomed amidſt ſurrounding noiſes to have the eye and ear fixed on, and attentive ſolely to his command; and officers in the like ſituation are taught recollection of, and attention to their own buſineſs only. Particular diviſions ſhould alſo be wheeled, advanced, or retired, no matter how ſmall a diſtance, and placed perpendicular to the propoſed formation, however little varied from the former one; the others will then be directed to take their places in open column, ready to wheel up into line. The cloſe

Mode of inſtruction.

column may alſo be formed; and from cloſe column, the line, &c. &c. &c.

In this manner by ſimple, and imperceptible practice the ſteadineſs, and inſtruction of every individual is attained; and officers are made maſters of the three great and important duties required of them, particularly in the field, and on which ſo much depends, viz. Preciſion and energy in their words of command—the judging exactly of diſtances—the correct dreſſing of pivot flanks, which enſures the conſequent juſt forming of the line on given, but never on accidental points.

Requiſites in officers.

The ſame attentions may on a leſs ſcale be had on the parades of the company, or ſmaller bodies, and on all aſſemblies of guards and detachments. Was ſuch method uniformly practiſed, much time unneceſſarily conſumed in the field in detail and manual exerciſe might be ſaved, and the battalion be there ſolely employed in movements, ariſing from ſuch circumſtances and varieties of ground as preſented themſelves to the commanding officer. The modes of their execution, would be already thoroughly underſtood, and inſtantly applied by each individual.

Advantages attained.

Fig. 7.

Attentions in the exerciſe of ſmall bodies.

Single diviſions, companies or battalions when at exerciſe, muſt generally conſider themſelves as part of a line, and not always as detached, or independent bodies. Their movements, and formations ſhould be on a ſuppoſition of lining with other troops, already upon their flanks. Two or more perſons ſeparated at a proper diſtance from one another, and from the company or battalion, may repreſent the flanks and center of an adjoining battalion, and may always firſt take their ſtation in a new line—This would cauſe the formations to be on determined, not accidental points; the univerſal practice of which latter uſage is, what in part occaſions the incorrectneſs and deficiency too apparent, whenever any number of our battalions are directed to move, act, or form in concert.

The

The idea of a battalion being conſidered as a perfect and independent body, and its commander playing the part of a general on moſt occaſions is very apt to miſlead. In war though it may be at times ſingle and detached, yet in common it ſhould only be looked upon as a member of the line, its movements as relative and dependent on thoſe of others, and its principal operations ſhould be calculated accordingly.

In order to enforce theſe eſſential obſervances, general officers at reviews, and inſpections ſhould not allow regiments to move, and form, but in ſuch given lines, and to ſuch given points, as they themſelves ſhall at the inſtant preſcribe—they ſhould narrowly obſerve that commanding officers are regulated by theſe principles, and do move, and form on two detached objects in the ſame ſtraight line, not on one alone, which is the general practice, and which muſt always produce an accidental march or formation of the line.

Attentions of general officers at reviews.

OF THE

COLUMN.

A COLUMN, is any number of ſeparate bodies placed in a continued line behind, and covering each other.

When there are diſtances betwixt each, it is called an open column, or column of march, or manœuvre.

When there are no diſtances, but the ſeveral bodies compoſing it are cloſed up to each other, it is called the cloſe column, the maſs, or column of formation. Fig. 8.

All columns are ſuppoſed formed from line, and for the purpoſe of again extending into line—either flank may lead, but the diviſions of the line muſt follow in a regular manner, from right to left, or from left to right. Whatever is the relative poſition of a body in line, ſuch ought it to be in column; and where ſeveral connected columns are formed, the ſame flanks of each ſhould be in front; but whether rights or lefts, will depend on circumſtances. General method of forming columns.

The advantage attending this column, is, that it is univerſal, ſimple, and beſt adapted to all future formations of the line, by one eaſy, general, and conſtant method; and that at any one inſtant, and upon any one given diviſion, it can extend into line. When its mechaniſm is conſidered and well underſtood, its formations

mations will all appear relatively *central*, made on the ſhorteſt lines, and in the quickeſt manner poſſible.

Columns formed from the center of the bodies, which compoſe them by alternate diviſions, files, or any otherwiſe compoſed than from the flanks; are for the moſt part defective and improper, not general or adapted to all ſituations, having intricate methods of forming in line, which vary according to circumſtances; and ſhould not be uſed, as being unneceſſary, and tending to puzzle and embarraſs at times, when preciſion is moſt requiſite.

General method of forming columns.

The column formed from the flanks, is adapted to all poſſible occaſions of movement; and is readily converted into that of attack, or defence. But, at the ſame time it is allowed, that there may be ſome given ſituations, where the column may be formed to advantage from the center.

Of the OPEN COLUMN.

THE great object of manœuvre, is to be able from the order of march, to take in the quickeſt and beſt manner poſſible, any given poſition in line; and inſtantly to change from that ſituation, to any other, which circumſtances may require, and which will give an advantage in attacking, or oppoſing an enemy.

Neceſſity of making changes of ſituation in columns.

This can ſeldom be done by the movement of large bodies in front, which will always take up much time, is fatiguing to the troops, and difficult in proportion to the extent of ſuch front.

Changes of ſituation in great bodies, from one diſtant point to another, are therefore generally made in one or more open columns.

When ſuch columns are arrived near their ground, and the line is again to be formed in any given poſition: as the irregularities and obſtacles of the ſurface, will often not allow the diviſions to march up in front, a method general, and adapted to

all

all ſituations muſt be fixed upon; for this purpoſe, the filings of diviſions from a flank, are particularly applicable to the internal movements of each battalion, as enabling in all varieties of ground to take the ſhorteſt lines, and to make the formation in the quickeſt manner poſſible.

General mode of forming from column to line.

But on no other occaſion, ought the battalion or larger bodies, ever to change their ſituation in file—all marches and movements muſt be accompliſhed, in column of companies, platoons, or ſub-diviſions in front; thoſe columns multiplied according to circumſtances, and the moſt ſcrupulous exactneſs required in the preſcribed diſtances; on the judging and preſerving of which, all military manœuvres depend.

The movements of the OPEN COLUMN, are the foundation and mean of all route marching; and of all tranſitions from one poſition to another.

It aſſumes the name of column of march, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers need not be kept on the ſtretch.

Column of march.

It aſſumes the name of column of manœuvre, when being within reach of the enemy, the greateſt exactneſs is required, in order to its ſpeedy formation into line; or to the change of ſituation of that line, from one poſition to another.

Column of manœuvre.

The chief objects of the open column, are, facility of movement, the quick formation of the line to the flank, and the change of ſituation in the ſhorteſt lines, from one poſition to another.

Objects of the open column.

Columns of march or manœuvre, will generally be compoſed of companies or platoons; except when in column of march, the narrowneſs of the ground makes it neceſſary to advance on a ſmaller front.

Front of column.

The commander of the column is always in front of it.

Commander of column.

In column, officers are three paces in front of their diviſions, when the continuation of the march is the object, and the flank non-commiſſioned officers then preſerve diſtances: but as ſoon as they

Officers in column.

they enter the *alignement*, and the intention is to form in line, they then place themſelves on the pivot flanks of their diviſions.

Diſtances in column.

The diſtances in column, are always taken from the flank man of the front rank, to whichever hand the column is dreſſing. The pivot officers and men, take care to cover exactly in a line from front to rear of the column; ſo that if the diſtances are juſt, the line may at any time be formed to the flank by wheeling up of diviſions.

Diſtances of diviſions.

The diſtances wheeled at from line, are always preſerved in open column, unleſs ordered occaſionally to cloſe them.

Column at half intervals.

Where the formation of the line to the front or rear is intended, and that to the flanks cannot be required; the column may march at half or quarter intervals of diviſions, and form; either by entering into the alignement, taking diſtances, and wheeling up to the flank; or it will move up into cloſe column, and then deploy into line.

Intervals in column.

When in march, the proper diviſion will preſerve the diſtance of intervals (when any) in addition to that of its own front.

Dreſſing in column.

In column, the whole diviſions dreſs and cover to the proper pivot flank, viz. to the left, if the line has broke to the right; and to the right, if the line has broke to the left.

Diſtance of ranks.

Rear ranks are one pace aſunder. When the column has to march a conſiderable diſtance, they may be allowed to take two paces, but without increaſing the diſtance betwixt diviſions, which remain ſuch as are preſcribed according to the object of the march or movement.

Orders how given in columns.

In open column of any kind, the words of command from the chief leader, are only addreſſed to the leaders of battalions and diviſions, and not to the men: ſuch leaders give and repeat to their reſpective bodies, the executive words of command, which muſt circulate rapidly from front to rear of the column, and be given with diſtinctneſs and a loud voice.

Orders given in column.

The diviſions of columns, may receive orders from the commanding officer of ſuch diviſions, whether they are looking to or from

from ſuch officer. In general, he is on the flank to which the men dreſs, always leads when in file, and conducts the pivot flank when marching in the alignement.

The open column will never exceed ſuch a pace, as the rear cannot readily comply with, without hurrying. But when the head of the column has at any time changed its direction, ſhould the rear be ordered to file; that it may the ſooner gain ſuch direction, the head muſt then move at a ſlow pace. March in column.

In ſome ſituations, the different diviſions of the column may neceſſarily be marching at different ſteps.

All wheelings and filings of diviſions made from the halt from line to form in column, or from column to form in line, muſt be at a quick ſtep.

In filing, the leader of each file is attentive to his point of marching, his interval from wherever he takes it, and to dreſſing the head of his file. The followers of the front rank cover the necks of their leaders exactly, and obſerve diſtances. The men of the rear rank look to, and are regulated by their proper file leaders of the front rank. Filing.

In diviſion filing for any diſtance, the files may be looſened and again cloſed, before they arrive at their forming point.

In open column of march or manœuvre, the artillery, muſic, drummers, &c. wheel with and remain cloſed up to the rear, or are on the flank of the diviſions to which they belong when in line. Artillery, muſic, drummers, &c.

In column at half or quarter diſtance or in cloſe column, they will file on the flank, which is not the pivot one.

In the ſquare or oblong, they will be in the interior part of it, or follow it when marching.

To prevent an unneceſſary inverſion of the line, columns of march or manœuvre, ſhould be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required Inverſion of the line.

to the right flank, or that the enemy is on the right of the march; and *vice verſa*, when on the left of the march.

The column when marching at half or quarter intervals, muſt preſerve a diſtance betwixt battalions, equal to the front of the column.

General Formations of the Open Column.

Fig. 11. 12. 13.

Formation of the open column from line.

From line, the open column is formed, and marches to the front, flanks, rear, or in any intermediate oblique direction, with either its right or left in front.

In each caſe, the battalion or line *wheels* the quarter circle by diviſions to either flank, and halts—the whole *march*—the leading diviſion *wheels* into, or moves on in the preſcribed direction, and the reſt follow in column.

Fig. 9.

The open column, or the column at half or quarter diſtance, is alſo formed penpendicular or oblique to the line, in any given direction, and on any given diviſion. By the other diviſions (according to which flank is ordered to lead) wheeling, filing, and placing themſelves in front and rear of the given one.

Formation of the line from open column.

The open column, will form in line to the front flanks or rear, and in any oblique or perpendicular direction.

In all caſes, the column moving from its original ſituation, will by its various operations, arrive, and place its pivot flanks in the new intended direction; it will then wheel into line.

The

The BATTALION in OPEN COLUMN.

HAVING mentioned the general circumſtances that relate to the open column, it becomes neceſſary to aſcertain more minutely the operations of the battalion when in that ſituation, and during its ſeveral tranſitions from line to column, or from column to line. The column is here generally underſtood, as being formed with the right in front; but when it is a column with the left in front, the neceſſary alteration of commands and movements are evident, and eaſily made.

When the BATTALION breaks to the FLANK into COLUMN.

THE commanding officer of the battalion orders: by *platoons* to the right (or left) *wheel—march*. All the platoons wheel at the ſame time, and obſerve what has been already preſcribed in the wheeling of a ſingle diviſion—when the leading platoon has compleated its wheel of the quarter circle, it receives from its own commander, the words: *halt—dreſs*. The others receive the ſame words, and in the ſame moment, which muſt of courſe happen when all the platoons wheel with the ſame quickneſs and length of pace.

When the battalion formed and halted is to break by diviſions, and march in column from one of its flanks.

Fig. 13.

When the battalion is thus broke, and halted in column, the commanding officer gives the word: *march*, the whole then ſtep off together and proceed. The pivot leaders of the two front platoons will move ſteadily on the points of march given them, and the following ones will cover.

When a battalion from line is to break to either flank, an under officer belonging to the leading platoon, previouſly runs out to mark the point, at which the pivot flank of that platoon is to halt after the wheel: an over wheel is

thereby prevented, and the other platoons are alſo better directed.

Attentions when the battalion breaks into column.

The officers wheel with their platoons, and after dreſſing them, place themſelves three paces before the center of each, where they march till they enter the alignement; they frequently look behind to obſerve their platoons, and to preſerve the ſame pace—the men dreſs to the pivot flank, and the non-commiſſioned covering officer who has ſhifted to that flank, is particularly attentive to preſerve the diſtances of platoons.

Should any of the platoons be ſtronger than the others, and out-flank after the wheel; ſuch platoons muſt cover or be covered, on the new pivot flank by the weaker ones, and ſuch as are ordered will ſhift accordingly.

When the battalion or line breaks into column, both colours will wheel up, and remain behind the pivot flank of the leading center platoon.

When the COLUMN enters and marches on the ALIGNEMENT.

When a battalion marching in column, enters into the alignement and marches along it.

A battalion marching and broke from the right, may enter the alignement by wheels, either to the right or left. In either caſe, the left or pivot flank of the platoons muſt be placed on it: in the firſt inſtance, behind it, and in the ſecond, before it. In both caſes, the line is afterwards formed by wheels of platoons to the left; in the firſt inſtance, the line will front the ſame way as the column; in the ſecond, it will front to the rear of the column.

Let us ſuppoſe then, that the given points of formation are A B; that C is the point of wheeling; D the adjutant already placed;

placed; that the battalion hath marched from the right, and enters the alignement by wheels to the right.

The pivot flanks of the column, having been directed ſtraight on the point of wheeling C; when the leading officer has arrived at a diſtance equal to the front of his platoon from it, he orders: *halt*—to the right *wheel!* and then if he has preſerved juſt diſtance, Fig. 15. his left wheeling man will nearly touch the point C, and arrive on the alignement—without delay; and after he has ordered *halt—dreſs!* he will place himſelf on the left flank, and order: *eyes* to the left—*march!* he does not ſtep at any of theſe commands, but they ſucceed juſt quick enough to allow time for their execution, and to avoid interrupting the officer that follows him. After this he moves on without looking behind, or allowing any thing to take off his attention, and at the eſtabliſhed ordinary pace towards the diſtant point; ſo that his perſon ſhall juſt graze the head of the adjutant's horſe, which he invariably preſerves in a ſtraight line with the point B. This rule, all the following officers muſt obſerve; and ſhould any of the platoons deviate to either hand, thoſe that ſucceed them muſt rectify the fault, and exactly touch the point where the adjutant is placed.

The principal attention of the leading officer muſt be, never to change the time or length of ſtep, otherwiſe, a ſtop muſt happen in a conſiderable column, and the ſoldiers will afterwards be obliged to run. He muſt march in one conſtant poſition, and take particular care that his front rank is perpendicular to the line on which he marches.

Attentions when marching in the alignement.

The ſame directions regard the other officers who conduct platoons, and who in addition muſt correctly obſerve—— That at the word *march*, given to the preceding platoons, the following one is ordered: *halt—wheel.* In this they will exactly agree, if the officers preſerve their due diſtances, and make their wheels at a redoubled pace—and alſo, that all the platoons wheel at the identical point, where the leading one wheeled; therefore, all the platoons muſt march ſtraight

ſtraight on the firſt rank of the preceding one, which hath already wheeled. It commonly happens, that the platoons of a battalion in wheeling to the right, incline to the left from the original point ſucceſſively; a fault which produces a defective march in the line, and ſhould be prevented.

Attentions when marching in the alignement.

Pivot officers of columns, when marching in the alignement, muſt be ſteady on the flanks of their diviſions: as they give the true wheeling diſtance and covering of the pivots in their own perſons, they muſt not look to, or endeavour to correct their diviſions; their attention is otherwiſe ſufficiently employed, and that care muſt be left to the ſergeants, and other officers. The pivot files of men muſt be quite cloſe to their officers, that they alſo may be truly covered when halted; the colours are behind, and in the line of thoſe files of men, nor muſt there be at any time more than one officer's file on each pivot flank.

All marching in the alignement muſt be made in ordinary time, and taken up correctly from the point where it is entered——All doubling up, or increaſing the front of the column of march, muſt be made before entering it.

When a battalion broke to the right, enters the alignement by wheeling to the left; the leading platoon begins its wheel to the left on the alignement itſelf, when the pivot flank arrives at the point of wheeling; inſtead of (as in the foregoing caſe) being removed the diſtance of a platoon from it.

Whatever has been ſaid reſpecting a battalion broke from the right, takes place in one broke from the left: the only difference is, that the flanks are now changed; that the left platoon does, what before was done by the right; and that the right flanks are placed on the alignement, inſtead of the left.

To inſure the more correct march and halt of the pivot flanks, in the alignement—the leader of the column may occaſionally go forward

forward to the advanced adjutant; and being himſelf truly placed, may look back to the point of wheeling or entry into the alignement (if there is no other more remarkable object in it). He can then ſee if the rear flanks of the column keep the true line or deviate from it, and may correct them by ſignal, or by ſending back an adjutant to take his poſition in the true line, and to whoſe direction they are immediately to conform.

In this manner alſo can the leader if neceſſary, correct the pivot flanks after a halt, when there is a rear point of view ſufficiently marked—if that is not the caſe, he may go towards the rear of the column, line the flank of the fifth or ſixth platoon on that of his leading platoon, and the front point of march; he will then return to the firſt platoon, and on the flanks of that and the fifth, correct the reſt of the pivots. Pivot flank.

When the Column HALTS—FORMS in LINE, and DRESSES.

WHEN in the manner above preſcribed, one or more of the battalions are marching in the alignement there can be nothing eaſier, than to form well in line. On the word or ſignal being given: the commanders of battalions order *halt*—this muſt be pointedly complied with at all times, even though there ſhould be falſe diſtances betwixt the battalions. No officer moves after hearing the *halt* of his commander not even a half pace, but the foot which is then off the ground finiſhes its proper ſtep, and the other is brought up to it—If that was not done, and that one officer ſhould ſtop while another was permitted to make one or two paces, thoſe behind would be obliged a-new to ſhift and great confuſion would ariſe, from officers being When a battalion marching in the alignement, halts and wheels to the flank by platoons, to form in line. Fig. 14.

being deficient in one great principle of their buſineſs, the preſerving of proper diſtances.

Halt in the alignement.

Whenever the *halt* is ordered; the more eaſily to adjuſt the pivots, the officer (and covering under officer) falls behind the pivot file of men, and examines that his files are well dreſſed by the pivot flank, and places himſelf on the right of his platoon. If the wheel is to the left, he afterwards wheels up with his platoon: If the wheel is to the right, he rather keeps back, allows it to be made on the pivot man, and does not move into the line till the wheel is compleated.

Form in the alignement.

When the word is given *platoons wheel* (to the right or left) —An under officer of the leading platoon gives ground to the flank of that platoon when it wheels up into line, in the ſame manner as when it wheeled into column: he advances, lines himſelf correctly on the pivot men, and exactly aſcertains the point where it is to halt. At the word *march*—All the pivot men ranged in the alignement face into the new line, and remain immoveable on their ground; and the oppoſite flanks wheel up to join the pivot men of the preceding platoons who are thus already placed. The word *halt* is given to each platoon as it arrives in line.

It would appear to facilitate much the dreſſing of the platoons, if the pivot men inſtead of facing at the word *march*, ſhould remain immoveable and not front, but by order of the commander after the battalion is dreſſed; as the officers could then better diſtinguiſh thoſe fixed points, than when they front the ſame way as the reſt of the platoon which are dreſſing.

Dreſs in the alignement.

At the word *dreſs*—The officers move out quick to dreſs their platoons in the manner already directed. As there are ſo many determined pivot points given, it becomes eaſy to dreſs correctly a platoon or a battalion; and great care muſt be taken that the pivot men do on no account move up, or fall back whatever directions may be then giving for compleating the dreſſing. If a defect exiſts, it muſt proceed from the other men not having lined with thoſe fixed

fixed points. The internal corrections of platoons muſt therefore be made, but the original pivot men ſhould remain immoveable.

The officer of the third platoon for example, has only to conſider the left file leader of the ſecond platoon (cloſe to whom he ſtands) as the *point d'appui*, and his own left flank man as the point to dreſs upon, there will then be nothing eaſier than to dreſs his platoon without moving from the ſpot. But he will ſtill more exactly do it, if he places himſelf 2. or 3. files on the other ſide of the flank man of the ſecond platoon.

Attentions of officers in dreſſing.

If all officers are in this alert, and ſkilful, and that the ſoldiers are accuſtomed to correct themſelves, a battalion will inſtantly be formed, nor will the commander or major have any thing to rectify. Should it be objected, that the battalion will be ill dreſſed if the pivot flank men have not covered each other well in the alignement: it is anſwered, that the platoons muſt never wheel up till that is done; and as there is ſeldom time to correct ſuch faults, the greater care is to be taken not to commit them.

The point where the head of the column enters the alignement, which is given to, and never muſt be quitted by a mounted officer, but as he is relieved, and till the whole have entered it—The ſeveral adjutants who place themſelves in the true line—the point where the flank of the leading battalion begins to form—the colours of battalions which have truly halted, or are formed up——theſe are ſo many marked points within the line itſelf independent of diſtant objects, on which the covering of pivots, or the formation and dreſſing of battalions can be regulated.

The alignement of the march will always be about a pace before the line on which the troops form: becauſe the one is the direction preſerved by the officer in marching, and the other being that on which the flank men halt, and the platoons wheel up into line, is diſtant of courſe from the other the breadth of a file. Although the officers halt in the true alignement, yet it is impoſſible to allow them to remain there immoveable as points of forming for their diviſions, be-

cauſe the dreſſing of thoſe diviſions depends on them. The flank files of men are therefore the pivots of platoons in wheeling up into line although the officers are the pivots during the march, and an attempt to form in line exactly on the points of march would derange the pivot files of men and cauſe diſorder.

A commander ſhould dreſs as little as poſſible from the center, at leaſt he ſhould be careful that he himſelf is in the alignement, which is alſo a neceſſary caution whenever he directs his platoons marching in the alignement. He muſt not as often happens, puſh his horſe betwixt two platoons, for he himſelf will not then be lined, and it will occaſion the officers to loſe the alignement. If he will ſee whether the platoons march well, he muſt place himſelf on the alignement, and on the adjutants who are in it, and give his horſe ſuch a direction as the platoons ſhould touch in marching.

When the left of the column is in front.

When broke to the left, all that has been ſaid takes place, and is in the ſame manner executed—Only—the right flank man does what has been directed for the left: he fronts, when the platoons begin to wheel up; and the point d'appui being now on the left, the dreſſing muſt from thence be regulated; conſequently the ſoldiers look to the left. But as the officer in order to aligne his platoon is obliged in ſuch caſe to ſhift from right to left, which muſt occaſion a delay, it would be better that the ſeveral officers ſhould dreſs the platoons which are on their right.——In this manner the flank officer would dreſs the left platoon, &c.—the officer of the ſeventh platoon will place himſelf to the left of the right flank man of that platoon and dreſs the ſixth on its own right flank man—the ſixth officer will dreſs the fifth platoon, and ſo on, till the ſecond officer dreſſes the right platoon.——In this manner will a battalion be ſooner dreſſed, than when each officer alignes his proper platoon.

When the REAR of the COLUMN muſt FILE to enter the ALIGNEMENT.

When the leading platoons of a battalion halt at their point of alignement before the rear ones have entered it.

IT has been hitherto ſuppoſed, that the whole platoons of a battalion have entered into the alignement before the halt and the conſequent formation into line is ordered. But as it will often happen, that the head of the column muſt enter not far diſtant from the point where it is to halt and be placed, and when it arrives there, that the rear platoons cannot at that time have alſo entered, but are ſtopped in the old direction by the ceſſation of movement in the front; it becomes neceſſary immediately to bring thoſe platoons into the alignement, that the battalion may juſtly form.

Whenever therefore the leading platoon of a battalion arrives at the point where it is to form into line, and that this is the object, the word *halt* is given, and the whole ſtop. The leading platoon and ſuch as may have already wheeled into the alignement being now at their proper points, remain ſo; and the word *face* (to the right or left as neceſſary) is then given, when all the platoons who are ſtill in the old direction face to the flank. At the word *march*, each platoon moves quick in file in a ſtraight line towards its point in the new line. As ſoon as each platoon arrives perpendicular with its pivot flank and at its wheeling diſtance on the alignement, it receives ſeparately the word *halt*. The word *front* is then given to each platoon; and when the rear one has taken its place, the whole battalion ſtands in column on the alignement, ready to wheel into line when ordered. Fig. 18.

When the column wheels into a new direction, and continues its march.

When the column is marching in front, and the leading platoon by a *wheel* gives a new direction and moves on—If the object is a continuation of the march, the other diviſions ſucceſſively *wheel*, follow its exact tract, and when the head *halts*, the rear will alſo halt in the ſituation it then finds itſelf in—If the intention is to

Fig. 15.

form in line, the rear will then be ordered to *file* into the new direction: but ſhould the column proceed in its march, the rear diviſions will continue to follow.

When the COLUMN is to form LINE on a CENTRAL or REAR ALIGNEMENT.

Change of poſition of the column to form line on a central or rear alignement.

THE ALIGNEMENT or line of formation hath hitherto been ſuppoſed in front, and that the column hath advanced to enter into it. But there may be caſes where the column has overpaſſed it, or where for other reaſons a formation may be required which is either in the rear of the column, or which interſects it.

On a rear alignement.

Fig. 17.

When the alignement is in the rear of the column, each platoon will ſeparately countermarch. The column then having changed its front, will advance, enter the alignement, and be prepared to form according to circumſtances and the modes already preſcribed.

On a central alignement.

When the alignement interſects the column—The platoon which it cuts muſt be placed perpendicular to, and with its pivot flank upon it, fronting whichever way the column is to extend. The platoons which were ranged before the given one, muſt now be conſidered as in the ſituation of a column with the alignement in its rear, they will therefore ſeparately countermarch and face it; by this means the alignement becomes in front of each of the two component parts of the column, and they can arrive in it by the ſame identical operation. For this purpoſe the whole platoons, except the central one which ſtands faſt, file to whichever (but the ſame) flank is on ſuch occaſion proper, and place themſelves as before in column by halting and dreſſing their pivot flanks in the new alignement. Such as now face the given platoon will again be ordered to countermarch and be in its front.

When

When the column is thus formed, it is ready to wheel up into line, to march to the front, or by firſt countermarching the platoons to move to the rear.

In a column compoſed of ſeveral battalions, there is a neceſſity that it ſhould follow the above preſcribed method, and that all the platoons of it that are in the front of the central one, ſhould each *countermarch* and *face* it, before the change of ſituation can take place. Becauſe, the platoons of the central battalion alone file, but all the other battalions *march*, each in column of platoons from their inward flanks to the new alignement, and eaſily enter upon it taking their diſtances from the front. Were thoſe platoons not to countermarch, the outward flanks of the battalion muſt lead and firſt enter on the alignement; and all diſtances muſt in that caſe be taken from the rear, which would be a very difficult and uncertain operation, where ſeveral battalions had to enter the line.

Reaſon of the countermarch in a conſiderable column.

Fig. 20.

But undoubtedly a ſingle battalion in column, or any body the whole platoons of which file, may change its ſituation, without the previous or after operation of the countermarch. When the central diviſion is placed as before, the rear platoons will file up, and the front platoons will file back, and arrange their pivot flanks in the alignemnt; in doing this, the rear diviſions have every facility of moving up and lining with the fixed points in their front; but the platoons before the central one, muſt take their diſtances and line from the rear.

Countermarch may be omitted in a ſingle battalion.

In general, the line is not formed till the whole of a battalion is arrived at its ground, halted, and adjuſted. It then is ordered to form by each diviſion wheeling the quarter circle, and thus battalion after battalion.

But if neceſſary, when the leading diviſion of a battalion has got to its point, it may wheel up and form in the new direction of the line, though the others are not yet arrived in it; and thus

Wheeling up from column into line.

diviſion

Fig. 19.

diviſion after diviſion ſucceſſively as they come up. In this manner however, the exact dreſſing of the battalion is not ſo ſoon or ſo eaſily obtained, as if the pivots of the whole battalion are firſt accurately lined, and then that the diviſions wheel up and form. If part of a battalion ſhould wheel into line, while the other diviſions are coming up into column; the pivot men of thoſe diviſions, and not the officers, muſt cover in the formed part of the line.

COUNTERMARCH of the COLUMN.

Countermarch of diviſions to change the front of the column.

THE countermarch of diviſions is equivalent to a wheel to the right about, but performed with more convenience in much leſs time, and without change of ground. That of each diviſion ſeparately when in column, is an evolution of great utility on many occaſions, and enables a column which has its right in front, and is marching in the alignement, to return along that ſame line, by becoming a column with its left in front, and to take ſuch new poſition in it, as circumſtances may require, without inverting or altering the proper front of the line. In many ſituations of forming from column into line, it becomes a neceſſary previous operation.

Fig. 20.

As ſoon as the commander has ordered the column to *halt*, and to *countermarch* by diviſions, each diviſion ſeparately receives from its own officer the words—to *face—march—halt—front*; and the column is then formed to its former rear, ready to move on when ordered.

The countermarch of diviſions in column, is generally made from the right of each, and behind the rear rank of each. In this operation, beſides changing its front, the diviſion muſt neceſſarily ſhift its ground a ſpace, equal to twice its depth.

When

When it is neceſſary that a battalion advancing in column, which would naturally form to the left, ſhall be prepared to form to the right, without inverting the order of the battalion—A countermarch of the whole column by ſucceſſive wheels of the diviſions to the right about muſt take place, and then a countermarch of each diviſion of the column; or elſe a movement equivalent thereto, which changes the wings, and brings the one which was before in the rear, to the front of the column, without, at the ſame time, preventing the continuation of its march.

Countermarch of the wings to change the flanks of the column.

When therefore the right is in front, that the left is to be brought up, and that there is ſtill ground for the column to advance; the commander orders: *halt*—the *left wing* to the *front*. The officer of the left platoon immediately orders it to *face* to the right—and *march*, till his left flank can freely paſs near the right flank of the others. He then commands: *halt—front*, and moves on quick and cloſe by the right flank of the platoon, then preceding him. The officer commanding that platoon, as ſoon as the other approaches him, commands: *right, face—march*, behind the now leading one—*front*; when he covers him, and then follows at his due wheeling diſtance. All the other platoons, ſucceſſively, perform the ſame operation; and when the right platoon has taken its place in the rear, the column reſumes the ordinary ſtep. If before this operation, the column is cloſed to half or quarter diſtance, then all the platoons *face* at the ſame time, proceed as above directed, and each takes its diſtance from its preceding one before it moves on.

First method.

Fig. 21.

Another manner is when the front is to be changed on the ſame ground, ſo that the left wing comes to the ſpot which the right wing occupied, and ſo *vice verſa*.

Second method.

Fig. 22.

In this caſe, the left platoon proceeds exactly as has been already directed; all the others go to the right about, and march on at a quick

a quick ſtep towards the place from whence the left moved. When the platoon next it arrives at that place, it receives the order to *face* to the left, paſſes behind the left platoon, *fronts*, and follows it: and in this manner, all the reſt proceed till the right platoon when it fronts, finds itſelf where the left hath been; only, that the whole column is removed to the right, a ſpace equal to its front.

It muſt be obſerved as a general principle, that the platoons which advance, come always out on the ſide to which front is to be made, and on which the enemy is placed; becauſe then with the platoons which are free, he can be oppoſed while the others are moving behind the line.

In a column compoſed of ſeveral battalions, where an inverſion of the battalions within themſelves, but not of the wings, is meant to be prevented; then each battalion ſeparately will perform this operation. But if the inverſion of the wings alſo is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed as if it was a ſingle battalion.

Third method.

Fig. 22.

There is a third method by which the alignement is in no reſpect altered, it may be uſed near to or on a parade, but not where there is any thing to be apprehended from an enemy.

The column ſtanding marched from the right, ſhould naturally form to the left, but it is here meant to form to the right; therefore all the platoons except the laſt, at the word: to the *right* and *left open*; by the ſide ſtep do open half to each flank, a ſpace ſufficient to allow a platoon to march through in front. The left platoon does not open, but paſſes through the others at a quick ſtep; and as ſoon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that platoon *cloſes* by the ſide ſtep, and follows; in this manner, they ſucceed each other till the column is formed as marched off from the left, and then reſumes the ordinary ſtep.

But if the ground of the column is not to be changed after opening out, the laſt platoon moves on, the others face about, march

march quick ſucceſſively, face inwards and join, front, and follow till the flanks are changed; and that the left platoon halts exactly on the ground on which the right ſtood.

A battalion already formed in line, may change its front by a countermarch from both flanks on the center. The right files move cloſe behind the rear rank, the left before the front rank of the battalion, till they arrive at the points where each other reſpectively ſtood; they then front and dreſs to the colours, which have kept their ground, and ſerved as the pivot on which the battalion turns.

Countermarch of the battalion by files on the center.

Taking Diſtances from the Rear.

It has been ſhown how the column changes its front by the countermarch of platoons, and returns towards any new point D'Appui. But ſituations alſo occur, in which it is neceſſary to take diſtances from the rear of the march, in conſequence of the laſt platoon being ordered to ſtop at a given point, and thereby regulating the halt of the others, which in ſuch caſe muſt proceed from rear to front, either inſtantaneouſly or ſucceſſively, according as the column is marching, at whole or leſſer intervals.

When the rear of the column is to give the point of appui, to take diſtances from it.

The column at quarter or cloſe diſtance, and with its right in front, hath halted at A, with a view to deploy to the right, on the ſuppoſition that the enemy is formed in B; but finding that he hath changed his poſition, and is actually in C, it becomes neceſſary to give up the firſt intention, which in the poſition D would preſent the left flank to the enemy, and to take another in E or F, ſo that the left wing ſhall ſtill remain poſted on the

Fig. 23.

height A, but without expoſing its flank. In ſuch caſe, were the diſtances to be taken from the front, either the height or the intervals betwixt the battalions might be loſt, if any one officer ſhould err in his diſtance, or if the commander ſhould order *halt* too late. It is therefore neceſſary they ſhould be taken from the rear.

When diſtances are taken from the rear of the column.

The column being apprized that diſtances are to be taken from the rear, the whole march off at the quick ſtep, having previouſly placed adjutants in the alignement to give diſtance to the leading officer, who as well as all the others is on the pivot flank. When the laſt platoon of the column arrives at A, choſen as the point d'appui, it is ordered to *halt*. The officer of the platoon who precedes it, looks back, takes for his flank man, as much diſtance as is neceſſary for the platoon to wheel up in, and then *halts* it. In the ſame manner, the officers of the other platoons proceed quite to the front.

When the platoons are all placed, the line is formed by a wheel to the left, and dreſſing is of courſe taken from the point d'appui which is on the left. In general, no officer will miſtake the hand to dreſs to, if he will attend to his point d'appui and recollect that it is from thence, without exception, that he muſt dreſs towards another diſtant point.

But as the officers cannot with ſufficient exactneſs, enter into the alignement, on account of the quickneſs of the march, and becauſe they are obliged to look behind for the diſtances; the obſervance of the following rules will correct any ſubſiſting faults.

Attentions in placing pivot men.

The officer of the laſt platoon, who is poſted at the point d'appui, will dreſs the pivot man of the preceding platoon, on the adjutants and advanced point of march. As ſoon as this man is placed and ſteadied (by ſignal from the officer of the rear platoon), his officer looking upon himſelf as a new point d'appui, in the ſame manner lines and halts the pivot man of the preceding platoon, and thus ſucceſſively till it reaches the front. It is not an unneceſſary precaution to divide the alignement by adjutants, as many obſtacles

obſtacles may prevent the officers ſeeing the diſtant points in it.

The LINE in OPEN COLUMN.

HAVING now detailed the movements of the battalion column, it is neceſſary to apply them to thoſe of more conſiderable columns, as their operations are directed by the ſame general rules.

Of the GENERAL MARCH in COLUMN.

NOTHING ſo much fatigues the troops in a conſiderable column, and is more to be avoided than an inequality of march. The principal reaſon of this is, that the rear of the column frequently and unneceſſarily deviates from the ſtraight line, which its head traces out, and moves in a circular or ſerpentine one. In endeavouring occaſionally to regain that line, and their juſt diſtances, the platoons muſt of courſe run or ſtop, and again take up their march; for if they preſerve their juſt diſtances when marching on a curved line, they cannot have them when brought into the ſtraight line drawn between its two extremities.

Cauſes of irregularity in the march of the column.

The remedy to this is, a greater exactneſs in covering the pivot leaders; and that whether the officer or under officer is conducting the flank of the platoon, he ſhould always preſerve two or more pivot men in the ſtraight line before him. It is unneceſſary to

attempt the ſame ſcrupulous obſervance in common route marching, as when going to enter into the alignement; but even a general attention to this circumſtance, will in that caſe, prevent unneceſſary winding in the march, which much prolongs it and fatigues the ſoldier.

Of the MARCH in the ALIGNEMENT.

THE ſame rules that direct the entry and march of a battalion in the alignement, apply to thoſe of the moſt conſiderable column. But in addition, there are alſo certain obſervances of the ſtaff officers of the battalions, to place and preſerve each in that alignement; and their aid is more particularly required, where the inequality of the ground in heights and valleys, prevents the marked and ſtrong points in the direction from being ſeen.

Attentions neceſſary to the march of a conſiderable column in the alignement.

The commander or major of each battalion, place themſelves ſucceſſively as has been preſcribed, at the wheeling point, and determine the juſt entry of their battalions into the alignement. The pivot flanks of the preceding battalions become ſo many points of direction, in addition to thoſe furniſhed by the adjutants.

Fig. 25.

As the leading battalion will be moſt apt to deviate from the true line; the majors by occaſionally lining themſelves backwards on the adjutants and the point of wheeling, can correct ſuch inaccuracies; and when the troops are in low ground or croſſing a valley, they can in this manner direct the march at times, when the front points of view are not ſeen. In ſuch ſituations, adjutants muſt be placed both on the heights, and alſo in the intervening valley, in order exactly to prolong the alignement.

The general line is always to be followed, not the partial deviations of a preceding battalion, which if it ſwerves or loſes its true alignement, muſt by the attention of the ſtaff officers immediately regain it.

FORMATION

Formation of the Line from Column.

When a conſiderable column is to halt in the alignement; in order not to loſe diſtances, the moſt inſtantaneous ſtop of the whole body ſhould be made at the word *halt* from the commander of each battalion, repeated ſharp and without the leaſt pauſe or interval.

Attentions neceſſary for the formation of a conſiderable column into line.

As the march in the alignement ought always to be at the ordinary pace, and as the ſtep is ſuch as allows of its being occaſionally lengthned, the ſmall inaccuracies of diſtance may be corrected during that movement; therefore, unleſs there is great inattention at the wheeling point, and afterwards in the ſeveral ſtaff and platoon officers, in preſerving the pivot lines and wheeling diſtances, the column on halting as above ought to be correctly dreſſed, and ready to wheel up into line.

Should the column be required to march in the alignement at a quick ſtep; although the pivot line may be correctly obſerved, yet juſt wheeling diſtances cannot be expected to be preſerved, and the intervals between battalions will probably be increaſed. But if thoſe between the platoons of each battalion, can be kept nearly juſt, each battalion may ſucceſſively *halt* when its leader ſees it, at its due diſtance from the preceding one.

If a quick march is required from a column.

When a conſiderable open column, or columns at half or quarter diſtance, arrives near and behind any part of the ground where it is to form, it will be halted. The commander will determine the exact direction of the new line, and where his leading flank is to be placed; officers will then be detached to aſcertain flank points to their ſeveral battalions.

Arrival of a column of ſeveral battalions in the alignement.

The

The front platoon of each will then be directed towards its point, the remainder of ſuch battalion will follow in column; and when the front diviſion of each is arrived at its ground, and is *halted* perpendicular to the alignement, the other platoons will be ordered to *file*, and arrange themſelves anew in column behind it. The ſeveral battalions will form ſeparately in line, by the diviſions of each wheeling the quarter circle.

Fig. 31.

Officers that lead battalion columns into a new line, muſt take great care neither to overſhoot the line, nor to crowd upon the battalion that precedes them——As ſoon as the leading diviſion of a battalion column is at its ground, a mounted officer muſt from the pivot of that diviſion, correct and dreſs all the other pivots of this battalion on the given points, whether in his front or rear, on which the line is to be formed; and when ſo corrected, the battalion is ready to wheel up into line.

In whatever manner the leading flank of a battalion arrives in a determined line, a mounted officer always gives the preciſe point where it enters, and does not quit it, before the whole are in that line.

Manner in which the rear of the column enters the alignement when the head halts in it.

Should the column enter on one flank of the line, it will continue its march till the whole are entered, and till the head halts at the other flank.

But ſhould it enter at any intermediate point, the leading platoon when it arrives at ſuch point, will *wheel* and continue its march in the alignement, till the column is ordered to *halt*; the reſt of the platoons which have continued to follow, and are now in the alignement, will remain ſo at their juſt wheeling diſtances—And ſuch platoons of the battalion that have laſt begun to enter the new direction, but are ſtill in that of the old column, will immediately be ordered to *face—file—halt—front*, and take their place in the new column. In this manner, one or more battalions will have arrived, and be ready to form in the alignement.

Fig. 24.

Fig. 26.

But in order alſo to bring up the rear battalions, which are ſtill in the old direction of the march—The filing of thoſe platoons

is

is a ſignal for the ordering ſuch rear battalions, each to *break* in column from the general one, by wheeling its head platoon, and directing its march upon its neareſt flank point in the alignement, which muſt be previouſly aſcertained by the detached adjutants. When there arrived ſuch head platoon *wheels* into the new column, and halts; and the rear platoons of that battalion then *file* as above, and arrange themſelves behind it. Thus each battalion arrives ſucceſſively in a ſeparate column in the alignement, and when ſo placed, pivots dreſſed, diſtances adjuſted, the line will be formed by the platoons wheeling up the quarter circle.

Entry of the rear battalions of column into the alignement when the head halts in it.

Fig. 26.

In this manner the general column of march is reſolved when neceſſary into the ſeveral columns of formation, and the leading platoons of each battalion are eaſily diſengaged, whether they are marching at open, half, or quarter intervals, and directed on their ſeveral points to front, rear, or flanks, as the line is to be formed.

Where ſeveral columns of march are to form into one general line—Each will arrive at its ground in the ſame manner, but one is particularly named from which the reſt take their directions and diſtance.

Arrival of ſeveral columns of march on the ſame alignement.

Fig. 31.

Fig. 32.

From the moſt exact attention and application of the rules preſcribed did the SILESIAN infantry in 1785, conſiſting of twenty-three thouſand men, enter the left of the alignement; march along it in column of half companies for about an hour and a quarter; halt at the ſignal of a cannon, and form in a moſt correct line, extending two Engliſh miles and a half. This line required no after dreſſing or adjuſtment of diſtances; but immediately marched in front about three hundred yards, halted, and fired, each battalion by grand diviſions. On many other occaſions in 1785 were lines of from five thouſand to ten thouſand men formed, in this manner, with the moſt perfect accuracy.

March and formation of Pruſſian infantry.

Fig. 67.

CHANGES

CHANGES of POSITION of the LINE.

ALL changes of POSITION of the line (not made by the march in front) from one diſtant ſituation to another, are effected, by the application, and movement of one, or more open columns, and may be divided into four parts.

General principles of changes of poſition.

1ſt. The line wheels the quarter circle by diviſions to either hand, ſo as to be ready to break into one or more columns.

Fig. 30.

2d. The column, or columns file by diviſions, or march in front as is neceſſary and ordered, to arrive in the new direction.

3d. The diviſions again form in general column perpendicular to the new direction.

4th. When the diviſions of each battalion are arrived at their ground, halted, and adjuſted—the line is formed by their wheeling up, and thus battalion after battalion.

When all the diviſions of a battalion, or of a more conſiderable column, *file* to arrive in the new direction—it is by the juſt management of the two leading diviſions, that ſuch alteration of poſition is truly made. The principal attentions are,

1ſt. That at all times the leading diviſions arrive firſt in the new direction, and there front perpendicular to it.

2d. That at every inſtant of the tranſition from column to line, the wheeling diſtances betwixt the diviſions ſhould be nearly preſerved.

General rules in the change of poſition of the battalion column by files.

Fig. 30.

3d. That during the movement the leader of the ſecond diviſion *files* ſteadily at the ordered pace on the given point of march C, in the new direction—The leader of the firſt diviſion, to whom the point of formation is aſcertained (which may be in, but not advanced before the intended line) keeps that point, and the head of the ſecond diviſion, invariably in a line during the whole tranſition, in the ſame manner that the two adjutants arrive at their intermediate point

point in the alignement. The leading flanks of the rear diviſions, never overpaſs thoſe of the two front diviſions, but endeavour without hurrying, to line with them exactly, and to arrive ſucceſſively in the new direction, with their juſt diſtances.

Attentions of the commander.

By theſe means the commander who is himſelf with, and conducts the two leading diviſions, places them in the direction that beſt anſwers his views, and at once takes up any poſition and to any front that is neceſſary. As circumſtances change his intentions, he may at every inſtant vary, and direct them upon new points of march and formation; the rear of the column always conforming (without the neceſſity of ſending particular orders) to whatever alterations of direction the head may take; and the commander conducting that head, ſo as to enable the rear to comply with its movements, without confuſion or too much hurry.

When one or two battalions only, are to take up a new poſition to front or rear: it will in general be beſt done by diviſions wheeling to a flank and then all filing.

General mode of poſition of a line.

Fig. 32.

But where a line of ſeveral battalions is to make ſuch change—it may break into columns of platoons, each of half, or whole battalions, and the heads of thoſe columns will be conducted by a mounted officer, and by their ſeparate routes to the points in the new poſition, where they are to extend into line. When the ſeveral columns are at any time marching in concert to gain a new poſition; their heads will be regulated and directed by the commander of the whole, in the ſame manner, and upon the ſame principles that the leading flanks of diviſions are when filing into the new direction, as already preſcribed.

The OPEN COLUMN arrives at all times, and halts one flank of its diviſions in the line of formation, in one of the four following ſituations.

General ſituation of the open column, when prepared to form in line.

Fig. 39.

Viz. with { The right in front, arriving { Before / Behind } / The left in front, arriving { Before / Behind } } The new lines of formation.

The term of arriving before, or behind the new line of formation is underſtood that—In the firſt caſe, the pivot flanks of the diviſions of the new column are placed on the fartheſt ſide of that line.—In the ſecond caſe, they are placed on the neareſt ſide of that line. In both caſes by wheeling to the pivot flanks they produce the line required, but to different fronts.

Relative poſitions.

All new POSITIONS of a line with reſpect to the old one, will be executed by the movements of the open column, and taken up from one of the above ſituations.

Such poſitions are { *Parallel* - or nearly ſo to the old line. / *Interſecting* - ſome part of the old line, or its prolongation.

The

				— —	The column arrives and halts
The *parallel* positions are either in front or rear of the old line, which breaks to whatever hand the new position outflanks the old one.	When in front, and the new line faces	to	The old line.	before	The new line of formation.
		from		behind	
	——	—		—	
	When in rear, and the new line faces	to		behind	
		from		before	
The *Interſecting* poſitions, are to the right, left, or a-croſs the old line, which breaks in the two firſt caſes to the flank neareſt to the new poſition, and in the laſt breaks to the right and left inwards, to the point of interſection.	When to the right, and the new line faces to the	right	with reſpect to the old line.	before	
		left		behind	
	——	—		—	
	When to the left, and the new line faces to the	right		before	
		left		behind	
	——	—		—	
	When central, and the new line faces to the	right		before	
		left		behind	

The above new poſitions are ſuppoſed parallel, or perpendicular or nearly ſo to the old one. But all the different intermediate degrees of inclination may be taken and reſolved into the one or other claſs. Fig. 40.

As on all occaſions the line breaks into open column to whichever hand, and to whatever point it is to manœuvre: ſo if the battalion when formed is to take a new poſition, on one of its central diviſions, or the line on a diviſion of one of its central battalions; it will break to right and left inwards, and face ſuch diviſion.

Battalion or line break to to the directing diviſions when to change poſition.

In central changes of a line, or central changes of a ſingle battalion; ſuch central or ſingle battalion would appear to manœuvre eaſieſt by the whole of it breaking and fronting to one and the ſame flank. But it muſt be recollected, that this would become an

Reaſon of breaking to the directing diviſion.

exception from the general method of the line, and would not apply where the diviſion of formation was moveable.

The named diviſion is wheeled as much as is neceſſary to place it with its pivot flank perpendicular to, and on the new line of direction.

If to front to the right; its right flank will be in that line, and it will face to the intended left.

If to front to the left; its left flank will be in that line, and it will face to the intended right.

When from line a new poſition is to be taken on any one given central diviſion a.

The line then breaks inwards to the named diviſion a.

The two diviſions, viz. One on each ſide the named one, will only wheel one eighth of the circle, in order to avoid interfering, and the more readily to diſengage their flanks.

The remaining diviſions of the central battalion *file* into the new direction, and place themſelves in front, and rear of the ſtanding diviſion. The other battalions *march* ſeparately in columns of platoons from the leading flanks, and take their places in the general column. When ſtanding in this ſituation, the right half of the line will always have the right flanks in the new direction, and the left half of the line their left flanks.

Fig. 33.

Fig. 34.

The right diviſions of the central battalion *file* to their right, and the right battalions each in column *march* to their right. They all place their right flanks in the new line, in front of, and facing to the named diviſion a. The left diviſions of the central battalion *file* to their right alſo; and the leading diviſions of the left battalions *march* to their right. They all place their left flanks in the new line, fronting the ſame way as, and in rear of the named diviſion a.

When with reſpect to the old line The new line fronts to the left.

Fig. 35.

The right diviſions and battalions move to their left, and place their right flanks in the new line, and in rear of the named diviſion a. The left diviſions and battalions move to their left alſo, and place their right flanks in the new line in front of, and facing to the named diviſion.

The new line fronts to the right.

The

The new line is formed by wheeling inwards. Each diviſion to its flank placed on the new line.

As the named diviſion, and whatever other one is next, and facing it in the column, wheel inwards to form the line; ſuch diviſion in taking its place in the column, muſt be careful to allow for this circumſtance, and have an interval equal to twice its front. Fig. 35.

When from open column the line is to be formed on any central diviſion and to any one point.

The diviſions which are then in front of the named diviſions, will *countermarch* and face it—That diviſion will then be placed, and the new poſition taken up, as above preſcribed in changes of the line.

When from line, a new poſition is to be taken on any one given central diviſion, and which diviſion during the operation is moveable to front or rear, in order to extend the line to a particular flank.

If in the courſe of taking a new poſition on a central diviſion a, it is meant that ſuch diviſions ſhould not remain fixed, but be MOVEABLE either to front or rear, with reſpect to the old line.

The named diviſion a, will be firſt wheeled and placed with its pivot flank, perpendicular to, and on the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend. If to the rear, it muſt countermarch, and face that way.

The line will then break inwards. { The diviſions on each ſide the named one, will only wheel the one eighth of the circle.

The named diviſion a, will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double (though perhaps unequal) column by the remaining diviſions of the central battalion, and covered by one of thoſe columns, viz. Fig. 36.

If

If marching to the front, and
- To face to the right: The right column of diviſions of the central battalion will cover it; and the left column will march along ſide of it, to its left.
- To face to the left: The left column of diviſions will cover it, and the right column will be on its right.

If marching to the rear, and
- To face to the former right: The left column of diviſions will cover it.
- To face to the former left: The right column of diviſions will cover it.

When it arrives at its point d, it will halt—Thoſe diviſions which are to be in front of it (and are then marching by its ſide in column) and now ſeparated by a diſtance of three or four paces, will move on, and place themſelves in column before and facing it—Thoſe which ought to be in rear of it, will already be in that poſition. The other battalions which moved when the central one did, and which in the mean time have been marching in ſeparate columns, by their leading flanks, and pointing to front or rear relatively to the central battalion, approaching but not entering into its direction; thoſe battalions will then take their places in the general column, in the new line as already preſcribed.

Fig. 36.

If the named diviſion is the flank one of a battalion, in that caſe, the whole central battalion will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining battalion will compoſe another column, and march a-breaſt of it, ſeparated by three or four paces, till the named diviſion comes to its ground and *halts*—The adjoining battalion will then proceed and take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

Fig. 37.

Indeed, in all caſes where the named diviſion is to be moveable, the whole of the central battalion, may without much loſs of time, be thrown into column before and behind that diviſion; and the diviſions in front of the named one *countermarched*, in order that

that the whole may face the way the column is to move—This done, the general movements of the central and other battalions, ſeparately by column may begin; and in ſuch caſe, the front diviſion of the central battalion, will be the firſt to arrive and halt at the point where the column is to extend into line.

The central battalion of a line may always lead from a flank in the change of poſition.

This movement of the given diviſion, is equivalent to the line marching from the center, either to front or rear, and from that ſituation forming away to the flanks—It is the kind of movement, which a ſecond line muſt often make, in order to comply with a change of poſition in the firſt; or, to the line firſt marching forward or backward, and then making a central change on a fixed point.

Fig. 38.

From what has been mentioned, the following *general method* ſhould take place in all changes of poſition of a conſiderable line.

The line breaks into column to whichever hand the new poſition outflanks the old one—The ſeveral columns of battalions are then put in march—The leader of the ſecond battalion from the directing flank, has a point in the new line aſcertained to him, and marches upon it. The leader of the flank battalion will preſerve the paralleliſm, or give gradually the new inclination to the heads of the other battalions—Theſe nearly dreſſing up, and preſerving their battalion diſtances, arrive, and throw themſelves again into general column in the new direction, and then wheel into line.

When the new poſition is in front or rear of the old one, and parallel or nearly ſo to it.

Fig. 40.

If the new line is to be in front of, and facing towards the old line, the battalions within themſelves will not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left; nor can it be well avoided, unleſs by countermarching the line before the movement, or, by a complicated operation during the movement, or, by countermarching firſt the battalions, and then the line after the movement.

The

When the new poſition or prolongation of it, interſects to the right or left of the line.

The line will break to whichever flank is neareſt to the new poſition—The heads of battalion columns will be ſeparately conducted to their points in the new line, being regulated by the leading flank battalions—They will again enter into the general column, and form in line by wheeling up—or, the line after breaking to the flank, may continue its march in column to the point of interſection, there wheel into it; and when the head halts, the rear battalions will ſeparate from it to take their places in the new line.

Fig. 40.

When the new poſition or prolongation of it, interſects the body of the line.

The diviſion which is in the point of interſection, will be moved out and placed perpendicular to the new direction—The line will break inwards towards that diviſion—The diviſions of the central battalion will file, and place themſelves in column before and behind the ſtanding diviſions—The other battalions will be conducted ſeparately in column to their point in the new line; there throw themſelves into general column, and form into line when ordered.

Fig. 40.

If it is meant during the movement to extend the new line towards either flank, it will be done as before preſcribed.

General method of forming a conſiderable open column from line on any diviſion.

When from line, an open or half open column of ſeveral battalions is to be formed on any given diviſion, and in any direction—After breaking inwards, the diviſions of the battalion of direction will *file* into the new column. But the other battalions will *march* diagonally and ſeparately towards their ſeveral points; and when the head of each arrives in the column, the rear will file into it. The front diviſions of the column will countermarch, and the column will then be ready to move on.

Fig. 41.

General attentions in the open column and in change of poſition.

It cannot be too often repeated—that the preſervation of wheeling diſtances; the covering of the pivot flanks when marching in column, and particularly when halted to form; and the juſt wheels of the quarter circle from line to form in column, or from column to form in line: are the great and eſſential circumſtances that determine exactneſs in all movements of the open column,

or

or in all changes of ſituation in the line from one poſition to another—They cannot be too ſcrupulouſly adhered to, all juſt and quick formations depending upon them, and all after dreſſing and unſteady ſhifting, being thereby avoided.

When the GROUND is perfectly open, and ſuch as will allow of the movement of the line, or its parts in front; then a change of poſition may be made on a flank, or on a central point by the march of diviſions in front—In ſuch caſe, ſome one given diviſion is accurately placed in the propoſed direction, and the other diviſions of the line *wheel* ſeparately an equal portion of the circle ſo as to be each parallel to the given diviſion. Thoſe that are behind it *march* up in front, and line anew with it; thoſe that are before it, *face* to the rear, *march*, line with the given diviſion, and then *front*—All the diviſions move at the ſame pace, and at any inſtant ordered, *halt*, *front*, *wheel*, and are formed in line.

Change of poſition in open ground by the wheel up and march of diviſions in front.

Fig. 42.

This mode of changing poſition, is more immediately applicable to the movement of a battalion or of a ſmall body, where the point of forming is fixed, the change of direction inconſiderable, and the ground perfectly unembarraſſed—But the change of poſition of greater bodies, will be commonly effected by the more general method of their breaking into ſeveral columns, marching to their ſeveral points, and then extending into line. In ſome ſituations from open column, the diviſions may thus by oblique marching, move up into line.

In this manner, at *Berlin* and *Magdeburg*, two corps of ſix and of thirteen battalions, changed their front on a central diviſion; and in the courſe of the operation being attacked by cavalry, they ſeveral times, fronted, formed into line, fired, and again reſumed their march.

The MOVEMENTS of the open column, are particularly neceſſary on the following occaſions.

When a line formed in order of battle, is to extend in the ſame direction to either flank, in order to follow the movements of an enemy, or to outflank him if he remains poſted.

Situations which excluſively require movements in open column.

When arriving in column of march on any ground, the commander in determining the general direction that his line is to take, ſhall not have been able to aſcertain the points where he would fix the flanks of it; but after entering into it, is obliged in conſequence of the poſition or manœuvres of the enemy, either to ſtop his own movement ſooner than he intended, or to prolong it beyond the point he originally meant.

Fig. 27.

When after ordering the head of the column to halt and form in line, and that the rear battalions ſhall have broke from the column, and are marching into that line; he ſhall find it neceſſary to reſume the column of march in the former or any new direction—Then ſuch part as may be formed in line will again break, and thoſe rear battalions will relatively alter the direction of their heads, and take their places as before in the continuation of the column; and any diviſions that are ready to wheel up and form, will march by their flanks, and throw themſelves into their proper places in the column of their battalion.

Although the GENERAL rule and method for wheeling from the line, when halted into column, is for the flanks of diviſions, which are to become the pivot flanks of the column, to wheel forward to the hand to which the line is to break; yet there are occaſions, where it is advantageous for that flank to remain fixed, and for the other flank to wheel backward, and thereby acquire the intended poſition in column—Small diviſions will perform this by wheeling back, but ſtill preſerving their original front—Larger diviſions muſt *face* to the rear, *wheel* to the pivot hand, *halt*, and *front*.

Advantages when diviſions wheel backward from line into column.

Fig. 28.

By

By this means, although the diviſions ſhould be unequal, the pivot flanks will remain exactly dreſſed in the direction of the former line, and will be in readineſs to march along it. In this manner, a battalion formed in line, will throw itſelf into column when ordered to extend to either flank, along the prolongation of that line—In this manner alſo, the diviſions forming the flank ſides of the ſquare or oblong, will wheel back into column, when the body is to be put in march.

It is therefore eſſential, that the battalion ſhould be practiſed and ready at this movement, which on many occaſions is neceſſary—And ſo important is the circumſtance of having the pivot flanks always dreſſed, that was it not in compliance with eſtabliſhed cuſtom, this method would be propoſed as the general one of forming column to the flank from the line, when halted.

It would perhaps anſwer every purpoſe of wheeling in a COLUMN in MARCH, and prevent the extenſion of it, to order the leading diviſion to wheel at a ſmall increaſed pace, and proceed—Each ſucceeding one, will in ſuch caſe, continue to look to, and wheel by the pivot flank; which pivot flank, whether the wheels are made to right or left, will only have to obſerve this one general rule; never to allow the preceding diviſion to increaſe its diſtance from it, and will therefore on the wheel move quicker or ſlower, conſiſtent with that attention.

A method for diviſions wheeling in the column of march.

When the pivot flank is not the wheeling one, it will eaſily follow the movements of the preceding diviſion in the circular direction.

When the pivot flank P is the wheeling one, the other may ſtill be in ſome degree moveable, and deſcribe during the wheel, a quarter circle on a given point C, three or four yards beyond its flank, by which means each diviſion will be free of, and not interrupt the movements of the ſucceding one. Fig. 29.

The words *wheel*, and *forward* when that wheel is compleated, will be given to each diviſion.

The wheels in column at half and quarter diſtance, can beſt be accompliſhed by this general attention, in the following diviſions, not to allow the preceding ones to increaſe their juſt diſtances.

OF THE

CLOSE COLUMN.

THE great object of the CLOSE COLUMN, is, to form the line to the front in the quickeſt manner.

The cloſe column, is generally formed from open column of march or manœuvre, when the head of ſuch column is arrived at, or near the ground where the line is to be extended. Fig. 43.

In this ſhape, the ſeveral bodies of the army aſſemble in preſence of an enemy, at a ſufficient diſtance, and avoiding the enfilade of cannon—Their numbers cannot then be eaſily diſcovered—They are under the eye, as it were in the hand, and ready to execute the final arrangements of the commander, after he has examined the appearance of his opponent—With the greateſt facility they take up any poſition, and the aſſembly and formation of infantry columns, are always protected by cannon, cavalry, and ſuch advantages as the ground offers. Fig. 44.

Chief objects of the cloſe column.

It can never be neceſſary or proper, to march any conſiderable diſtance in cloſe column—But when the formation of the line is to be to the front, and where there is nothing to apprehend for the flanks, the column at half or quarter intervals may generally be that of march, and the cloſe column will be formed, when its head arrives at the ground on which it is to deploy into line—

March of column.

The

The cloſe column may occaſionally be required to march ſome ſmall diſtance to its flank; to correct intervals; to gain an enemy's flank; or for ſome other particular purpoſe. But a conſiderable movement in front, can hardly be expected from it without looſening its diviſions.

Front.

Deploying from cloſe column, though in many ſituations, a moſt accurate method of taking up a given and fixed poſition in line, is not on all occaſions to be preferred to the marches of the open column; for if once the operation is begun, the line muſt be compleatly formed before any other movement can commence, and which a change of circumſtances may ſometimes require.

When conſiderable bodies are to form, the cloſe column ſhould not be compoſed of leſs than two companies in front; but in the movements of ſmall bodies, it may be compoſed of companies or platoons.

Diſtances.

When the column is halted—Rear ranks are one foot, and diviſions one pace aſunder—Muſic, drummers, pioneers, &c. are cloſed up to the ſeveral diviſions they cover when in line—Officers, ſergeants, &c. are in their places as in open column—Staff officers are on the flanks of the column. In this ſituation, the ſeveral diviſions are ready to *face* outwards, and *deploy* into line.

There will be a diſtance of two paces from battalion to battalion when halted in cloſe column to *deploy*.

Commands.

The cloſe column will receive and execute all orders directly from the commanders of battalions; nor will they be repeated by leaders of diviſions, unleſs abſolutely neceſſary.

All filings from line to form in column, or from column to form in line, muſt be made at the quick ſtep.

The cloſe column ſhould not if poſſible exceed five or ſix battalions; when there are more troops, better to form more columns

if

if it can be done; and therefore the columns of march may often be ſubdivided when they come near the points of forming into line, directed upon them, and then cloſed up. Strength.

If there is artillery marching with the column, it muſt take up as ſmall a ſpace as poſſible; and in general it may be placed on its flanks till ordered to its poſition. Artillery.

The column will dreſs and cover to the left, if the right is in front; and to the right, if the left is in front, following the ſame rules as the open column.

The column at half or quarter diſtance muſt always preſerve an interval betwixt battalions, equal to the front the column is marching at. Intervals.

Formations of the Close Column.

The Close Column is formed either from line, or from open column.

When the cloſe column is formed from line—any one diviſion is named, as that on which the column is to form, and which diviſion may be placed obliquely if neceſſary. Cloſe column formed from line.

A caution will be given, whether the right or left is to be in front. The whole except the named diviſion, will then be ordered to *face* inwards, and the three leading files of each diviſion will throw themſelves (according as they are to be in front or rear of the ſtanding one) to right or left, till diſengaged from the ranks of the diviſion preceding them. Fig. 45.

In this ſituation, being enabled to move independent, each will take its point, and be ordered to *march—cloſe in—halt—front—dreſs*,

From line to form cloſe column.

dreſs, and place itſelf properly, before or behind the ſtanding diviſion, ſo that the pivot flanks ſhall always cover; and thoſe that are in front of the ſtanding diviſion, muſt take their diſtances from the rear.

Where ſeveral columns are in this manner to be formed by parts of the ſame line—ſuch parts and the ſtanding diviſion of each will be ſpecified. The ſame flanks will be in front, and the columns will form ſeparate and independent.

Fig. 41.

When from open column, the CLOSE column is formed, in order to deploy into line, the following ſucceſſive operations take place.

1ſt. When approaching the alignement, the platoons are ordered to *cloſe* up to quarter diſtance to the leading one, which is either halted when neceſſary, or only directed to ſhorten its ſtep.

Fig. 43.

2d. The column then *moves* on, till its head *halts* exactly in the alignement, and its rear *marches* up cloſe.

From open to form cloſe column.

3d. Every other platoon (from the head of the battalion) is ordered to *face*, and *double* up to right, or left of the one preceding it, according to the formation of the column. The commander of the right platoon takes poſt on the right of the diviſion. The commander of the left platoon on the left diviſion, and a covering under officer in the center of it, there conſequently is an officer on each flank of each diviſion.

4th. The whole again are ordered to *cloſe* up to the front, and in this ſituation the column remains ready to extend into line.

From cloſe column to form battalion.

From CLOSE COLUMN the BATTALION is formed by three manners of *Deployment*.

Viz. on { The front / The rear / A central } Diviſion of the column.

In

In each caſe, the named diviſion is that of *appui* from which the reſt extend, and to which they form and dreſs.

The mode of formation remains the ſame, whether the column has its right or left in front; allowance only being made for the inverſion of circumſtances, and the neceſſary changes in the words of command.

The battalion is here ſuppoſed to have its right in front; to have performed the ſeveral operations already preſcribed, neceſſary to its being placed on the alignement ready to form; and that the cloſe column conſiſts of eight diviſions.

When to form on the FRONT diviſion—The column being halted with its front diviſion in the alignement, receives the caution that the *line* will be formed on the front diviſion—That diviſion remains firm, and the others are then ordered to *face* to the left, and to *march* with their leading files dreſſed and parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation—When the left leader of the ſecond diviſion has marched a ſpace equal to the front of his diviſion; he orders it to *halt—front—eyes* to the right—The officer on the right then gives the commands: *march—halt*, when arrived on the alignement, and that he joins the left flank of the right diviſion—He then as already preſcribed, dreſſes his diviſion by the ſtanding one, and the diſtant given point to the left. In this manner, every other diviſion proceeds, and each ſucceſſively *fronts* when it has marched ſufficiently to the flank—*moves* up—*halts* and *dreſſes* in line.

On the front diviſion.

Fig. 46.

When to form on the REAR diviſion—A caution is given, that the *line* will be formed on the rear diviſion. Two non-commiſſioned officers are immediately ſent from that diviſion, to place themſelves correctly cloſe before each flank file of the front diviſion; and the leader of that diviſion, is ſhewn the diſtant points in the alignement, on which he is to march. The word is then given, to the right *face*; on which all the diviſions, except the rear one, face to the right—At the word *march*, the faced diviſions ſtep off, the

On the rear diviſions.

Fig. 47.

heads of their files dreſſed, the front one moving in the alignement, and the others cloſe to its right.

When the rear diviſion is uncovered, it receives the word *march*, and then moves up to the two under officers, who mark its new poſition; it there *halts*, and is dreſſed very exactly in the line, its left flank being the point of appui.

When the leader of the ſeventh diviſion, which preceded the rear one, has marched to the flank, a ſpace equal to the front of his diviſion, he orders it to *halt—front—eyes* to the left; the officer on the left, then gives the word *march—halt*, when arrived on the alignement, and that he joins the right flank of the left diviſion, from which he dreſſes his own in the alignement.

All the others ſucceſſively proceed in the ſame manner, till the right one, which has been marching on the alignement, *halts—fronts*, and *dreſſes* in it.

When to form on a CENTRAL diviſion—The commander having determined according to circumſtances, the number of diviſions he means to throw to right or left, *names* any one given diviſion of the column, as that of formation. For example the fifth. It immediately detaches two under officers to mark its ground in the front, and the leader of the head diviſion, takes his point to the right in the alignement.

On a central diviſion.

The command is then given—Diviſions outwards *face*; on which, the four front ones face to the right, the three rear ones to the left, the central one remains as it was. At the word *march*, the faced diviſions move in file to the flanks; and when they have uncovered the central one, it moves up and *halts* on the alignement as before directed—The front diviſions proceed as when the line is formed on the rear of the column, and the rear diviſions proceed as when the line is formed on the front of the column.

Fig. 48.

The whole column *files* to the flanks, at the word from commanders of battalions; and it will require great attention in thoſe of diviſions to front, cloſe in if neceſſary, and

and dreſs ſucceſſively when oppoſite their proper ground in line, always taking care not to overpaſs whatever diviſion precedes them in the formation.

The leader of the front diviſion muſt file critically along the alignement, the other front diviſions move parallel to, and behind him; and the heads of the whole continue dreſſed till each ſucceſſively halts, and moves up to its place in line—The ſame directions alſo regard the rear diviſions, which are regulated by their leading one.

In filing, the diviſions muſt not open out, but march quick, compact, and at an uniform pace—The juſtneſs of formation depends on officers timing their commands, judging their ground, and on their particular attention.

Attentions in forming the battalion.

The major or adjutant mounted, accompanies the deployment to aſſiſt in fronting the diviſions, in caſe the leader of each is not critical in his commands, or that he is not heard, or that his files are too open; and the defects alſo of a preceding diviſion may be remedied by the judicious ſtop of the one following it.

As the commanders of the platoons are on each flank of the diviſion: to whichever flank the diviſions file, the outward officer will halt and front them; and the inward officer will move up, halt, and dreſs them in the line; they will then reſume their places on the right of their platoons.

The line into which the cloſe column extends, muſt be always *perpendicular* to the ground on which the column ſtands—When that line is aſcertained, the column muſt be placed accordingly before the formation begins, and the neceſſary points in it muſt be previouſly fixed.

When a COLUMN of MARCH of ſeveral battalions (the right in front) is to form in cloſe column, and from thence extend into line, the following operations take place.

Fig. 49.

1ſt. The column being here ſuppoſed of five battalions, and marching by platoons, is ordered to cloſe to the front to quarter diſtance.

2d. As the column will generally arrive at an intermediate point of the ground where it is to form, one of the battalions (as here the third) is named as the central one, on which the column is to deploy. When therefore, the head of it is arrived within two hundred paces of the point where it is to be placed in the alignement, the whole *halt*—The ſame operation is then ordered for the column, as takes place when the ſingle battalion deploys on a central diviſion into line, viz. The two front battalions *face* and *march* to the right—The two rear battalions in the ſame manner to the left—The central battalion when uncovered, *advances*, *halts* its head in the alignement; and the other battalions allowing it to arrive there firſt, ſucceſſively, *front*, *move* up, and *halt* alſo in the alignement, with an interval betwixt each, equal to the front of two platoons, which they acquire during the march to the flank, and before they front to move up. Artillery, muſic, drummers, &c. are in the rear of each battalion column, and their ſeveral heads are accurately dreſſed in the line.

From column of march to form cloſe column and the line.

3d. Every other platoon is ordered to *face*, *double* to the left of the one preceding it, *form* diviſions, and the whole to *cloſe* to the head of their reſpective battalions.

4th. When in this ſituation, any one diviſion of the central, or of any other battalion is *named*, as that on which the line is to be formed; here it is ſuppoſed the fifth diviſion of the third battalion. At the word outwards *face*, the two right battalions, and the four front diviſions of the third battalion, face to the right; and the two left battalions, and three rear diviſions of the third battalion, face to the left, the fifth diviſion remains faſt—At the word *march*, the whole move on in file, and the third battalion

forms

forms in line, as directed on the central diviſion. The ſecond battalion, when it has marched a ſpace equal to its proper interval in line, beyond where the right of the third battalion is to be placed, *halts—fronts*, and being then on the left of its ground *deploys* into line on its own rear diviſion; and in the ſame manner does the firſt battalion *deploy*, when it has halted at the left of its ground. The fourth battalion, when it has marched a ſpace equal to its proper interval in line, beyond where the left of the third battalion is to be placed, *halts—fronts*, and being then on the right of its ground, *deploys* into line on its own front diviſion; and in the ſame manner does the fifth battalion *deploy*, when it has halted at the right of its ground.

From column of march to form cloſe column and the line.

The points of the alignement muſt be exactly aſcertained in theſe operations by the adjutants, and the majors will much aſſiſt in giving the juſt diſtances to the battalions before they deploy. Thoſe diviſions that march on the alignement, muſt be very careful not to get before it. As the diſtance of a platoon remains betwixt each battalion after the diviſions are formed, it allows for any looſening of the files that may take place in a conſiderable march to the flank—The officers that conduct the diviſions next to the front, will ſtep out ſucceſſively from their diviſions when uncovered, and thereby ſee more exactly the proper inſtant of ordering their diviſions to *halt* and *front*.

Attentions in forming the line.

In a conſiderable column, the deployment will generally be calculated to take place on the front, inſtead of a central diviſion of the named battalion.

Should a conſiderable cloſe column be halted ſhort of where it is to form into line—The ſeveral battalions may be firſt diſengaged from each other, and placed in the *echellon* poſition; they may then be marched ſeparately to their ſeveral flank points in the alignement, *halt*, and *deploy* to right or left to occupy their place in line.

Forming the line from cloſe column.

Fig. 50.

When

Formation of the line from two columns.

When Two columns marched off from the right of wings are required to form in line to the front, flank, or rear of their march.

To the front.

Fig. 51.

If to the FRONT—Points in the alignement and relative to the flank point of *appui* are given by adjutants, at which the head of each column is to be placed. The diſtance betwixt thoſe points being known to the chief commander, as ſoon as the battalions of each column are placed in the manner already preſcribed on the alignement, he *names* the diviſion of a certain battalion of each column on which the reſt are to deploy. The operation as already directed takes place; the allotted portions of each column *deploy* inwards, and fill up the vacant ſpace; the reſt deploy outwards, and the line is compleated.

To the flanks.

Fig. 51.

If to either FLANK—the points in the alignement at which the heads of the columns are to be placed, are immediately aſcertained by adjutants—The columns are cloſed up to quarter diſtance—Their heads are wheeled when proper, and directed ſo as to arrive and *halt* juſt behind the alignement, with the whole of each column perpendicular to it—The battalions are then drawn out in *echellon* on the named one—*move* up to the alignement, and *deploy* as already directed.

To the rear.

Fig. 51.

If to the REAR—The columns by ſuch operations as are neceſſary are cloſed to quarter diſtance on ſuch diviſion of the column as is near to, but before the line of formation. The whole or ſuch parts of the columns as have not countermarched in order to cloſe their diſtance, will then *countermarch* by diviſions, and the columns will ſtand as marched off from the left and fronting to their former rear—The columns will then be ordered to *exchange* places, by the diviſions of each *facing* inwards and *filing*; when they have nearly approached each other, the right column *halts*, and the left one continues in march, and paſſes through the intervals of the diviſions of the right one; both columns then *move* on, until they

arrive,

arrive, *halt* and *front* on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preſerved for them: during this flank march, the heads of the files are kept nearly dreſſed, and are regulated by the two diviſions of the head—The columns are now in the ſituation of having marched off from the left of wings, and of forming in line to the front, they will therefore proceed as before directed.

This method of exchanging columns by files may be applied to advantage, when in the courſe of a night march, one column may have croſſed the line of another, thereby loſt its relative ſituation, and that it is neceſſary to regain it.

Formation in two lines.

If there are Two columns compoſed each of part of two lines —the battalions of the ſecond line will halt at a proper diſtance from the firſt, and deploy in the ſame manner. Fig. 52.

Formation in one line from ſeveral columns.

Where more than two columns are to form in the ſame line—— when halted, their heads muſt be at conſiderable diſtances. If the diſtances of the heads contain more ground than the interior columns can occupy, then part of the exterior ones will of courſe deploy inwards. If the interior columns are more than ſufficient to occupy ſuch ſpace; part of thoſe columns, and the whole of the exterior columns will *march* to the flanks, *halt* when proper, and then *deploy* into line. Fig. 54.

The ſame general directions regard the heads of open columns, when ſeveral of them arrive at different points in the alignement.

In *deploying* from cloſe column, its head muſt ever firſt be halted on the propoſed line; and the DIVISION on which the formation is made, muſt, during the operation of forming, always *advance* to the point where the head of the column was ſo placed. The mode of extending into line from cloſe column by making the front, diviſions Fig. 56.

Guibert's formation of the line from column defective.

ſions *file* towards the rear, in order to dreſs with that of formation (which remains fixed, and immoveable) is defective, falſe, and cannot be adopted as a general method, although preſcribed by ſo reſpectable an authority as that of GUIBERT.——Becauſe——

Fig. 55.

It is an unneceſſary and improper operation, firſt to bring the column forward to the intended line—then to ſend the head of it back in order to form—and again to advance the line to its original point, where it ought at once to have extended—The difficulty of the diviſions getting into line, by theſe retrograde motions is increaſed, as the directions are leſs certain, and the flank points not ſufficiently determined and known; for at no time is the front of a ſingle diviſion a ſufficient direction for forming of any one battalion.

The true line is that to which the commander, after having well reconnoitred, and determined the poſition he means to take, has brought up, and pointed out to the head of the column; and which during the unfolding of it, is preſerved for the diviſion of formation, by the two non-commiſſioned officers who have been diſpatched from it to the front, before the movement begins—If ſuch diviſion was not to move up, but remain *fixed*, the new line would probably not even be parallel to the true one, and ſubſequent operations would be required to give it the intended poſition.

Reaſons.

Fig. 57.

But above all the impropriety of this method is apparent, when *ſeveral* columns are to extend in the ſame line—For the heads of them being halted in the new line; circumſtances will determine the commander, according to the number of troops neceſſary to fill up the intervals, or the numbers he means to throw to the right, or left, to order on which diviſion of each the different columns are to *form*—It is therefore evident, that ſhould ſuch diviſions remain *immoveable*, and not march up to the front, the ſeveral columns when *deployed* will be formed in as many ſeparate lines; thoſe probably not even parallel among themſelves, and all *retired* behind the intended line.

The

The PRUSSIANS were formerly accuſtomed to begin the *deploy* from the cloſe column of ſeveral battalions in depth: but the previous operation of drawing out the battalions, and placing each ſeparate on the alignement, now takes place; and when each battalion has arrived at the point where it is to deploy into line, it is only four diviſions in depth. The *deployment* of a conſiderable column is more practiſed as a cavalry than as an infantry method of formation; the battalions of infantry moſt commonly break from the general column, march to their ſeveral fixed points in the alignement, enter into it, take the wheeling diſtances of diviſions, and then form, as preſcribed for the open column.

Pruſſian mode of deployment.

At MAGDEBURG in 1785—A corps of infantry marched off, in two columns from the right of wings, each column compoſed of half of each line, and each line of ten battalions; a vanguard of two battalions preceded the left column, and marched in full front: the cavalry in column covered the front, and the right flank of the right column. The columns were one eighth of the battalion in front, and cloſed during the march to half diſtance.

The columns halted about 1700 yards from where the oppoſing corps was poſted—The diviſions moved up to cloſe column, and the leading battalions of the ſecond line preſerved their relative diſtance from the front of the whole. The battalions then drew out from the columns on the center one of each, halted, faced, moved up to the alignement, and halted in line of battalions; thoſe of each column at the diſtance of a diviſion from each other, and an interval equal to the front of three battalions ſeparated the columns. The ſecond line performed the ſame parallel movements.

Pruſſian formation of two lines from column of march, and cloſe column.

Fig. 68.

In this ſituation the whole moved on, obliqued to the right, preſerved the general front, and after advancing about three hundred yards halted on the line prepared by the adjutants. The alternate diviſions doubled up; one quarter of each battalion was now in front, the interval betwixt the columns remained, but the battalions of each column were without any interval, and the diviſions cloſed up to the front.

The lines were ordered to *deploy:* the whole on the front diviſions of the third and ſixth battalions of each line (which ſtood faſt) viz. The firſt and ſecond battalions extended to the right, and formed on their rear diviſions; all the other battalions of both columns extended to the left, and formed on their front diviſions. The two lines of ten battalions each were formed with the greateſt preciſion.

Deployment of the Pruſſian cavalry in two lines.

Fig. 70.

In SILESIA 1785—Thirty-five ſquadrons of cavalry, making about 4000 men, marched from camp in two columns formed from the center of wings, the front of each was compoſed of two half ſquadrons. They halted in the alignement at their proper diſtance, doubled the front of the columns by moving up every other half ſquadron, and cloſed up to the front. The columns being now each two ſquadrons in front, were ordered to *deploy* to right and left on their leading ſquadrons, which remained halted. In leſs than two minutes one full line of thirty-five ſquadron was moſt correctly formed, extended above an Engliſh mile, and was ready to move on to the attack.

Fig. 69.

Twenty ſquadrons of cuiraſſiers, and twenty ſquadrons of huſſars formed in two lines, marched off in column from the center of each line. The column was two ſquadrons in front, the diviſions cloſed up, the lines kept diſtance, and the head halted at its point.

The

The column *deployed* equally to right and left, and in ninety ſeconds both lines were completely formed *en muraille*, or without intervals—The cuiraſſiers in the firſt, the huſſars in the ſecond line.

The SILESIAN infantry of thirty-two battalions encamped in two equal lines, marched from the right to the front in four columns each compoſed of equal parts of both lines. The heads of the column halted in a given direction, at conſiderable given diſtances from each other, and the rear of each moved on to cloſe column, the leading battalions of the ſecond line preſerving a ſufficient diſtance.

Pruſſian formation in two lines, by movements of the cloſe and open column.

The three front battalions of each column, and of each line faced to the right—marched to the flank—fronted, and moved up again into line, when ſeparated from each other by a ſpace nearly equal to the front of a battalion, the rear battalions when uncovered alſo moved forward to the alignement.

Fig. 71.

The whole battalions now ſtood in line in their regular order from left to right, and occupying an extent nearly equal to that of the line when drawn out.

An *oblique* poſition in front was now ordered for the formation of the line, by which the right was to be conſiderably thrown forward, and the point d'appui to be at the head of the left column.

The front diviſion of the left battalion, firſt wheeled into the alignement, was followed by each other diviſion, as it acquired its wheeling diſtance, and the battalion halted in open column when its left diviſion arrived at the point d'appui. Each other battalion of the line continued to march forward, ſucceſſively entered the alignement at the point where its left was to be placed, was followed by its proper diviſions, and halted on its ground. In this manner both lines entered, and ſtood on the alignement in open column, when on the ſignal of a cannon the whole wheeled by diviſions to the left, and formed in the moſt exact manner.

Such was a manœuvre of the Sileſian infantry encamped in 1785. The left of the line was here the point of appui—the general diſtances were taken from the rear—and the quickneſs and exactneſs with which the adjutants lined in an inſtant from left to right, and gave the diſtances to their battalions was very conſpicuous. The manœuvre was a mixture of the movements of the cloſe and open column; and in this manner alſo at POTSDAM did a corps of cavalry and infantry halted in cloſe columns behind the left of the alignement, form in two lines, extending to the right.

Pruſſian march of four columns into the alignement and formation in two lines.

Fig. 72.

The SILESIAN infantry marched in four columns from the right to the front, each compoſed of part of both lines. The leading diviſion of the right column, wheeled to the right into the alignement, marched along it followed by the reſt of the diviſions and battalions. The other columns marched alſo to their determined points in the ſame alignement, and ſeverally entered it on the left of their ground. The leading diviſions of the ſecond line wheeled when at their due diſtance, and marched on a parallel alignement to that of the firſt. The diſtance betwixt the heads of columns was ſuch that the front of each joined the rear of that to its right when the whole had entered the alignement. The march was continued till the whole had entered, when at the ſignal of a cannon the whole halted, wheeled to the left by diviſions, and formed in the moſt accurate manner in two lines.

The firſt line was perfectly formed in fourteen minutes from entering the alignement. The ſecond line required twelve minutes more. The general front was about two thouſand two hundred yards, and the whole body of infantry about twenty-two thouſand men.

In this manner (as well as on other occaſions) did the PRUSSIAN army in four columns covered by a ſtrong vanguard, cavalry, and a can-

a cannonade, march on, and threaten the right of the AUSTRIANS at Liſſa. When at the diſtance of about a mile and a half, they ſuddenly wheeled the heads of the ſeveral columns into an oblique alignement, continued the march to the right by lines, gained the enemy's flank, formed with all the exactneſs of a review day, immediately moved on, and attacked the AUSTRIAN left, who in hurry and confuſion endeavoured but in vain to counteract ſuch regular and determined movements.

Similar movements made at the battle of Liſſa.

MOVEMENTS

OF THE

BATTALION in FRONT.

THE MARCH of the battalion in FRONT is the moſt difficult, and the moſt material of all manœuvres; it is required near the enemy, and immediately precedes the attack.

The circumſtances that enſure the exact advance of the battalion, have been detailed in the article of march, muſt be ſcrupulouſly adhered to, and need not here be repeated. March of the battalion.

As the march of the battalion in front, is always parallel to the line on which it is ranged; it muſt be formed, halted, and moſt correctly dreſſed, ſquare to any particular point on which its future movement is to be directed: or, that point muſt be determined, in conſequence of the then line of the battalion.

A caution is given by the commanding officer, that the *battalion* will move *forward*. The firſt colour immediately advances three regular paces, and halts; the ſecond colour moves up into the front rank, and the two covering ſergeants paſs it from the rear, and place themſelves on each flank of the firſt colour. As under the direction of the commanding officer, the right advanced ſergeant When halted and to march in front.

ſergeant is to be anſwerable for the ſtep, and for the preſervation of the line of march; the major, who is now at the center of the rear of the battalion, obſerves and indicates the particular point, which is directly in front of that ſergeant, and on which he is to march, after having remarked his intermediate points, which he may at all times find.

The colour and the ſergeants, are placed perfectly ſquare to the front on which they are to move, and parallel to the battalion. The commanding officer is advanced four paces before the colour, to have a general attention, and direct the movement of the battalion.

March in front.

At the word *march*, the whole battalion inſtantly ſtep off with the left feet, and turn their eyes to the colour in the front rank—That colour keeps its exact diſtance of three paces from the advanced one, and is the guide of the battalion. The advanced ſergeants and colour, give the utmoſt care to preſerve their parallel poſition, to maintain the equality of ſtep, and to move on their given points; they are to allow no other conſiderations to diſtract their attention, and will notice the directions of the commander only, or thoſe of the major in the rear, who is in a ſituation to obſerve and point out any defects that may ariſe in the march. Officers in the ranks, can only be obſervant of their own perſonal exactneſs of march; they muſt certainly err, if they then too much attempt to correct inaccuracies in their diviſions, that muſt be done by thoſe who are poſted in the rear; and well trained ſoldiers of themſelves know the remedy that is required, and will apply it.

The great points that inſure the exactneſs of the march in front, cannot be too often repeated; the perfect ſquareneſs of each individual's body; the touch of the files; the exact perpendiculars of march; the attention of the advanced ſergeants and colours to the line of march, cadence of ſtep, and parallel movement; and that of the battalion to cover, follow, and in every reſpect comply with the motions of thoſe that are advanced for their direction.

Inattention,

Inattention, or an inequality of ſtep, will produce a waving in the march of the battalion; but the communication of this may often be ſtopped by the exertions of the major and adjutant, who ſeeing where it originates, will immediately apprize the platoons in fault, and coolly caution the others that are ſtill in their true line, not to participate of the error. A flank of the battalion, may at firſt ſight be thought to be behind, when the fault really ariſes from a center platoon bulging out, and thereby preventing the flank from being ſeen.

Attentions in the march.

The battalion thus marching in perfect order, when it arrives at its given point, receives the word: *battalion*; on which it ceaſes to gain ground, marks the time, and corrects any irregularity that may exiſt; after a pauſe of five or ſix ſeconds, it receives the word: *halt*. The ſtep which is taken is inſtantly finiſhed, eyes remain turned to the center, the ſergeant and colours fall back to their ſtation in the ranks, the whole remain ſteadied, and the commanding officer places himſelf cloſe to the front rank, in order to ſee whether the battalion is ſufficiently dreſſed, and in a direction perfectly parallel to that on which it marched.

When in march and to halt.

But if he finds it neceſſary to order a farther dreſſing, as the colour is a fixed point, which cannot be wrong, nor ought to be moved; he immediately himſelf takes three exact paces from the colour to the front, and from thence being uninterrupted by the ranks, directs the right flank officer to move, and to halt when proper; the left flank officer, at the ſame time, having theſe two objects to guide him, alſo places himſelf in that line—There are now three given points in a line, parallel to which, and at three paces diſtant the battalion ſhould be dreſſed; the colour already aſcertains the center of the battalion, and the ſergeants covering the flank officers by taking three exact paces from thoſe officers towards the battalion, determine its flanks and remain

When ordered to dreſs after halting.

fixed. The advanced officers now fall back, and having three fixed points in a line, conſider the right as that of appui; *eyes* are ordered to be turned to the right, and they proceed inſtantly to dreſs their platoons as already directed.

It is evident, that in the dreſſing of a ſingle battalion after the halt, whatever correction is neceſſary muſt be made by advancing or retiring the flanks, and not by moving the center, which having been the guide in the march, has juſtly ſtopped at the point where it ſhould arrive.

If the ſingle battalion is not accuſtomed at exerciſe when it is marching in front and halts, to be dreſſed from its colours upon a given point beyond its flank (which may be a ſergeant repreſenting the colour or flank of an adjoining battalion) it will never march or halt well, or be dreſſed in a line when manœuvring with others; becauſe in ſuch ſituation, in order to have the juſt line, each battalion muſt be dreſſed from its own center on the general line of colours.

When to incline.

Fig. 58.

When the battalion is to INCLINE or alter its length of ſtep, the command muſt be given in an audible and pointed manner, that the whole may at the ſame inſtant comply, and preſerve uniformity of movement.

When to alter the direction of the march.

Fig. 60.

When in the courſe of marching, a ſmall alteration of DIRECTION becomes neceſſary—The advanced ſergeants and colour, by bringing forward one ſhoulder, and keeping back the other, inſenſibly take it; the battalion, by ſignal from the commanding officer, ſtepping out on one flank, and ſhortning the pace on the other, by degrees conform, new points of march are taken, and the whole again move on in front.

When the battalion is to RETIRE, it ſhould previouſly be correctly dreſſed, otherwiſe, its movement muſt be diſordered and unexact.

unexact. It is then ordered to *face* to the right about—At the command of *forward*, the ſergeants and ſecond colour, advance ſix paces from the rear rank, and the firſt colour moves into that rank—The lieutenant colonel leads, and the battalion moves on at the word *march*, in the ſame manner, as to the proper front; the muſic, drums, ſupernumerary officers, &c. taking care to march with exactneſs, not to interrupt, but rather to aſſiſt the battalion. When to retire.

In marching by the rear, the battalion muſt cover its proper extent of ground—The rear rank men muſt not cloſe their files too much, otherwiſe the front men, who are in general larger, will be crowded in their rank.

When the battalion is to FRONT, it receives the word: *battalion—halt*—to the right about *face*; and is then *dreſſed* in the manner already preſcribed. When to front.

When the battalion is marching in front, and partial OBSTACLES occur—Such diviſions or platoons as are interrupted, *halt*, allow the reſt of the battalion to move on, *face* outwards from their center, follow the adjoining flanks in *file*, and remain in this ſituation till they paſs the obſtacle, and can *move* up ſucceſſively to their place in line which has been preſerved for them. When to paſs an obſtacle in advancing. Fig. 61.

Should the wing of a battalion be obliged to break, it may then *march* off from one flank, by column of ſixes or ſubdiviſions, in order to prevent ſuch an extenſion in file, as would otherwiſe take place; and it will again double up into line when the ground allows.

In this operation it is to be obſerved, that not even a ſingle file ſhould break without evident neceſſity—That no file ſhould remain needleſſly out of the line, but that as the ground allows they ſhould ſucceſſively advance into it—That either platoon or diviſion breaks from its flanks, and two contiguous platoons of different diviſions, muſt Attentions.

here conſider themſelves as of the ſame—That when a platoon is to break, behind which part of another is already broken, ſuch platoon muſt break, not to both, but intirely to one flank—That when the battalion halts, ſuch part of it as is thus broken will front, and place itſelf ſo as to flank the opening left.

Should the battalion be ordered to retire, while part of it remains thus broken, the broken part will *face* about, precede the battalion, not interrupt its movements, and re-enter the line gradually as the ground allows.

When in the courſe of the march, the battalion is interrupted by a WOOD, or ſuch other difficult ground, as obliges the whole of it to break—The commander will give the word: *paſs* by files to the front; on which, each officer orders his platoon to the right *face*, *wheels* his leading file to the left, the reſt follow, and he paſſes as faſt as the difficulties of the wood will allow him, endeavouring to keep a relative diſtance from the right or left as ordered—When each officer comes to the edge of the wood, he orders his platoon to form up, and there remains with his back to the wood till the other platoons come out, and till he is ordered to *march* and dreſs in the battalion.

When to paſs through a wood.

When the intire battalion is marching to the rear, if neceſſary that part of it ſhould break on account of any obſtacle that interrupts the front, it will be done in the manner before directed—The line will continue in the ordinary march, but the parts which are obliged to break, will file off in time, and advance very quickly till they are before the part of the battalion which remains formed—They will then take care in moving on not to impede it, but will reſume the ordinary ſtep, and will by degrees re-enter the line when the ground allows of it.

To paſs an obſtacle in retiring.

The colours muſt always be carried uniformly and upright, in order to facilitate the moving and dreſſing of the line.

Colours.

The

The diſtances of battalions in line, are always taken from colours to colours; and the mounted officers in the rear, can beſt judge and apprize when ſuch diſtances are not correct. Diſtances.

When the WING platoons of a battalion are wheeled backward and faced outwards, in order to cover its flanks—Such platoons will march in file before the battalion during its retreat, and will take particular care to move in the ſame direction, and not to impede its progreſs—When the battalion fronts, the platoons will face outwards; and always recollecting that their immediate buſineſs is to cover the flanks, they will regulate their poſition and movements by thoſe of the battalion. When the wing platoons form flanks to the battalion. Fig. 59.

When an intire battalion is to WHEEL (as to the right)—At the word: battalion to the right *wheel*, all the platoon officers place themſelves before the firſt file on the right of their platoons, and each platoon wheels up to the right one ſixteenth of the circle. At the word: *march*, the right platoon wheels into, and is halted in the intended direction: the others march ſeparately, join to the right, ſucceſſively enter the new line, and dreſs to the part firſt formed. Should at any time, a wheel in uniform front be required, it muſt be done gradually, the platoons waiting for each other, diſtances are preſerved from the ſtanding flank, and the degree of quickneſs is taken from the wheeling one—Should the battalion throw back a flank, ſuch part will face to the right about, take up its direction in the ſame manner by platoons, and then come about to the proper front. When the battalion wheels on a flank forward or backward. Fig. 63.

There is another method, by which the flanks of the diviſions ſeem well protected during this operation, if made before an enemy—At the word: *march*, the right platoon wheels into the

Method of wheeling up or throwing back a diviſion or the battalion.

Fig. 64.

the new direction, and the reſt of the line at the ſame time moves on in front, and *inclines* to join the left of the firſt platoon. When the right flank of the ſecond platoon has arrived there, it alſo wheels up into the new direction, and the reſt of the line continues the incline to join its left flank—in this manner the line preſerves its uniform front, inclines, and gradually enters the new poſition as its leading platoon arrives in it, at the ſame time that it covers and protects the flanks of the formed platoons. By the ſame means alſo will a battalion or line throw back any number of its diviſions in preſence of an enemy. The angular platoon will give the direction, the reſt will *face* about, *march*, *incline*, ſucceſſively *wheel* into it, and *front*. The outer platoon of all which is ſuppoſed formed as a flank to the battalion, will march in *file*, and cover the flank.

Paſſage of lines.

Fig. 65. A.

In narrow grounds, where there are redoubled lines, and and in many other ſituations, it becomes neceſſary for one battalion to paſs directly through another in marching either to front or rear; but this muſt particularly happen when a firſt line is to retire through, and make place for a ſecond.

Paſſage of firſt line through the ſecond.

Should the ſecond line be ordered to advance, and occupy the ground which the firſt is to quit——As ſoon as it approaches within twenty paces, and halts, the front line battalion receives the word: *paſs*—Each platoon is ordered to *face* to the right, and diſengage its head—Each platoon *marches* at a quick ſtep to the rear; paſſes ſtraight through the ſecond line, and when paſt reſumes the ordinary march.

Fig. 65. A.

Wherever the heads of the retreating files preſent themſelves, the officers of the ſecond line cauſe four files of their platoons to fall back, and again to reſume their places when the others have paſſed.

Reforming of firſt line.

Fig. 65. B.

The officers of the firſt line having been cautioned again to form at (one hundred and fifty or two hundred) paces from the ſecond, and having begun to take and count them from the paſſing of that line, will *halt* accordingly; *cloſe* their platoons; *front*; place themſelves on the pivot (left) flanks; take their juſt diſtances, and

aligne

aligne to the front on the pivots of the three firſt platoons, which will be inſtantly arranged by the major. When the whole is in order, the battalion is formed by the *wheel* of platoons to the left.

Counting the paces, which muſt be of the accurate regulated length, is an aſſiſtance for the halt, rather than the exact means of giving the alignement, which muſt depend on the quick, and after dreſſing of the pivots from the front.

Paſſage of firſt line.

If the ſecond line remains poſted—The firſt retires in front, till within twenty paces of the ſecond—at the word *paſs*, each officer *turns* his platoon to the left; *marches* quick in file through the ſecond; reſumes the ordinary march when paſt, and *halts* at his determined number of paces from that line. Fig. 65. B.

Firſt line reforms in an oblique poſition.

Should a new poſition not parallel, be taken by the paſſing battalion—The commander with his two leading platoons will firſt enter it, and direct the others to regulate their flanks by them; and if ſeveral battalions are paſſing the ſecond line, the alignement is thus made eaſier for them. Fig. 65. C.

Crowning a height.

Where a HEIGHT in the rear is to be crowned by a retiring line—an officer muſt not dreſs exactly to the platoon that precedes him; but in joining it, he muſt halt, and arrange his own in ſuch a manner, that the ſlope of the riſing can be entirely ſeen and commanded, which is here the great object, and not to be attained if the troops were to adhere to a ſtraight line. Fig. 65. E.

Refuſing a flank.

It may happen where the paſſing line is to poſt one flank, and refuſe the other, that the officers take their diſtances from behind; but if this movement is foreſeen, the inconvenience may be avoided by filing from the proper flank: for if the left is to be poſted, and the right refuſed, the platoons may *paſs* from their left, the column will thereby have its left in front, will be more readily directed on the point d'appui, and the preſervation of diſtances will be facilitated, as Fig. 65. D.

they

they will then be taken from the front. If the right is to be poſted, the platoons may paſs from their right.

MOVEMENTS of the LINE in FRONT.

THE chief object of every other movement, is the quick and juſt formation into LINE when neceſſary, and the conſequent march of that line in front towards the enemy, which is the laſt great operation that precedes the attack, and is the moſt difficult and material of all manœuvres.

Chief object of movement.

No body of troops can advance in line on an enemy but in diſorder and confuſion, unleſs the original formation of that line has been perfectly ſtraight; and its correct preſervation during the the march requires every attention—While order ſubſiſts, the ſoldier feels his advantage, exerts himſelf, and acts with energy and ſpirit—When diſorder prevails he perceives his inferiority, deſponds, loſes all confidence in himſelf or commander, perſonal ſafety ſoon occurs, and the moment of flight is not far diſtant—To bring up troops to the attack in imperfect order, is to loſe every advantage which diſcipline propoſes, and to preſent them to the enemy in that very ſtate to which after his beſt efforts he hopes to reduce them.

Neceſſity of order.

When a line of ſeveral battlions is formed and halted, there is an interval of twelve paces for two pieces of artillery betwixt each, and the whole generally are dreſſed to a flank. The formation and march of the battalion in front have been already detailed, the ſame principles direct that of the line.

When the line is to march in front, one of the battalions is *named* as the regulating one to whoſe movements all the reſt are to conform

form—At the caution given by the commander of each battalion that the line will move *forward*, the front colour and ſerjeants of each will carefully move out three paces as already directed, and the perpendicular point of march will be given to the regulating battalion only, by the major in the rear—The advanced colours will take the utmoſt care in moving out to dreſs by the regulating one ſo that the whole may be in a line perfectly parallel to that on which the corps is formed, and which cannot be otherwiſe, if they are accurate in taking their three paces. And, ſhould the line at any time be ill dreſſed when halted; the advanced colours muſt ſtill be correctly placed before the line is again put in motion, and the ſeveral battalions in advancing will conform to them.

March of the line in front.

At the word *march*, rapidly repeated, each battalion at the ſame inſtant is put in motion, dreſſing to their ſeveral centers.

Every attention required in the movement of the ſingle battalion muſt be redoubled in that of the line: on the regulating one particularly does every thing depend, whoſe pace muſt be ſteady, uniform and direct—The commander of the line who is with it, muſt from its advanced colour obſerve and ſo caution an adjoining one, that the others being enabled at all inſtants to dreſs with theſe, may preſerve and carry on a line perfectly parallel to the original line; and the ſeveral battalions by ſcrupulouſly following and conforming to their leading colours, will if theſe move with juſtneſs, advance on the moſt uniform front.

Attentions in marching.

The difficulty of aſcertaining the perpendiculars of march to the regulating battalion are certainly great, as the leaſt deviation to right or left will tend to alter the direction of, or to diſorder the line; but there appears no other marked general rule that can be given, and the greateſt care therefore muſt be taken in remarking them; it is from the *rear* of the body only that they can juſtly be obſerved and announced, and it is from thence that any improper deviation in the march can beſt be corrected; much therefore depends on the attention of the majors and adjutants.—It would ſeem

 that

that the allowing each battalion to take its diſtinct points ſhould tend to preſerve the uniformity of the line; but it is much better to make the others depend on the movement of the regulating one, and on the parallel march of the advanced colours, than in any ſhape to truſt to their own points which will never be true, with reſpect to each other, and from whence a crowding in, or opening out muſt infallibly ariſe.

Should any battalion be behind the line—at the word *advance*, the ſtep will be lengthned till it arrives in line.

Should any battalion be advanced before the line—at the word *mark*, the ſtep will be ſhortned till the line comes up.

When neceſſary (in order to correct intervals) battalions will occaſionally *incline* but without heads being turned from the center, and when the intention is anſwered they will receive the word *front* to ceaſe inclining.

Attentions in marching.

In correcting the movements of battalions in the line much judgement muſt be exerciſed, the general ſituation muſt be examined, inclining muſt not take place on every ſmall alteration of interval; and wherever the fault does originate, the remedy ſhould in general from thence begin. The opening or cloſing of intervals commonly proceeds from the colours moving in a falſe direction, and ſhould be corrected by their taking a true one.

The march in line of a conſiderable body, can only be at the ordinary ſtep, a quicker movement would produce diſorder, nor could artillery attend its movements when advancing to the enemy. But there are ſituations where a brigade or ſmaller front ſhould move on to a particular attack at a lengthy ſtep, or where even a quicker cadence may be required from them.

The commanders of battalions muſt look upon the regulating one as infallible; and the general muſt watch over it, and carefully direct its motions. The *march*, and *halt*, and attention of each battalion in line, is by its own center; the commander alone attends to the regulating one. *Dreſſing* to a flank is by a ſeparate direction, given when neceſſary or proper after halting.

The

The majors and adjutants, will often place themſelves cloſe to their third rank, and to their ſecond colour, to ſee that they are aligned with their own battalion and the next, and that they are not too much advanced or retired—That eyes remain fixed on the advanced ſergeants and colour—That thoſe do not look behind them or turn their heads, and that the center colour obſerves its diſtance of three paces.

Attentions in marching.

Battalions in line, marching over heights or acroſs vallies, will require more time to paſs them, than others who are moving on the ſame extent, but of level ground; in order to preſerve equality of front, the laſt muſt therefore ſhorten their ſtep. The ſame thing will happen, when platoons, and particularly the colours, are obliged to break and fall into file. The majors and adjutants who attend the march, will eaſily ſee thoſe who are advanced or retired, and correct them accordingly.

Attention on uneven ground.

The flanks of battalions, muſt take particular care never to advance before the center; the officers of the wings, by attending to the general line of the colours, will much aſſiſt; and if thoſe officers and the center, can be preſerved in the true direction, the internal dreſſing of the battalion will readily follow.

Flanks of battalions.

In line—Cautions and words of command, are repeated by commandants of battalions only; but in ſuch manner, as to be heard diſtinctly by the leader of the adjoining one, beginning from that which regulates. The words *march—halt*, &c. of each, muſt inſtantaneouſly be circulated.

Directing battalion.

The battalion which is neareſt to, and is to preſerve the point of appui, will in general be the regulating one; therefore, a flank battalion will commonly direct the movements of the line, and ſhould the commander change it, he muſt announce ſuch change to the line.

The line thus marching in perfect order, when it arrives at its deſtined point, receives the word *battalion*, rapidly repeated

to each flank; the colours of the line endeavour to dreſs by each other and the regulating one, and ceaſe to advance; their battalions which are behind them, and at their three paces diſtance, having ſuch an evident direction, *mark* the ſtep, and *dreſs* within themſelves. After a pauſe of five or ſix ſeconds, the word *halt* is more inſtantly circulated if poſſible, and each individual battalion halting in the manner already preſcribed, the general alignement ſhould be nearly juſt.

When marching and to halt.

The whole line muſt *halt* at the ſame inſtant when the word is given, and no dreſſing or correction of intervals takes place till ſo directed—The advanced colours on the halt fall back to the battalions.

But, if the commander finds it neceſſary to give a more exact dreſſing, he immediately orders the firſt colour of the regulating battalion, again to move forward three paces (its place being ſupplied by the ſecond one) and alſo a colour from one of the two adjoining battalions—Being himſelf then placed at the regulating colour, he directs the poſition of the other advanced one; their flank officers alſo dreſs by them; thus, the colours and flank officers of thoſe two battalions are in an exact direction, parallel to which, and at three paces diſtant the line of troops is to be formed. The other colour immediately takes its diſtance from its reſpective advanced one, the covering ſergeants mark the flank points of their battalion, and the correction of dreſſing inſtantly begins in the manner already preſcribed. The other battalions of the line do not advance their front colours, but dreſs them exactly on the ſecond colours of the two directing battalions; and their flank officers having now ſo many fixed and viſible points aſcertained, can eaſily place themſelves in the true line, and begin the correction of their battalions—When the line is dreſſed, the two advanced colours reſume their proper ſtation.

When halted and ordered to dreſs.

Fig. 66.

If when the advanced colours move forward, the reſt of thoſe of the line are immediately lowered, and not again held up to view, till the perſons of their bearers are ſucceſſively

Attentions in dreſſing.

ceſſively placed on the true line, it will be a great aſſiſtance to the diſtant battalions.

The difficulty of diſtinguiſhing and directing in an ill formed line, would make it troubleſome at once to give a true poſition to the colours and flank officers, without firſt procuring the advanced parallel line as above preſcribed.

The dreſſing of the line may appear tedious in the detail; but the alertneſs and intelligence of individuals will make it ſufficiently quick in practice conſidering the difficulty of the operation and the great object to be attained, if each attends ſolely to his own buſineſs, and does not improperly intermeddle in the province of another—For if the commander of the line will limit himſelf to giving the alignement to the colours of two battalions, and only watch over the others—If thoſe of battalions attend chiefly to the poſition of their colours; if the flank officers take their points as ſoon as their colours are arranged; and if the platoon officers can be depended upon in their ſeveral ſituations, every thing will go on quick; and in proportion as the colours of each battalion are aligned, will their ſeveral component members be truly placed. On the ſame principles that the dreſſing is corrected, is the march in line to the front conducted.

If the line is at any time ordered to *halt*, without being correctly dreſſed, and is immediately after directed to reſume its march —As ſoon as the colours move out, they will be inſtantly placed in the ſame line from the one regulating, although by this means, ſome of them may be more than three paces diſtant from their proper battalions. At the word *march*, they will move on preſerving this line, and the battalions will gradually attain their three paces from them. This will take place whether the line is to advance or retire.

When the line is to RETIRE, the neceſſity of its being previouſly correctly dreſſed, is ſtill more eſſential than it

When the line is to retire.

it was in the ſingle battalion; if that preliminary is not granted, its movements muſt be diſordered in proportion to its extent. But as there may not always be time to give it the wiſhed for degree of exactneſs, before the retreat begins; ſuch aids may be applied, as will greatly aſſiſt it in the courſe of its movement.

The battalions are ordered, to the right about *face*—The ſergeants and ſecond colour of each, at the word *forward*, advance ſix paces from the rear rank, the firſt colour moves into that rank, and the point of march is given from the rear to the regulating battalion—The advanced colours, which are probably not in an exact line, are immediately ſo placed from the regulating one, without regard being had to their diſtance from their reſpective battalions, and an exact line of colours is thereby obtained by the majors and adjutants. The whole is now ordered to *march*; the advanced colours preſerve their poſition and line, and the ſeveral battalions by degrees, acquire their juſt diſtance of ſix paces from them—The lieutenant colonels lead, and the line moves on in the ſame manner as to the proper front. The muſic, drums, ſupernumerary officers, &c. take care to march with exactneſs, not to interrupt, but rather to aſſiſt their battalions.

When to front.

When the line is to front, each battalion receives the words, *battalion—halt*—right about *face*; and if it is then to move forward, the colours and ſergeants immediately advance before the front rank, and are there correctly lined, ready to conduct its march. But it is to remain halted; the dreſſing is then ordered in the manner already preſcribed.

Attentions in firing on the march.

In the march of the line, either to front or rear, when parts of it (as battalions or their wings) are ordered to halt and fire—The general ſtep muſt be much ſhortned, to allow thoſe that fire to regain the line without confuſion, and the attention of the advanced colours to regulate the whole muſt be very great.

What-

Whatever impediments preſent themſelves to the march of the line in front, will be avoided by the methods preſcribed for the battalion; and the openings made by ſuch parts as are obliged to quit the line, will be carefully preſerved, in order to their re-entering into it, as ſoon as the ground permits. Paſſing obſtacles.

INCLINING the line when well performed, is a moſt important and deciſive operation—It enables in advancing to gain the flank of an enemy, or to preſerve the appui of a river, wood, &c. the line of which runs oblique to that of the march—The principles of this diagonal movement have been already explained, and the difficulty of carrying on the line parallel to its firſt poſition; therefore, the perfect ſquareneſs of the ſhoulder and body of each individual to the front, is the firſt great object; and every attention muſt be given to the advanced colours, that they preſerve their parallel line, and remain a true direction for their ſeveral battalions. The whole line look to the flank to which they incline, the ſtep muſt be correct and uniform, and the attention of every individual on the ſtretch. The Pruſſian troops alone can perform this movement in line with ſucceſs and correctneſs, and it is of all others the moſt difficult. Inclining. Fig. 66.

In the autumn of 1785, there were many opportunities of ſeeing the movements of the PRUSSIAN troops in line. Among others, at MAGDEBURG, eighteen battalions extending about two thouſand yards, entered the alignement in open column; formed in line; marched in front in the moſt perfect manner above one thouſand five hundred paces; and during the courſe of the march, fired by battalions advancing. The line afterwards retired a conſiderable part of that diſtance.——At BERLIN, the whole infantry of the garriſon, conſiſting of eighteen battalions, marched in open column in the alignement; formed exactly in line by the ſignal of a cannon; marched in front about one thouſand paces; and Pruſſian movements in line. Fig. 67.

and fired while advancing by diviſions and battalions.——In SILESIA the infantry was generally formed in two lines, of eleven thouſand men each, and the lines frequently marched in front ſeparately and well for fifteen hundred paces. The two lines, on one occaſion, notwithſtanding an exceeding heavy rain the greateſt part of the time, and directly in their faces, marched, and preſerved a moſt exact line, both in advancing and retiring, for above half an hour; and in retiring the whole infantry obliqued to the left, and in the courſe of the march gained at leaſt the front of two battalions to that flank.——At MAGDEBURG, two lines of ten battalions, which had marched off in columns of wings, and were halted in cloſe columns on the *alignement* of each line, ready to *deploy*, moved forward about three hundred paces, and at the ſame time obliqued to the right: they then halted, and *deployed* into line.

Fig. 68.

ECHELLON.

BY an oblique march the enemy may have been approached, even outwinged, and the following flank may have been refuſed to him, and kept back from his fire; but it is evident, that he cannot be reached without expoſing the leading flank, unleſs the whole line inclines, which is a movement ſubject to great difficulty on ſo ſerious an occaſion. The attack in ECHELLON is therefore ſubſtituted—which preſerves the advantages gained by the oblique march, has not the faults to which the incline is liable, aims at the weak part of the enemy, does not riſk the whole of your force, is particularly applicable to the movements of infantry, or the mixed ones of cavalry and infantry, more to thoſe of great bodies than ſmall, and equally whether the object is to advance, or retire.

General application of the echellon.

In

In advancing, the ſeveral bodies move independent, act freely, and are ready to aſſiſt. In retiring, they fall back upon each other, and thereby give mutual aid and ſupport; nor can an enemy preſs the purſuit but with much circumſpection, and without endangering his own flank.

In *echellon*, the diviſions are retired at equal but parallel diſtances behind each other, and in that ſituation they are ready—to move up into parallel line—to wheel into oblique line—to file into column—to retreat upon the rear, or any other diviſion. Fig. 73.

If the object is to form in parallel line to the front—whatever diſtance the diviſions are retired, the flank of each following one, muſt cover that of the one preceding it. Fig. 74.

But when the object is to form in oblique line—in proportion as the diviſions are retired, they muſt cover part of the one preceding them, viz.

If the diviſions are retired one fourth of their front—they muſt cover a twenty-eighth part of the preceding one; and the oblique line will then make an angle of about fifteen degrees with the parallel line. Fig. 75.

If the diviſions are retired half of their front—they muſt cover one ſeventh of the preceding one; and the oblique line will make an angle of about thirty degrees with the parallel line.

If the diviſions are retired three fourths of their front—they muſt cover one third of the preceding one; the oblique line will then make an angle of forty-nine degrees with the parallel line.

In this manner a proportionate allowance muſt be made for any other intermediate diſtance, remarking that the nearer the oblique line of the *echellon* is to a right angle with the parallel line, the greater muſt be the diſtance betwixt diviſions, and the greater proportion of front muſt each cover.

If the diviſions are retired the whole diſtance of their front, they will then completely cover each other, and be-

come an open column, ready to form in line at right angles to the front of the march.

Whatever diſtance the diviſions are retired behind each other, if thoſe diſtances are equal, and the diviſions alſo equal, the flank files
g. 73. will always line in a diagonal direction—This muſt be attended to, as an eſſential guide and rule; and therefore when the ſecond diviſion has at any time taken its poſition, the following ones will the more eaſily take up theirs, by obſerving the line of the flanks, and their prolongation.

The diſtance that diviſions are to take, muſt always be announced, as well as the intention; whether to be prepared for forming in parallel or oblique line, that they may regulate their flanks accordingly.

When the *echellon* is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank regulates all its movements; when attached to a line, it muſt depend on the motions of that line.

The whole, or only part of the body may be thrown into echellon, and that either to the front or rear. In the firſt caſe, with a view to gain the flank of an enemy, or obtain a croſs fire: in the ſecond, to refuſe, or to cover one's own flank.

The firſt poſition of the deployment of the column is always a poſition in echellon.

The battalion may form echellon, either in whole or in part, on any central diviſion—Either marching or halted—to front or rear, and from either flank.

Where a full line has to advance in front—To prevent the crowding and breaking, which want of intervals might help to occa-

occaſion, it may readily take, and advance in a degree of echellon poſition. Each front rank retired at leaſt as far as the preceding one's rear rank. The battalion of direction is the leading one, which muſt move with the greateſt exactneſs, and when ſo ordered, the whole can in an inſtant move up into line. Fig. 77.

Where a line is paſſing a defilè to its front, and from its center—It may firſt form at the head of it in the echellon *poſition:* the ſeveral diviſions are then ready to move up into line; or by wheels towards the flanks, to form in oblique lines and protect thoſe flanks. Fig. 78.

It may alſo in the ſame manner paſs a defile to the rear, retiring from the flanks by echellon, while the center protects the movement.

Commands given by leaders of

Nature of Movement	Battalions	Diviſions	Circumſtances of Execution
When the battalion is marching, and the right wing is to form echellon to the rear. Fig. 79.	*The right wing of the battalion will form echellon to the rear on the ſeventh diviſion at half diſtance—to form oblique line.*	——	A caution.
		Halt	The ſix right diviſions, the reſt of the line moving on.
		Left, march	The ſixth diviſion, when the line is at the preſcribed diſtance from it, will—march—incline, till it has covered one ſeventh of its preceding diviſion, and then follow: and thus ſucceſſively every other diviſion to its right.
		Left, incline	
		Forward	
	Halt ——	—— *Halt*	The line and echellon will halt when ordered.

Nature of Movement	Commands given by leaders of Battalions	Commands given by leaders of Diviſions	Circumſtances of Execution
When halted, if the echellon is ordered to form oblique line to the right. Fig. 80.	*The diviſions of the echellon will wheel to the right into oblique line.*	———	——— A caution.
		Right Wheel	The pivot man of each diviſion faces to the right into the intended oblique line.
		March	Each diviſion wheels to the right into oblique line.
		Halt	Each diviſion when in the oblique line, and dreſs to the right.
When the oblique wing is to reſume echellon. Fig. 81.	*The diviſions will again form in echellon.*	———	——— A caution.
		Left, wheel	The pivot man of each diviſion faces ſquare to the front of the line.
		March	Each diviſion wheels up to the left.
		Halt	Each diviſion when parallel to the front of the line.

When

Nature of Movements	Commands given by leaders of Battalions	Commands given by leaders of Diviſions	Circumſtances of Execution
When the echellon, halted and formed to the rear, is ordered to advance and form echellon to the front on the ſame diviſion. Fig. 82.	*The echellon will advance, and be formed to the front.*		A caution.
		March	The whole diviſions of the echellon move forward; when the diviſion next the ſtanding part of the line arrives at it, ſuch part of that diviſion as is obſtructed by the line will fall into file, in that ſhape paſs it, and then reſume its place when in front of it.
		Halt	The diviſion next the ſtanding part of the line will halt when exactly at the diſtance in front, and in the ſame relative ſituation as when in rear of it.
			Thus ſucceſſively each diviſion will paſs the one preceding it, and the right diviſion of the whole will be now the advanced part of the echellon.
	Front to the flank.		In this ſituation by a wheel to the left, the echellon will flank the front of the line.

When

When the echellon is to return into the general line which is halted.

- **If the echellon formed to the rear, is to move up into line.** — The ſeveral diviſions *march*, *incline*, *halt*, and *dreſs* ſucceſſively to the ſtanding part of the line.
- **If the echellon formed to the front, is to fall back into line.** — The ſeveral diviſions *face* about—*march* to the rear—*incline*—*halt*, in line—*face* about, and *dreſs* ſucceſſively to the ſtanding part of the line.

If the line is in march to the front, when the echellon is ordered to join it.

- **If the echellon formed to the rear, is to move up into line.** — The ſeveral diviſions will increaſe their pace; *incline* outward if neceſſary, and *move* up ſucceſſively into line.
- **If the echellon formed to the front, is to join the line.** — The echellon will *halt*. As the line continues to advance, each diviſion ſucceſſively will *march* in due time, *incline* outward as far as is neceſſary to acquire ſufficient ground—*front*, join the line when it comes up, and proceed with it.

The ſame operation but reverſed would take place, ſhould the line be retiring, when the echellon is ordered to join it.

When

When the battalion is halted, and the right wing is to form in echellon, either to front or rear.

If to the front — The intended diſtance of diviſions is named—The diviſions of the right wing are then ordered to *march* forward—When the diviſion next the ſtanding part of the battalion has acquired the preſcribed diſtance it *halts*. The others continue moving on, and halt ſucceſſively in echellon, the whole dreſſing to the left.

If to the rear — The intended diſtance of diviſions is named. The right wing goes to the right about—*marches*—*halts* ſucceſſively each diviſion—*fronts*, and *dreſſes* to the left, the whole being then in echellon to the rear.

After the echellon is halted, if the object is to be in readineſs to form the oblique line.

The whole diviſions muſt ſeparately *face*—*march* to the left—*cover* each other in proportion to their preſcribed diſtance, and again *front*.

The ſame operations take place whether the whole, or part of the battalion, or line, form in echellon.

The ECHELLON poſition, is a very advantageous manner of making an attack, with the center or one of the wings reinforced—If ſucceſsful, the diviſions move up into line to improve the

the advantage—If repulſed, they are in a good ſituation to favour and protect the retreat.

Different previous manœuvres muſt always have diſtracted and divided the attention of the enemy, and prevented him from being certain of where the attack is to be made in the echellon poſition.

With reſpect to the enemy and the intended march, it may be taken from the - { parallel / oblique / column. } poſition.

If from the parallel line—It is previouſly divided into the ſeveral *echellons* which compoſe it; and the diſtance at which they are to remain behind each other, is announced.

Attack in echellon from the parallel line.

The reinforced flank, which is to attack, is then ordered to advance—Each echellon of two or more battalions moves on, when the preceding one has gained the ordered diſtance (of perhaps one hundred yards) and thus being regulated by the head, act according to the event of the attack.

Fig. 89.

Though the inclining with a conſiderable line, is hardly to be attempted when near the enemy—yet, that operation may be performed by the *echellons* in advancing, ſo as to gain ground to the flank; but it requires every circumſpection and attention to preſerve the relative poſitions, and in time to ſteady and reſume the direct front. All ſuch movements muſt be critical near the enemy, and in general his flank will be beſt gained by troops placed in column for that purpoſe, behind the attacking body, and which are there ready to form up and improve ſuch advantages as offer.

Fig. 90.

If from the oblique line—This poſition having been taken from the column of march, or in the courſe of advancing in line upon the enemy; the attack will be made either by the advanced or retired flank reinforced; the diviſions of the line, and the diſtances of the *echellons* being previouſly aſcertained.

When

When by the right flank advanced—Each two or more battalions wheel up to the right, as much as brings them parallel to the enemy's front; the whole may then be conſidered as ſo many diſtinct, but perfectly parallel lines—The attacking echellon moves on, the others alſo march ſucceſſively, when their preceding ones have acquired the ordered diſtance. Fig. 83.

When by the right flank retired—The right *echellon* will be wheeled to the left, till placed parallel to the enemy's front; the echellon next to it, will alſo wheel up in the ſame manner—The attacking echellon will then march, paſs the other, and proceed: the ſecond echellon will alſo move on, when the given diſtance is acquired; and the third echellon will at that time wheel up to its parallel poſition, and advance in its turn. In this manner, they will ſucceed each other till the whole are in the ſame ſituation, as when marched off from an advanced flank. Attack in echellon from the oblique line. Fig. 84.

The advanced echellon being arrived at its object, the attack begins, and the others attend the event—If it ſucceeds, they move up into line to perfect it—If it fails, each falling back on each is ſtrengthned and ſupported every inſtant of the retreat.

The enemy's cavalry will hardly at any time attempt to enter the intervals, as they muſt always give a flank to an advancing echellon.

In order to place the leading *echellon* which becomes the guide for the others, perfectly perpendicular to the line on which it is to march up to the attack—The commander muſt himſelf take the greateſt care to wheel up its flank diviſion, exactly into that direction, and whoſe prolongation is the line on which the whole echellon is to be formed. When this diviſion is accurately dreſſed, the number of paces that its wheeling flank has taken, are meaſured and intimated (as well as the ſtrength of the diviſion if neceſſary) to each of the other echellons; and their equal flank diviſions wheel up in the ſame manner, ſo that the outward wheeler ſhall halt at the given number of paces, which are previouſly marked for him—Theſe parallel diviſions, become each a direc- Attentions in forming the echellon.

tion for its own echellon, their ſeveral fronts are prolonged, and all the other diviſions and battalions march up, and dreſs with them.

The larger the original diviſion that thus gives the direction, is, the more exact will be the firſt formation of the ſeveral echellons; a half battalion may therefore be thus placed. The diviſions of direction muſt be of equal ſtrength, otherwiſe the number of paces will not be a true guide. The paces muſt be of correct length, and taken in the chord of the wheel.

Notwithſtanding theſe meaſures to obtain exact parallel lines, the following *echellons* muſt on the march be guided by, and conform to the leading one; their great object is to preſerve in moving on, their parallel and relative ſituation. In this they are to act in the ſame manner, as when advancing in line; and having the leading echellon to guide them, together with the aſſiſtance of the mounted officers who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward, they will execute with juſtneſs this important manœuvre. The preſervation of intervals is alſo as eſſential an attention, as in the attack in line.

Attentions in forming the echellon.

When the leading echellon is halted and the others are to move on to line with it; being then within reach of the enemy's fire, they muſt take particular care not to throw forward their outward flank, but rather to refuſe it—This can be accompliſhed by the advanced colours taking heed to halt exactly in the true line of the attacking echellon; and it depends on the conductor alone of that attack, to give it ſuch a direction, that its prolongation ſhall paſs before the enemy's front.

The ſecond line when there is one, follows in every thing the movement of the firſt—The battalions make the ſame wheel, preſerve the ſame relative poſition, and ſerve as a ſupport to the firſt

firſt—The attack of the ſecond line, therefore, moves on at the ſame time with that which it is to ſupport. The echellons of one or more lines, are generally retired from one hundred to one hundred and fifty paces, each behind the one preceding it of its own line.

The *echellon* may be formed from column. The heads of the columns are halted at given points, and given diſtances—The attacking bodies form in one or more lines, the others extend to the flank in echellon, being ſeparated, a ſpace equal to the diſtances they halted at in column—This ſpace is augmented if neceſſary, when the whole move on, and lines of two or more battalions each are formed. From the echellon poſition by flank marching, the order of column may again be reſumed.

Echellon formed from column.

Fig. 85.

A central attack may be conducted in this manner—Three columns are directed towards the central point, the middle one forms in lines and makes the attack, the others in echellon poſition ſuſtain it.

Central attack in echellon formed from column.

Fig. 86.

The enemy are poſted in A, the body is formed in line B, with a reſerve of three ſquadrons; and two ſquadrons are placed in column, deſtined to turn the flank—The whole by inclining gain the poſition C; from which the echellon poſition D is taken, and the attack made on the enemy's left.

Movements in line and echellon.

Fig. 89.

In SILESIA in 1785—The line of infantry of eleven thouſand men, ſupported by fifteen ſquadrons of cavalry (each covering a battalion) in ſecond line, and ten ſquadrons on each flank, when about ſix hundred yards from an enemy advanced to the attack from the left in four echellons, retired about one hundred and fifty paces behind each other—The attack being repulſed, the echellons

In Sileſia.

Fig. 90.

fell back upon one another, and upon the right flank which had remained poſted on a favourable height.

At Potſdam. At POTSDAM, two lines of infantry of nine battalions each, moved from the right on to the attack, each line in three echellons, each echellon of three battalions, and retired about two hundred paces behind one another; a third line of cavalry alſo ſupported—The attack was repulſed, the left remained poſted, and the echellons of the two lines retired alternately through each other, the right of the whole being gradually much thrown back during this operation.

Fig. 87.

Pruſſian movements in echellon.

At Magdeburg. At MAGDEBURG, two lines of nine battalions each, advanced from the left in three echellons of three battalions each, and retired about eighty paces behind one other. In this manner, they marched with the moſt perfect correctneſs about one thouſand one hundred paces, when a new diſpoſition was ordered to take place.

The cannon of the poſted echellon, can always procure an enfilading fire, on whatever body is preſſing on the retiring ones, and will thereby very much aſſiſt the retreat, and check the purſuit.

Of SECOND LINES.

THE movements of a SECOND LINE, are ſimilar to thoſe of the firſt—It will always preſerve its paralleliſm and diſtance.

Fig. 91. Its front is regulated by its own diviſion or battalion of direction, which moves by that of the firſt line.

In

In changes of poſition, its movements correſpond to thoſe of the firſt line.

In forming the line, it will march upon its own points which are parallel to, and aſcertained in conſequence of thoſe of the firſt. Fig. 92.

If the firſt line makes a central change of poſition—the ſecond line muſt make a change upon its correſponding diviſion to comply with it. Fig. 93.

The movements of *reſerves* are ſimilar to thoſe of a ſecond line, being determined and directed in conſequence of thoſe of the firſt line. Fig. 91.

When the lines break in column to the front—the ſecond will generally follow the firſt.

When the columns are formed to the flanks—the ſecond line will often compoſe a ſeparate column or columns. Fig. 94.

When the march is to the rear—the ſecond line will often lead in column.

General rules in the movements of ſecond lines.

As the movements and ſituations of ſecond lines, are dependent on thoſe of the firſt—To prevent interfering, they muſt be regulated by certain general rules, which are applicable according to circumſtances.

Although the lines may execute all their movements, by forming columns of battalion, regiment, brigade, or even of greater numbers—yet, whenever the columns of the preceding line ſhall exceed in depth, the diſtance between the two lines, the following line will be often retarded in its movements forward, till the ſurplus

ſurplus of ſuch column has marched over a ſpace equal to its length.

Hence is apparent the neceſſity of multiplying columns, which become manageable, and acquire preciſion in proportion, as their depth is diminiſhed.

The diſtance betwixt the lines, may be ſuppoſed equal at leaſt to the front of two battalions and an interval.

Whenever the new line of direction paſſes through the extremity of the right or left, and that the front is to be outwards; the
Fig. 95. movements of the firſt line would be interrupted, if the ſecond was to march by its flank—The ſecond muſt therefore make a degree of central movement, and the center point in that line, will be diſtant from the flank, in proportion to the fixed diſtance between the lines, and to the angle more or leſs open which the new poſition makes with the old one.

The ſame principles determine in central movements of the lines—For example, if to face to the right the more or leſs open, that the
Fig. 98. angle formed between the old and new poſition is, the more or leſs muſt the central point of movement for the ſecond line be looked for towards the left—The reverſe takes place where the lines are to face to the left.

General rules in the movements of ſecond lines.

When the direction of the new poſition of the firſt line is known, that of the ſecond line will be equally ſo, as the due diſtance is already determined.

The point which ought to be taken for a center in the ſecond line in central movements will be alſo known, ſince it is always that, through which paſſes the prolongation of the new direction of the ſecond line.

In a central movement to the rear, as a ſecond line in that caſe,
Fig. 96. neceſſarily regulates the movement of the firſt—The firſt will obſerve with regard to the ſecond, what in other caſes the ſecond obſerves with regard to the firſt.

When-

Whenever the firſt line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face the right—the movements of the ſecond line are free and unembarraſſed, and it may turn round the manœuvring wing of the firſt line, and take its new poſition behind it, by extending itſelf parallel to its direction how oblique ſoever that may be; and in the above caſes, they enter into the new poſition before the line of direction—This movement is equivalent to a battalion changing its front, to one flank, by filing from the other. Fig. 99.

The central movement often required from the ſecond line, to conform to that of the firſt, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of diviſions from near the center, and from that ſituation forming to either flank.

General rules in the movements of ſecond lines.

The movements of the central columns well underſtood—Thoſe of the battalions of the wings are ſimilar in the two lines.

In central movements to the right, and either made on a fixed point, or one moving to front or rear—The battalions of the right wings of both lines arrive with the left in front before the new line of direction; and the battalions of the left wings of both lines arrive with the right in front behind the new line of direction.

Second lines are ſeldom compoſed of as many battalions as the firſt—They are often divided into diſtinct bodies, covering ſeparate parts of the firſt line.

Second lines will not always remain extended, they will often be formed in column of battalions or of greater numbers, ready to be moved to any point, where their aſſiſtance is neceſſary.

Lines out-flank each other.

Where ſeveral lines of attack are formed, the ſecond ſhould always out-flank the firſt, the third out-flank the ſecond, &c. the advanced one being thereby ſtrengthned and protected.

The officer commanding the ſecond line muſt always be properly informed of the nature of the change to be made by the firſt, that he may readily determine his correſponding movements.

It requires much attention—To conduct heads of battalion columns of both lines, nearly parallel to their lateral ones, and perpendicularly, or diagonally to front or rear, according to the nature

ture of the movement——To determine with preciſion and in due time, their points in the new line, that wavering and uncertainty of march may be avoided—In great movements to allow the ſoldier every facility of motion, without increaſing the diſtances of diviſions, and to require the moſt exact attention on entering the new line and in forming—To avoid obſtacles in the courſe of marching, but as ſoon as poſſible to re-enter the proper path of the column—While out of that path, the leading colours of that column may be lowered (as a mark for the neighbouring column not to be then intirely regulated by it) and again advanced when it regains its proper ſituation.

Attentions in the movements of ſecond lines.

Fig. 100. Different NEW POSITIONS of TWO LINES, taken from the ORIGINAL POSITION.

If to face to — No. 1.

A — BOTH lines will break to either flank, and advance in columns of battalion to the new poſition.

Both lines will break to either flank and advance in columns of battalions to the new poſition; the ſecond line will there paſs beyond the firſt; when formed the lines will be inverted, but not the battalions within themſelves—

O — This inverſion of the lines can be avoided by countermarching both lines before the movement—Or by countermarching the battalions and then the lines after the movement—Or by marching from the old to the new poſition from either flank.

Poſitions of ſecond lines.

2. The

If to face to

2.

A The lines will break to the right, and march diagonally in column of battalions to the new poſition.

O The lines will break to the right, the heads of them will be pointed towards the right flank of the new poſition, and when they arrive in it, and halt, the battalion columns will lead off to the right (the rear line preceding) and gain their places in the new poſition.

3.

B The lines will break to the right, march on to the interſection of the new lines, and then along them to the right; the rear of the columns entering the new poſition by battalions when the front halts—Or—The lines will break to the right; the leading battalions will point to their places in the new line; the others will lead off to the left diagonally; the whole will enter and form in the new line. Poſitions of ſecond lines. Fig. 100.

O The lines will break to the right and either continue their march to the point of interſection—or—The leading battalions be directed to the right flank of the new line, and the rear battalions of both lines diſengage to the right.—The ſecond line will precede the firſt, and with freedom manœuvre round its right flank.

4.

B The lines will break to the right and march in column to any point towards the right of the new line, which they will there enter, and move along. The rear battalions when ordered will diſengage to the left, and take their places in the new line.

O The lines will break to the right—The battalion columns will lead off diagonally to the right (the ſecond line preceding)

If to face to

to their points in the new poſition, being regulated by the right battalions.

5.

O The ſame operation as in No. 1 facing A, except that both lines retire, and that the ſecond precedes.

C The ſame operation as in No. 1 facing O, except that both lines retire, the ſecond preceding—When the ſecond line is in the new poſition, the firſt muſt paſs beyond it. The ſame methods to remedy inverſion will alſo take place.

6.

Poſitions of ſecond lines.

D The lines will break to the left, be directed to the left and rear into the new poſition, and march along it, till they arrive at the left.

Fig. 100.

C The lines will break to the right, be directed upon the left of the new poſition, enter it, and march along it.

7.

D The lines will break to the left, be directed upon the right of the new poſition, and march along it to the left.

C It is a countermarch of the lines in column from the right (the firſt line round the ſecond) and then a prolongation of the lines to their new poſition.

8.

D, O } The ſame as No. 4. but performed to the left.

9.

A The lines will break to the left, and prolong their march to the new poſition.

D The lines will break to the left—Prolong their march to the left of the new poſition—The rear battalions will then

If to face to

then diſengage diagonally to the right, and take their places in the new line—The ſecond following the movements of the firſt line.

10.

A Both lines will break to the left, the heads of the columns will be pointed towards the center of the poſition, and when they arrive in it, will march along it and form.

D Both lines will break to the right, and by a kind of countermarch, enter into the new direction.

11.

D Both lines will break and make a central movement to the rear, on the diviſions where the new line interſects the old, the ſecond line preceding—When thoſe diviſions halt, the columns of battalions will throw themſelves into the new line. Poſitions of ſecond lines. Fig. 100.

O Both lines will break and make a central movement to the front, on the interſecting diviſions. When thoſe diviſions are at their ground, the columns of battalions will throw themſelves into the new line.

12.

B The central movements, are the ſame to front and rear for both lines, as preſcribed in No. 11—The right flanks

O leading.

13.

B Both lines make a central movement to the rear, on the interſecting diviſions—When at their ground, the columns

D of battalions take their places in the new line.

If to face to

14.

B The lines break to the right—the columns of battalions march diagonally to the left into the new poſition—the ſecond line conforms to the firſt, by a central movement.

O The lines break to the right, and march by that flank along the new poſition.

15.

B Is performed by the ſame movements to the rear, as
O No. 14 to the front.

In all theſe central movements, it is apprehended much time will not be loſt, and the operation would be ſimplified—if ſuch part of the lines as precede the interſected diviſions, are firſt thrown into the new poſition, and then that the correſponding movements of the rear part of the lines begin.

General attentions in the movements of ſecond lines.

In all theſe changes of poſition—the two leading flank battalions muſt determine, and regulate the movements and diſtances of the whole, except in the central movements which are directed by the central diviſions. Changes on either flank facing either way, and made to either front or rear, as well as innumerable intermediate poſitions between thoſe above preſcribed, are obviouſly executed by the ſame methods.

Passage of a First Line through the Second.

When in Presence of the Enemy, and that the firſt line is engaged—the ſecond muſt be ready to advance

to

to its ſupport; and to give it paſſage if obliged to retire, without increaſing or partaking of its diſorder.

When there is reaſon to apprehend ſuch an *event*, the ſecond line may be prepared for it in the ſimpleſt manner poſſible—by each battalion throwing itſelf into a double cloſe column of companies behind the two center ones.

Preparations of ſecond lines for paſſage of the firſt.

Or, the three left companies of the grand diviſions of the battalion may double behind their right ones, and in this ſituation are ready to form in column if neceſſary. The left diviſions of the grenadier and light companies may alſo double if they are in the line.

Fig. 114.

Or, the battalions may ſtand filed from the center of grand diviſions to the front, and the flank companies filed from the center.

If the firſt line, or part of it, is preſſed and ordered, or forced to *retire*; it will do it as gradually and regularly as it can, fronting (in whole or in part) and firing when poſſible—It will paſs through the openings in the ſecond line. Such parts as preſent themſelves to the heads of the columns, or to the fronts of the companies or files, will incline to the right and left, behind the other parts of the line, and regain their places (which will have been kept open) as ſoon as they have paſſed.

Paſſage of the firſt.

The firſt line will *face* about and form, when about two hundred yards in the rear, while the ſecond line when its front was uncovered will have extended, formed in line, and renewed the action under cover of the fire of the ſtanding diviſions, and the particular exertions of the whole artillery redoubled at ſo critical an inſtant.

If the firſt line paſſes in diſorder, and is ſo preſſed by the enemy, that the ſecond has not time to extend; its columns will decidedly march, and charge whatever is oppoſed to them—or, march by the flank to attack any body that may have penetrated the

Movements of the ſecond line when the firſt paſſes.

the intervals, in following the firſt line—The judgement and deciſion of commanders of battalions, will in this ſituation determine much.

Theſe central columns of battalions, may occaſionally be formed by both lines, either—to make a partial attack—to follow the enemy—or, the more lightly to make the retreat——The line is very readily formed from them, and on many occaſions where movements can only be required in a perpendicular direction to front or rear, it is a very advantageous diſpoſition into which the battalions may be thrown, and to which they ſhould be accuſtomed.

Paſſage of the firſt line by files.

Fig. 101.

But as it may be important to preſerve the ſecond line as intire as poſſible, the moſt generally received mode of paſſage, is that by *files* as has been already mentioned; and the rules there laid down for one battalion, are applicable to all thoſe of a line, however ſtrong it may be. The ſtepping and halting at a determined number of paces from the time of paſſing the ſecond line, though it will not alone procure an accurate parallel formation is not to be omitted, as it will much facilitate the alignement; eſpecially, if the ſecond line in relieving the firſt at its poſt, or in coming to meet it when retiring, joins it in all its battalions at the ſame inſtant.

Reforming the firſt line by a flank.

Fig. 101.

When a line of five or ſix battalions hath paſſed in this manner, and that its platoons have halted in column at their determined number of paces, it becomes neceſſary to give them a more correct dreſſing before they can wheel up into line—As ſoon therefore as they are fronted, and that the officers are ſhifted to their pivot flanks; the commander of the head battalion, will carefully place the pivots of the three firſt platoons in the true alignement, and will then order the officers of his other platoons to line on the pivot officers before them; and the commander, who

remains

remains with the head platoon as the point d'appui, obſerves that this is done correctly—When the firſt battalion is thus ſteadied, the commander of the ſecond places himſelf at the third platoon from the rear of the firſt battalion, and ſees that his own firſt and ſecond platoons are well aligned on the pivots before them, and that his others do alſo quickly take up their line. When the ſecond battalion is ſteadied, the commander of the third proceeds in the ſame manner, and ſo of the others.

The aligning of the *pivots* muſt thus go on gradually, though quickly, from one flank to another, platoon after platoon, and battalion after battalion; any attempt to precipitate it, would only ſerve to keep the line in a wavering ſtate. Officers muſt remain perfectly ſteady in their own perſons, on the flanks of their platoons, when they have attained their proper poſition, that the following officers may not be interrupted, but enabled to do the ſame thing; the men are ſuppoſed trained to regulate and aligne themſelves upon their officers.

But when an extenſive line hath paſſed, and is to be reformed, it may be quicker done in ſome caſes, if the *alignement* is taken from the *center* than from one of the wings. The line having paſſed, and the platoons being halted and faced in column, the fourth battalion (for example) from the front, is given as the directing one. The platoon pivots of this battalion are firſt accurately lined by its commander in the true direction, and become a guide for the whole. The commanders of the adjoining battalions, then placing themſelves each at the third platoon from the front and rear of the directing battalion, aligne the pivots of their own on thoſe of that battalion, that are before them—When theſe adjoining battalions are ſteadied, the commanders of thoſe next them, proceed in the ſame manner; and the more the corrected pivots increaſe, the eaſier does it become to take up the general line; this operation is continued till the whole are juſtly arranged.

Reforming the firſt line on a central battalion.

arranged. Diſtances as well as dreſſing muſt be taken from the fourth battalion.

The battalions that are behind the directing one, will readily arrange their pivot flanks as their diſtances are taken from the front, but the three which are before it will find more difficulty, as they muſt take their diſtances from the rear—To facilitate this, their platoon officers will *face* to the directing battalion, and will then as above, be ſucceſſively directed to take their diſtances from their then front; as ſoon as each has required his true poſition, he will *face* to the right about, and make his platoon join to, and dreſs to him—The line will be ready to form by wheeling up to the pivot flanks.

When the firſt line after paſſing throws back a wing.

A line which hath paſſed will often throw back a *wing*—In order to occupy a particular poſition—To prevent the enemy's deſigns on that wing—Or at leaſt to make him take a greater detour to effect it—Or that he muſt aligne his own on a height which is occupied and from which he may be flanked.

Fig. 101.

The line A B. is here ſuppoſed to refuſe its four right battalions after having retired and paſſed as a column with its right in front, which is one of the moſt difficult caſes that can be put—All the battalions of the line to the left of the fourth proceed as is already directed; the right platoon of the fifth battalion is their point of appui, that battalion firſt takes its alignement and gives it as has been directed to the others.

But the four battalions of the right have a more difficult taſk to perform; their appui is the angle where the line begins to break, that is the right flank of the fifth battalion when it has wheeled up into line; their diſtances and alignement are thus both to be taken from behind by the left of their platoons, for the column when halted is formed, as if marched off from the right—This will be the more difficult for the officers to execute, becauſe they muſt conduct the leading flank (the right of their platoons), and

and therefore cannot time their word *halt* exactly at the inſtant when the left is on the alignement.

To remedy this—The commander of the fourth battalion having given nearly to his officers of platoons, the direction which they ought to take, ſtops himſelf at the point of appui.—From thence he orders the laſt platoon of his battalion to *halt* when he ſees its left enter the alignement: the officer who conducted it immediately returns to its left, and facing the commander, is by him correctly placed on the diſtant point D, of the alignement; the next platoon is alſo *halted* and dreſſed in the alignement by the commander in the ſame manner—Theſe two platoons being in order and fronted, their right flanks become a guide on which the heads of the others ſtop and do not overpaſs.—As the ſeveral platoons *halt* and *front*, that is, when their right has been aligned with the platoon that is behind them, the officer of each places himſelf on the left flank in his own perſon, faces the point of appui, and is correctly dreſſed and lined by the commander of his battalion, as has been already ſhown—In this manner do the ſeveral battalions ſucceſſively proceed. Fig. 101.

Had the left wing in this caſe been refuſed, it would have been much eaſier for the officers; for although they muſt have equally returned to the left flank of their platoons, yet they would have taken their line and diſtance from their natural front.

According to the wing which is to be refuſed, ſhould the platoons of the line *paſs*.—If the left is to be refuſed, they ſhould file from their right, ſo that the column when halted may ſtand as marched off from the right—If the right is to be refuſed, the contrary operation ſhould take place. What has been already directed for a ſingle battalion in crowning a height after paſſing to the rear may be equally extended to a whole line. Fig. 101.

In all caſes where it can be done, the countermarch of platoons very much remedies the inconveniences that ariſe in taking diſtances from the rear.

Fig. 103.

The enemy is poſted in F G, the line hath advanced to A B, and is expoſed to the enemy's cannon—On a more narrow inſpection of the ground, his left flank appears the moſt acceſſible; it becomes neceſſary therefore to withdraw the line from the enemy's fire before it can take ſuch a direction as will enable it quickly to gain his flank, and during this operation every means muſt be uſed to diſtract his attention.

Retiring a line formed under the enemy's cannon, and marching upon his flank.

Fig. 103.

In order therefore to place it in ſuch a ſituation that it may ſafely prolong its march on a new alignement C E, and not be expoſed to the enfilade of cannon—The whole line will break by platoons to the right, and will then execute a kind of gradual wheel by platoons in the direction of B C, and A D, ſo as to arrive in C D, and from thence prolong its movement upon E, the platoons after wheeling will all face to the right, and in marching in file their heads will bear to the left, and comply with the direction which the firſt platoon takes—in doing this the following rules muſt be obſerved.

Whoever conducts the three leading platoons muſt take ſhort ſteps, in order that the rear ones may be enabled to comply with their movements, and every thing depends on their judicious guidance.

Such a gradual direction muſt be given to the three firſt platoons, that when they arrive on the line C E. (but not ſooner) they may ſtand perpendicular to it.

All the platoons muſt follow the direction of the head—That is, their leading flanks muſt remain nearly aligned upon one another.

The rear platoons may be permitted to take the chord inſtead of the arch of the circle; and ſhould the firſt three platoons arrive in the alignement ſome time before the rear ones, they will not ſtop but move on at a good pace, the

the others who may have contracted diſtances, can readily regain them in the courſe of following.

In theſe kind of *evolutions* an alignement can be ſeldom given, becauſe it muſt totally depend on the motions which the enemy may make during the movement; the march therefore is generally directed by the leading pivot flanks—When therefore, the general or conductor of the head battalion gives the direction, which the line ſhould take, to the two leading platoons; after their officers have placed themſelves on their pivot flanks, the following officers muſt carefully cover them and one another, as has been already deſcribed—And ſhould the commander be obliged to alter the alignement during the march, the following platoons will comply with it, as they arrive at the point where the head changed its direction.

If the corps at A B is formed in two lines—the ſecond may with every advantage make this movement, protected by the ſituation of the firſt, which will keep the enemy in check, and act or follow according to circumſtances.

A movement in battalion echellon to the rear, ſeems peculiarly adapted for withdrawing the line—When that is done, the echellons will front, break into platoons to the right, march till the head of each arrives in the new direction—The leading battalion will halt, till ſome of the others are placed behind it, and till it is judged that it may continue its march without occaſioning a run or unneceſſary ſtop in the rear of the column; it will then wheel its leading platoon into the alignement, and be ſucceſſively followed by the other battalions, till the whole are in one column moving on the enemy's flank. Fig. 103.

The colums A B which have not yet formed, are in movement nearly parallel to the enemy poſted in C D, and

are to continue their march till they take an oblique poſition E F on one of his flanks.

When a body in column, parallel to the enemy's front, is to continue its march and formobliquely on his flank.

Were the columns early to enter on this alignement, the enemy would at once ſee the intention, and perhaps be able to counteract it; but in order to make him ſtill imagine that he will be approached by a parallel line, and thereby to keep him in his poſition, the leader of the head platoon of the firſt line, muſt during his march, ſo gradually turn, that when it arrives at E, which is the point d'appui, it may then (and not before) be perpendicular to the line; and the other platoons of that line, having obſerved their exact diſtances, and moved on their pivot leaders, will then be all in the line E A—The ſecond line, which is moving in the ſame manner as the firſt, will by the gradual turning of its leading platoon, be following out the line G B; and having had more ground to go over, will in proportion have marched faſter.

Fig. 104.

When the heads of the lines are thus at the ſame inſtant arrived and halted at their points, the rear platoons of both, that are not in the alignement, immediately file to the left and enter it. The lines are formed, march upon the enemy, who cannot now make a counter movement, and the attack is made from the left by the vanguard, ſupported by the two lines; which attacks, as has been already obſerved, ſhould out-flank each other by a battalion at leaſt.

Although the INVERSION of all bodies in line, is in general to be avoided; yet there are ſituations where this rule muſt be diſpenſed with, and a quicker formation to a particular front thereby obtained.

Situations where inverſions of the line or its parts may be neceſſary.

The battalion muſt often *face* to the right about, the more readily to oppoſe the danger, inſtead of changing its poſition by a countermarch—It may even find it neceſſary to form to a *flank* with its rear rank in front—The column

column with its right in front may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to *form* up and ſupport that point, ſo that the right of the line will become the left. An army moving to a flank by lines, may be obliged in the quickeſt manner to form up to the front of its march—Part of a ſecond line, may double up on the extremity of a firſt line, thereby to out-flank an enemy—Many other ſituations may be imagined, where oppoſing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where an inverſion of the diviſions of the line will gain much time, and becomes abſolutely neceſſary when forming from the point d'appui, and near an enemy.

Troops muſt therefore be accuſtomed to ſuch operations; but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwiſe, in ſuch critical ſituations, confuſion is very eaſily produced, and will ever be attended with the moſt fatal conſequences.

At MAGDEBURG—two lines of ten battalions each, marched to the left in two columns of platoons, the interval betwixt the columns was covered by a vanguard of two battalions which marched in front—The enemy having by a ſhorter route gained the heights on which the columns pointed, it became neceſſary to form up to the front of the march, in the quickeſt manner—The two battalions of the van halted, the head of the right column joined the right of the van; the five leading battalions extended to the right in firſt line; and the five rear battalions alſo to the right in ſecond line, both in their natural order—The head of the left column joined the left of the van; the diviſions cloſed up to cloſe column, and deployed into line in their natural order, the five leading battalions to the left in firſt line, and the five ſucceeding ones in the ſecond line—In this manner, two lines of twelve and of ten battalions were formed, compoſed of a part of each of the original lines, although no inverſion of the battalions in line or within

Manœuvre at Magdeburg.

Fig. 88.

within themſelves took place—But this operation of *inverſion* became neceſſary, when in order to out-flank and attack the enemy on the left, the five left battalions of the ſecond line marched in column from their left, joined the left of the firſt line, and then ſucceſſively extended away to the left, protected by the cavalry—While the five right battalions of the ſecond line, alſo moved to the left to replace them and ſupport the attack; the five right battalions of the firſt line remained poſted as the wing of appui.

At MAGDEBURG, the enemy A was poſted on an advantageous height; having nine battalions in the firſt line, two battalions in the ſecond line, and an advanced corps of three battalions about four hundred yards in front of the right, which was covered by a village, while the left extended into the open ground, but protected by the whole cavalry of ten ſquadrons.

Fig. 109.

The attacking corps, having from columns of march formed in two lines of nine and ten battalions, with an advanced guard of three battalions, marched from the left, each line in three echellons B, drove back the enemy's advanced corps, and ſeemed to threaten an attack on his right: but finding it too ſtrongly poſted, in an inſtant the diſpoſition was changed, and a determination taken to act on the other flank—The whole corps was ordered to march by ſections to the right: the vanguard together with the ſix left battalions of the firſt line, formed in a waving manner along a favourable height C, and remained fixed as the wing of appui, and to keep the enemy's right in check—The three battalions of the right, together with the whole ſecond line, continued their march about five hundred yards farther, circling towards the front, and then halted in three parallel columns D (the heads pointing towards the enemy's left); the left one compoſed of three battalions, the middle one of four battalions, and the right one of ſix battalions.

The cavalry of ten ſquadrons which covered this march, was now ordered to move on that of the enemy, and drive them back

to

to their line from which they had advanced—The three columns of the right having doubled up to platoons, moved on under cover of a riſing ground and of their own cavalry, till abreaſt of the enemy's left; and having in the courſe of the march preſerved exact diſtances, they at once by wheeling up to the left, formed in three lines E; the ſecond out-flanking the firſt to the right by one battalion, and the third out-flanking the ſecond, in the ſame manner, by two battalions—The lines having thus formed within about five hundred yards, immediately marched on, and at the diſtance of about one hundred and twenty paces, began to engage the enemy with muſketry; who on ſeeing that his left would be attacked, had marched the three battalions of his van-guard, and the two battalions of his ſecond line, and was forming them on the left of the whole to prevent being out-flanked at F. Fig. 109.

The firſt attack of three battalions after firing ſome time, and being repulſed, retired by platoons by files through the other two lines—The ſecond attack of four battalions moved up, engaged, and after ſome time, retired in the ſame manner. There now remained the third line of ſix battalions to cover the retreat, which after firing two or three rounds on the enemy, who began to advance, commenced a retreat *en echiquier* by the alternate battalions, and continued it, ſupported by the cavalry G for about five hundred yards, till it had arrived under the deſcent; from thence, as the enemy would not quit their advantageous poſition to purſue farther, it broke into columns, and joined the line.

The two firſt bodies which had attacked and were repulſed, being ſuppoſed to have ſuffered too much to form ſooner, had continued to retire in platoons by files, till they arrived and joined the corps C which had remained poſted on the left, as the point d'appui, and on which the whole aſſembled.

Of

Of the RETREAT.

General method of retreating.

ALL manœuvres of a line in RETIRING, are infinitely more difficult than thoſe in advancing—They muſt be more or leſs performed by chequered movements, one body by its numbers or poſition, facing, and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy preſſes hard, the whole muſt probably front in time and await him.

Fig. 110.

As the ground narrows, different parts of the corps muſt double —Mouths of *defiles* and advantageous poſts muſt be poſſeſſed in time; and by degrees the different bodies muſt diminiſh, and throw themſelves into column of march. The general principles of movement here apply, adapted to circumſtances and ſituation.

If a line with *reſerves* finds it neceſſary to retreat in face of an enemy—

Retreat of a line with reſerves.

The alternate battalions and reſerves, will retire two or three hundred yards and then front: the other battalions will then retire; and when they join the firſt, the reſerves alſo will march and front at like diſtances, the reſerves always leading the retreat.

Fig. 110.

This will continue till it is proper or ſafe to break into column of march—The cannon and ſkirmiſhers of the whole, covering the front of the retreating line.

The

The CHEQUERED RETREAT, or that by the alternate battalions of a line going to the rear, while the others remain halted and cover them, is the quickeſt manner of refuſing a part of any corps to the enemy, and at the ſame time protecting its movement, as long as it continues to be made nearly parallel to the firſt poſition.

The chequered retreat in line.

Fig. 112.

If ten battalions are in line, the five even ones counting from the right, will go to the right about, retire in line about two hundred and fifty paces, and then front; having carefully preſerved their intervals—The two outward battalions only of the retiring diviſions, will each when it faces about, form a flank of its outward platoon.

As ſoon as the ſecond diviſion begins its retreat, all the battalions of the firſt diviſion, will immediately throw back their wing platoons, and thereby when neceſſary, procure a croſs fire in the intervals and along the front.

When the ſecond diviſion fronts, the firſt is ordered to retire through the intervals, and to form at an equal diſtance in the rear; and in order the better to cover thoſe intervals, the flanks of the battalions (except the two outward ones) will move up into line, when the diviſion fronts.

As ſoon as the firſt diviſion arrives near the ſecond; that ſecond begins to fire by platoons ſtanding, in the ſame manner as the firſt hath already done. The wing platoons of all the ſecond diviſion battalions, place themſelves in flank, as ſoon as the firſt hath paſſed them; and when they themſelves have retired, and fronted at their proper diſtance, they will move up into line as above, and wait the retreat of the firſt diviſion.

During the retreat, ſhould favourable heights or ſituations preſent themſelves to either of the diviſions—they ſhould be for the time occupied by the moſt contiguous battalions, who will halt or incline as is neceſſary, without ſcrupulouſly adhering in that caſe to the alignement or intervals; and any battalions that may

happen to poſſeſs an advanced height, ſhould throw their wings back, and aligne them on their neighbouring ones, that they may be flanked by ſuch battalions.

When ſuch detached battalions are in their turn to retire—they muſt not paſs in file through any other battalion that may happen to be in their rear, but muſt incline as is neceſſary to regain their proper interval, and to reſume their proper place in the diviſion.

Refuſing a wing in retreat.

Fig. 112.

A *wing* may be refuſed during this retreat, in the ſame manner as has been directed when the lines paſs through each other—When the advanced wing halts and fronts, the wing that is to be refuſed, moves on; and acquiring from the gradual turn of its colours, an oblique direction, halts when proper, and fronts in its new intended alignement. The firſt diviſion, in the courſe of its retreat, will gradually conform to the ſituation which the ſecond has given, move through its intervals, and cover them exactly when it fronts.

Chequered retreat of two lines.

Fig. 113.

Two full *lines* will make their retreat, in the ſame manner as has been above preſcribed for one—If the diſtance between the lines is three hundred paces, each will give to its ſecond diviſion one hundred and fifty paces for its retreat, and thus divide the diſtance.

When the ſecond diviſion of each line hath retired and fronted—the firſt diviſion of the firſt line, will retire through the intervals of its own ſecond diviſion; it will then, when it arrives at the firſt diviſion of the ſecond line, *paſs* by *files* through the battalions of that diviſion; and in the ſame manner will it paſs through the intervals of the next diviſion; and when one hundred and fifty paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt, front, and wheel up into line, as has been before directed.

The

The ſecond diviſion of the firſt line having prepared its flanks, begins to retire, as ſoon as its own firſt diviſion hath paſſed the firſt of the ſecond line—That ſecond diviſion will march through the intervals of that firſt; it will then proceed, and paſs by *files* through the battalions of the ſecond diviſion of the ſecond line; it will continue in that ſhape, and paſs through the intervals of its own firſt diviſion, which is by this time reformed; and when at its one hundred and fifty paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt, front, and wheel up into line—The diviſions of the ſecond line proceed in their turn, exactly in the ſame manner.

The following general rules muſt be obſerved.

The battalions of the diviſion neareſt the enemy, will form flanks as ſoon as there is nothing in their front to cover them; but the other diviſions will have no flanks except to the outward battalion of each.

General rules obſerved in the retreat.

The battalions always paſs by their proper intervals—and it is a rule in retiring, that the left of each ſhall always paſs the right of the neighbouring one.

Whatever advantages the ground offers, are to be ſeized, without being too critically tied down to intervals, or to the determined diſtance of each retreat.

The diviſion next the enemy, muſt always paſs in front through the intervals of the diviſion immediately behind it; and any battalion that finds it neceſſary, muſt incline for that purpoſe.

The retiring diviſions muſt march nimbly, and take no more time than what is neceſſary to avoid confuſion.

The diviſion neareſt the enemy, fires by platoons ſtanding—The flanks of its battalions only fire when the enemy attempts to puſh through the intervals; when that diviſion retires, it fires on ſkirmiſhers by ſingle men, and on ſmall bodies by files, without altering its ordinary march: but ſhould any of its battalions be obliged to fire by pla-

toons retreating, a ſhorter ſtep muſt then be taken; and ſhould the enemy threaten to enter at any of its intervals; beſides the fire of its flanks, ſuch platoons of the line behind it, as can with ſafety, muſt give it ſupport.

There are various opinions as to the comparative advantages of CAVALRY and INFANTRY, when oppoſed to each other; and as to the manner in which the latter ſhould reſiſt and repel the attack of the former.

Experience has often ſhown that our thin lines of infantry are unequal to the ſituation, and when once that order is broken, on which a ſoldier has been habituated to repoſe his confidence and ſecurity, it is in vain to appeal to the reaſon or ſpirit of the individual; reſiſtance is generally given up, panic prevails, and flight however unavailing univerſally takes place.

Fire alone certainly ought not to ſtop the progreſs of a determined cavalry, and it is hardly credible how few men and horſes are at the inſtant brought to the ground, by the moſt ſteady and well directed fire; therefore it ſeems eligible in ſome ſituations to prepare openings, towards which the cavalry will naturally ſwerve, and through which perhaps the whole will find their way.

General circumſtances where infantry are to oppoſe cavalry.

But undoubtedly, there is much danger in allowing the line to be pierced, or in altering a diſpoſition at the inſtant of being threatned by cavalry: and therefore in *line* of *battle*, where the flanks of the army are covered, where the getting round them would be a conſiderable and critical operation, and where the uniform front is to be maintained, the attack of the cavalry is at any rate to be oppoſed by ſteadineſs, ſupporting corps, and a heavy conſtant well directed fire of muſketry and artillery—Notwithſtanding theſe, ſhould a part of the enemy break through the line,

it

it is an event that ought by all to be expected, but not without its remedy—When the troops are thus prepared, they will be the leſs ſurpriſed to ſee cavalry in their rear, who cannot long remain to advantage between the lines, under a fire in all directions (if the infantry are ſteady) and who alſo are liable to be attacked when in diſorder by the ſupporting cavalry.

Situations in which infantry are expoſed to the attacks of cavalry.

There are ſituations, in which infantry are expoſed to the attacks of cavalry, when they cannot nor need not remain in extended line, and when they ought to take ſome other ſhape, in order to give ſucceſsful oppoſition—This will happen, when a corps not very conſiderable, cannot prevent the enemy's cavalry from getting on their flanks or rear, either when the retreat is made in *line* of *battle*, or—when in *line* of *march*, they are moving without baggage, or with baggage.

When retiring in line.

When retiring in *line*, that the attack is impending, and that it is judged proper to form on a greater depth—As the movements of cavalry are rapid, thoſe of the infantry ought to be ſimple and quickly executed; the openings ought to be conſiderable, and the front of the troops oppoſed not too great, that the cavalry may the more eaſily avoid them if they are ſo inclined. The battalions may therefore form cloſe columns of platoons, behind the right of each grand diviſion; and the left platoons of the grenadier and light companies will double.

Fig. 114.

The enemy will be received by the front platoon kneeling and preſenting their bayonets; the two next ranks of the ſecond platoon will keep up a file firing. If neceſſary, half the column will in the ſame manner, face to act to the rear—If attacked on the flank, the right or left ſubdiviſions will face, the two front ranks kneel and preſent bayonets, the two next ranks fire. When the enemy is repulſed, the line is readily formed.

Every

When retiring in line.

Fig. 115.

Every effort of fire muſt be made to prevent the enemy entering the line; and whether there is one or two lines, if theſe columns by a degree of wheel take a diagonal poſition, a croſs fire in every direction is obtained, and the inſtant before being attacked, any particular column may readily wheel up to preſent its full front.

The poſition of ſuch columns or battalions, will much depend on the judgement of particular commanding officers, in ſuch a critical inſtant. But the great object is to preſerve compactneſs and order; and to reſiſt the impreſſion which the firſt onſet of the cavalry muſt neceſſarily occaſion.

When *marching* without baggage, which will be the caſe when infantry retire after an unſucceſsful action; the columns of retreat will be the general one, formed by companies—each column may conſiſt of two or three battalions at moſt—the number of columns increaſe the relative ſtrength of the retreat—all embarraſſment of baggage is ſuppoſed to be previouſly ſent off—every country muſt ſoon preſent points, which being occupied, will give ſecurity to the retreat, and alter the nature of it.

When marching without baggage.

If the columns are obliged to halt, they will be cloſed up; and to whatever front the enemy threatens an attack, they will preſent three ranks kneeling, with their bayonets pointed and fire reſerved; and two ranks firing by files or by ranks.

When enabled to reſume the march, the diviſions may open out in ſome ſmall degree to accelerate the movement.

When *marching* with baggage, or where a *convoy* is to be protected, a particular diſpoſition muſt be made, ariſing from circumſtances of ſituation, &c. At all events, ſome ſolid and conſiderable body ſhould be formed, which ought apparently to reſiſt the efforts of cavalry, and on which the more inconſiderable bodies may rally if broken: the nature of the country, as wood, rivers, &c. ought to give protection on one flank at leaſt—the enemy muſt be oppoſed by movements and poſitions—if he is once enabled

abled to break the line of march, the greateſt confuſion muſt enſue.

Where bodies of one, two, or three battalions are to retreat, they are better thrown into a rectangular form than into that of a perfect ſquare. The retreating front ſhould be of two or three companies at moſt—the ſides ſhould march by diviſions and be ſix deep when fronted, or at leaſt from the internal arrangement of the figure, that number ſhould be ready to be oppoſed to whereever the enemy preſents himſelf.

Column of retreat for ſeveral battalions.

Fig. 116.

It is therefore from circumſtances, and from the flexibility of the military order, that the commander may in an inſtant determine and direct into what ſhape he will throw the body which he conducts.

On all theſe occaſions, where columns or ſolid bodies are oppoſed to cavalry, it cannot be imagined that they are at the ſame time liable to the attacks of a conſiderable infantry or artillery; ſuch ſituation would be critical indeed, and from which nothing but the moſt determined reſiſtance could extricate them.

The SQUARE or OBLONG, is a ſhape which infantry have at all times taken, when obliged in open ground to march in the face of cavalry. Though the mode of placing one battalion in this manner, may be determined; yet the various formations of which a greater number are ſuſceptible, cannot be aſcertained: they depend on ground—the poſition of the troops—the movements of the enemy, &c. and muſt be made in conſequence of the local orders of the general.

At BERLIN, ſix battalions retiring in line in open ground upon a ſtrong poſition, about a mile diſtant in the rear of its left, and which

which was already occupied by three detached battalions, was obliged on the approach of cavalry on its right to form an oblong, and in that ſhape to make its retreat.

Manœuvre in the ſquare at Berlin. 1785.

The two left battalions advanced about twenty paces, halted, and faced their outward flank platoons to the flanks—The right battalion went to the right about, wheeled back upon its left, and again fronted, covering the right of the line—The third battalion from the left wheeled backwards by platoons on their right, and then marched in column, the left in front to form the left face of the ſquare—The ſecond battalion from the right filed from the right gradually to the rear, turned to the right, formed into column of ſections; during its march, was followed in the ſame manner, and in the ſame column by the third battalion, moved on to form the rear face of the ſquare, and was protected on its march by the front face which was already formed, and by the right battalion, which going to the right about, by degrees cloſed into the right of the front-face, in proportion as thoſe battalions which were filing into column made place for it, and finally became the right face of the ſquare.

Fig. 102.

The ſquare, or rather oblong was now formed, and the angles were broke by each face throwing its flank platoons inwards.

The ſquare now marched to the left by its left face—the ſquare halted and fired to its ſeveral faces—the ſquare marched by its rear face, and when about three hundred yards diſtant from the ſeveral protecting detachments, it halted, and fronted.

The ſide faces now wheeled into column, and continued their march into the defile; the front face retired on the rear face (which then fronted to the enemy) and when near it, faced about, fired, then paſſed it by files, and again formed near the mouth of the defilé.

The rear face which had thrown back its flanks now retired, paſt through the front face, protected by the fire of the poſted detachments, and marched in column into the defile—The front face followed it, and the rear of the whole was cloſed by the ſeveral detachments gradually retiring, poſſeſſing the ſeveral commanding

manding heights, and leſſening by degrees till they occupied the defile.

The whole was well executed—the ſides of the ſquare wheeled, and marched by ſections, not by files—the forming of the ſquare was well protected, and the reduction of it alſo well imagined.

Of the DEFILE.

The PASSAGE of the DEFILE, will either be in front or rear from column—or, in front or rear from line.

When the column marching to the front, arrives at the head of the *defile*—according to the nature of it, the companies, the platoons, the ſubdiviſions, will gradually, and as they paſs the narrow ground, double behind the right, if the column has the right in front; or behind the left, if the left is in front. Subdiviſions if neceſſary, will alſo file from the ſame leading flank, and diſtances will be cloſed up.

Paſſage of the defile to the front of the column.

Fig. 111.

As the ground opens, the file will form ſubdiviſion, platoon, company, column, and proceed in march, or form in line as ordered.

When the column which has been retiring by its rear ranks leading, arrives at the mouth of the *defile*, it will halt and front;

Paſſage of the defile to the rear of the column.

every previous meaſure will have been taken for its entering the defile with ſafety—The rear diviſions will break ſucceſſively as already preſcribed, the rear ranks leading. When the defile is paſſed, the diviſions will double up to the marching front, and reſume column; which if the line is to be formed, will halt, front, and extend into line.

If in retiring the column is not too much preſſed, inſtead of marching by the rear rank leading, and ſuppoſing it originally formed with the right in front; it will countermarch by diviſions, and become a column to the rear with the left in front, in which ſituation it will purſue its march and paſs the *defile*. When neceſſary to face, the diviſions will again countermarch.

When the defile is before one of the flanks of the line.

Fig. 105.

When the line is to paſs the defile to the front, and that ſuch defile is near to one of its flanks, the line will break into column from ſuch flank, and paſs on ſuch front as it will permit.

When the defile is before the center of the line.

Fig. 105.

When the defile is nearer the center, the line will break inwards to that point and paſs in double column, while there are troops from each flank to compoſe it—If there is a ſurplus on one flank of the line, it will then follow, but on as great a front as that of the double column.

When the line is to paſs a defile in its rear, it will, according to circumſtances, march from either flank in column, or in double column from the center.

When the defile is behind a flank of the line.

Fig. 106.

If the defile is behind one flank, the line may break from the other, and the column march along the rear, and under the protection of the parts of the line which remain formed, till it is neceſſary that they ſhould take their rank in column.

If the defile is at, or towards the center—equal portions of the line on each ſide of the point neareſt the defile will be marked, the line will march off from the outward flanks of ſuch portions, meet

meet in the rear of the center, and proceed in double column to paſs the defile. In the mean time, whatever ſurplus remained on one wing, will have marched by its inward flank towards the central point, and on a front equal to that of the double column the rear of which it will follow—or, ſuch ſurplus may be firſt placed in front or rear of the central point, conſidered as a ſeparate line, and from that ſituation follow, or lead in double column through the defile.

When the defile is behind the center of the line.

Fig. 106.

The ſeveral modes of diminiſhing or increaſing the front of the column, as circumſtances require, and the conſequent extenſion into line are obvious, and have already been preſcribed.

It can ſeldom be neceſſary to begin by filing from one or both flanks of the line in paſſing to the rear, or from the center, or one flank of the line in paſſing to the front: but the march in diviſions ſhould be preſerved as long as poſſible.

The defile ought to be filled but without crowding, and paſſed at as quick a pace as order will allow.

Attentions in paſſing a defile.

When diminiſhing from column and paſſing the defile, the front muſt move on—When doubling up to column, the head muſt halt, or muſt be accurately and attentively conducted, that the rear may not be too much hurried.

The line on quitting the defile, ſhould not be formed too near the mouth of it, to prevent any improper ſtop.

Both mouths of a defile ought to be poſſeſſed in force before it is entered by the troops, and previous meaſures taken for paſſing it in ſafety to the front, and extending into line; or, for the protection of the laſt bodies of the line that enter it when paſſing to the rear.

When the diviſions of a battalion or column break into ſections or ſubdiviſions, in order to reduce the front of the march, it will always be done by doubling behind, regularly from the one to the other flank of each; and never by marching off from the center of ſuch diviſions, which would thereby unneceſſarily break in upon the univerſal principle, that every part of the body when in column, ſhould uninterruptedly follow from front to rear.

Method of reducing the front of the march.

Each diviſion breaks when it arrives at the ſpot (and not before) where the firſt diviſion has broke off, that is, at the mouth of the defile. Arms muſt be carried ſteady—ranks as well as ſections muſt be cloſed, and an equal march preſerved—the doubling ſections muſt not wheel but incline—the ſections muſt be from four to ſix file in front, otherwiſe the battalion will lengthen out, and cannot march on the ſame extent of ground it takes up when in line.

The ſections form up when neceſſary by inclining, and as they arrive at the point where the firſt forms up, which will moderate its ſtep to prevent a run in the rear.

Increaſing the front of the march.

In marching in open ground if diſtances are preſerved, the front of the column may be increaſed or diminiſhed, by the ſections inclining up, or falling back all at the ſame time.

The line will on many occaſions of ſervice at once break into column of ſections, as a convenient front on which to purſue the march; and if thoſe ſections are of ſix file each, the rear ranks can be ſufficiently looſened and march with great convenience, and without increaſing the diſtances of diviſions. In this manner, the PRUSSIAN line always breaks when it is to occupy any conſiderable height, and the column winds along it in this order, as more flexible than that by platoons, or on a greater front.

Marching by column of ſections.

If a line is to croſs a bridge in front—ſuch line would file from the center of whatever battalion is neareſt to it, and form to that battalion on the other ſide.

Fig. 107.

If

If a bridge is to be croſſed in the rear—it will be done by filing from both flanks of the line or lines ſucceſſively, while the center protects the movement. Fig. 108.

Of the COLUMN of MARCH.

THE COLUMN of MARCH—is the foundation and mean of all movements whatever, and of all tranſitions from one poſition to another.

Whether it is compoſed of a *file*, a *diviſion*, or a greater *body* in front, the principles remain the ſame. That it ſhould never occupy a greater extent in marching, than is equal to its front when in order of battle—That it ſhould march on as great a front (as far as that of a company or grand diviſion, for a greater would be fatiguing, if a conſiderable ſpace was to be gone over) as the ground will admit of—That as many columns ſhould in general be formed, as the ground and routes will allow—And that all theſe ſhould be regulated as to diſtances and direction, by ſome one certain column. Principles of the column of march.

Theſe objects ſhould be held in view as ſacred, and not to be deviated from without the moſt urgent neceſſity—They are enforced by the practice of all ſervices but our own—Indiſpenſable in

in the operations and conduct of great bodies, they are therefore to be ſtrictly obſerved in the movements of ſmall ones, that their multiplied errors may not affect the grand machine.

Columns always to march by diviſions.

At *home*, our battalions are too little accuſtomed to march and act with others, as part of a large body. On the common roads we are obliged to give way to every obſtacle, and fall into file; ſo that the neceſſity and importance of diviſion marching, is not ſufficiently impreſſed on the minds, or attended to by Britiſh officers. Yet it is only in that order, that the battalion ſhould at any time perform its marches; that the columns of an army ſhould be permitted to move; that an enemy ſhould be approached; and that ſafety can be inſured to the troops in their tranſitions from one point to another.

File marching never to be practiſed in column of march.

Therefore, the marching of great bodies by *files* (as an extenſion of ſuch a column is unavoidable) though much practiſed in the Britiſh ſervice, muſt be looked upon as a vicious and unmilitary mode, only to be applied where the difficulty of ground will allow of no greater front; and diviſion marching ought on all occaſions to be uſed by all bodies great or ſmall—Where any conſiderable diſtance is to be gone over by the diviſion, battalion, or line in front; it will be permitted to the rear ranks during the march, to open two or three feet, and to cloſe up again whenever a halt is made.

Marching in incloſed countries.

Where a country is ſo incloſed, woody, or the routes ſo bad and narrow that it is abſolutely neceſſary to march in *file*, or on a ſmall front, there is no remedy for the delay in forming; and man may be obliged to come up after man: but theſe circumſtances, which ſhould be regarded as exceptions from the primary and deſired order of march on a greater front; ſhould only enforce the great principle of preventing improper diſtances and of getting out of ſo weak a ſituation as ſoon as the nature of the ground will allow the front of the march to be increaſed, or the line, or part of it to be formed.

In

In ſuch difficult ſituations, the number of bodies the line can break into will be few, the front they march on will be ſmall, the rear of courſe extended: but ſtill the ſame great objects of regularity and preciſion are to be held in view, and are to be attained by the ſame methods, although more time is required.

In common *route* marching, the ſame regularity of ſtep cannot be required, as is neceſſary in the operations of manœuvre—The battalion or column may be carried on at a natural pace of two miles and a half per hour; the attention of the men may be relaxed, and the ranks and files looſened, ſo as to move with the greater conveniency, but never confounded; the proper diſtances of diviſions muſt never be increaſed, and the proper flank men and officers remain anſwerable for them—No diminution of the front, on any account but by order of the leader of the column; bridges, and ſhort defiles to be filled and paſſed with additional quickneſs; the head to move in ſuch a manner as neither to hurry nor ſtop the rear of the column—When the column arrives near its object of formation, or manœuvre, the ſtricteſt attention of officers and men is to be reſumed, and each individual is to be at his poſt.

Attention in common route marching.

It is always time well employed to halt the head of a column, and enlarge an opening, or repair a very bad ſtep in the road, rather than to diminiſh the front or lengthen out the line of march.

No individual is to preſume to march on a leſs front than what the leader of the column directs, and all doublings muſt therefore come from the head only. The cloſeneſs of the march on all occaſions is a point of the higheſt conſequence, and it is a moſt meritorious ſervice in any officer to prevent all unneceſſary doublings, or to correct them as ſoon as made: and on all occaſions to march on the greateſt front, the roads or overtures will allow, although the regiment or diviſions before him may be marching on a narrow front.

The rear of a column never to lengthen out.

At

Attentions on every increaſe or diminution of the front of the column.

At all points of increaſing, or diminiſhing the front of the march, an intelligent officer per battalion, or brigade, ſhould be ſtationed to ſee that it is performed with celerity, and the commandant ſhould have conſtant reports and inſpections made, that the column is moving with proper regularity, he ſhould have officers in advance to apprize him of difficulties to be avoided, and ſhould himſelf apply every proper means to obviate ſuch as may occur on the march.

Attentions of commanding officers during the march.

At all times when commanding officers ſee that there are likely to be impediments from the nature of the ground, to the movement, or march of their regiments—They ſhould detach officers in advance, to reconnoitre, and point out the means, and openings by which ſuch obſtacles are to be paſſed; and at no time are ſuch helps ſo neceſſary, as when regiments are acting in line, in broken ground, and when their movements are combined with thoſe of others.

All overtures made for the march of a column ſhould be ſufficient for the greateſt front on which it is to march, and ſhould be of the ſame width, otherwiſe each ſmaller one becomes a defilè.

Neceſſary attention of march.

The diſtance of columns from each other during the march depends on the object of that march and on the nearneſs of the enemy.

The more columns in which an army marches, the leſs extent in depth will it take up; the leſs frequent will be its halts, and the more ſpeedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Combination neceſſary in marching.

On the *combinations* of march made by the general, and on the execution of theſe by the troops, and by the leaders of the ſeveral component parts of the army does the ſucceſs of every military operation, or enterprize depend.

A perfect knowledge of the country, of the particular diſtances to be gone over, and of the probable obſtructions or delays which each

each column may ſeparately meet with, determines the hour of its departure, and that of its arrival at the given rendevous.

To fulfil theſe intentions of the chief requires in critical important ſituations, every concurrent exertion of the ſubordinate officer—The *theory* of marches may be known in all ſervices, but the juſt *practice* takes place in few; and innumerable are the inſtances of the beſt concerted diſpoſitions failing, from a want of that punctuality of execution, which every general muſt truſt to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

Compoſition of column.

The compoſition of the columns of an army, muſt always depend on the nature of the country and the objects of the movement.

Marches by lines to the flanks.

Marches made parallel to the front of the enemy, will generally be performed by the lines on which the army is encamped; each marching to the flank at a ſmall diſtance from one another, and occupying when in march the ſame extent of ground, as when formed in line. By this ſimple movement, has the flank of an enemy often been gained by troops accuſtomed to diligence and preciſion in the execution of their marches; nor (where the ground allows of it) is there any manœuvre of a great army more important, or that can be more ſecurely or effectually practiced againſt an enemy inaccurate and inferior in diſcipline, who in attempting the counter movement, is generally thrown into confuſion—The battles of *Prague*, of *Roſbach*, of *Liſſa*, among others are examples of this truth, and of the ſuperior movements of PRUSSIAN troops.

Marches to front or rear.

Marches made perpendicular to the front of the enemy either advancing or retiring, will be covered by ſtrong van or rear guards—The columns will be formed of diviſions of the army, and each generally compoſed both of cavalry and infantry, the nature of the country will determine which arm precedes.

During a *march* to the *front*, the ſeparation of the heads of the columns, muſt often unavoidably be conſiderable: but when near

 the

the enemy, they muſt be ſo regulated, and directed, as to be able to occupy the intermediate ſpaces, if required to form in line—Some one column muſt determine the relative ſituation of the others, and from time to time, new points of rendevous will be given: the diviſions muſt be more cloſed up than in the march to the flank, and in proportion as they approach the enemy, muſt exactneſs and attention increaſe—The general in conſequence of the obſervations he has made, will determine on his diſpoſition; the columns which are now probably halted and collected will be ſubdivided, and multiplied; each body will be directed on its point of formation; and the component parts of each will, in due time, diſengage from the general column and form in line.—The ſafety of *marches* to the *rear*, muſt depend on particular diſpoſitions, on ſtrong covering rear guards, and on the judicious choice of ſuch poſts as will check the purſuit of the enemy.

In theſe marches to front or rear, the diviſions of the ſecond line generally accompany thoſe of the firſt, and all their formations are relative thereto—The heavy artillery and carriages of an army, form a particular object of every march, and muſt be directed according to the circumſtances of the day—The ſafety of the march by the arrangement of detachments and poſts, to cover the front, rear or flanks of the columns, depends alſo on many local and temporary reaſons, but are an eſſential part of the general diſpoſition.

Column of march formed from line.

The *column* of *march* will generally be formed from line by the ſeveral bodies which are to compoſe it, wheeling to the one or other flank—The leading diviſion then moves on in the given direction; and the reſt follow, preſerving ſuch diſtances as are ordered, and which depend on the objects of the march.

Fig. 119.

To front or rear.

If the probable formation of the line is to be to the front, or rear of the march—The diviſions will be ordered to follow, at half,

or

or quarter intervals, in order to contract the length of the column conſiſtent with the views of the commander. Fig. 121.

But there is no poſſible caſe where a battalion or greater body in march, ought ever to occupy a greater extent from front to rear of the column, than it does from right to left when formed in line.

If the probable formation of the line is to the flank of the march, the diviſions will always preſerve the diſtances they wheeled at equal to their front; ſo that the line may at any time be formed to the flank, by the diviſions halting, and each wheeling the quarter circle. To the flank. Fig. 120.

When a *large body* marches from its camp, or poſition in ſeveral columns to front or rear, thoſe columns may be formed nearly cloſe (where circumſtances and the ground allow of it) in front and rear of ſuch diviſions, as are oppoſite the openings that conduct to the new poſition; and they will afterwards take their marching diſtances as ordered. Aſſembling columns preparatory to the march. Fig. 123.

If the impediments of ground, hinder them from forming the cloſe column to the front—They will cloſe in, in the prolongation of the line, to the leading diviſion of the column; and then follow it along its preſcribed tract, and at ſuch marching diſtances as are ordered. Fig. 122.

If the *march* is to the flank of the camp, or poſition, the bodies that compoſe each column, will cloſe into the diviſion that is to lead, and then follow it in whatever direction is allotted to the column, and at whatever diſtances are ordered. Fig. 124.

The following examples will ſhow the general movements of an ARMY from one poſition to another, and the

different manners of forming in line from different columns of march.

The enemy A is poſted with five battalions and ſix ſquadrons, his left at a moraſs, his right extending along a rivulet.

The column of eight battalions, and three ſquadrons advances towards the center of the enemy, and halts in battalions and ſquadrons behind a wood: three other ſquadrons to the left, form the advanced guard.

March and attack of a corps poſted.

Fig. 117.

The poſition C is to be taken, and the attack made on the enemy's left—the battalions in rear of the firſt and fifth cloſe up to them—the eighth battalion remains as a reſerve behind the wood; the other ſeven battalions and three ſquadrons march by diviſions to the right, and take the poſition B. They will then croſs the rivulet together; form in three lines C, make the attack on the enemy, and be favoured by the other three ſquadrons and the eighth battalion, whoſe motions will correſpond with that of the attack.

The enemy when obliged to quit the poſition A, throws back his right, and takes poſt D on the height, from whence he makes his retreat.

March of an army in different ſituations.

Fig. 118.

An ARMY at A, marches to the right to B in four columns, and by lines as encamped, viz. two columns of infantry, one of cavalry, one of artillery, and baggage.

From B it advances in four columns to C, marching by diviſions of the army; each column compoſed of infantry, cavalry, artillery, baggage, and in the ſame order; the ſeveral columns preceded by a ſtrong advanced guard.

From C it retires to its firſt poſition A, marching in four columns by diviſions of the army; each compoſed of baggage, heavy artillery, cavalry, infantry—The ſecond line of infantry precedes the firſt, and a ſtrong rear guard covers the whole.

The particular compoſition of the columns will vary, according to the nature of the country, and other circumſtances.

An

An ARMY conſiſting of thirty-nine battalions and thirty-ſix ſquadrons, encamped at A in two lines of infantry; and the cavalry in a third line, marches in four columns to attack the enemy—Each column is compoſed of infantry of both lines, and alſo of a part of the cavalry—The infantry precedes—All the columns march from the right.

March and formation of an army previous to the attack.

Fig. 125.

The advanced guard, conſiſting of ten ſquadrons and four battalions, precedes the center columns, and is halted at C, when the heads of the columns arrive at a b c d.

After reconnoitering the poſition of the enemy, the commander reſolves to attack their left; ſix ſquadrons of the advanced guard march to D; four ſquadrons and four battalions march to E.

The columns then cloſe up to half or quarter diſtance, and are carried on to f g h i.

New points are then given at k l m n, to which the infantry of the reſpective columns march; and the cavalry of the three right columns are ordered to form two additional columns on the right, viz. that of O, moves up to P; that of N, followed by M, moves up to O; the cavalry of L accompanying its infantry—The heads of the ſeveral columns are then carried to the points q r s t u w, where they form in order of battle—The two columns of cavalry in the prolongation of their line; the left and the two right columns of infantry by deploying from cloſe column; the other column of infantry by flank marching to the left.

The attack is then made from the right, either in line or in echellon; the reſerve E ſupporting the attack, or if repulſed covering the retreat—The infantry H moves on, as the attack of the right ſucceeds—The cannon which preceded or followed the column, is placed in front of the line.

In order to facilitate the MOVEMENTS of great ARMIES, and to enforce their diſcipline, it is neceſſary to organize, divide,

Neceſſity of regulation for the marches of an army.

divide, ſubdivide them; to eſtabliſh ſuch general regulations, as may prevent the repetition of a tedious but eſſential detail, at times when action and exertion are required; and particularly to aſcertain the duties and attentions of individuals, in every ſituation of march; ſo that the moſt conciſe orders may ſuffice to put the army in motion, and to place it at all times ready to execute with exactneſs and alacrity, ſuch intentions of its commander, as may ariſe from the circumſtances of the moment.

Thoſe *rules* therefore, that more immediately regard the marches of an army, are here exemplified in the practice and ORDERS given for the marches and movements of the BRITISH and FRENCH armies in *Germany*, during the war of 1760. The ſameneſs of principle which directed the conduct of Prince FERDINAND and Marechal BROGLIE, is ſufficient to ſanctify their juſtneſs; and by both generals, the main armies, the reſerves, the detached corps, light troops, and van-guards, were moved and applied according to circumſtances, by the ſame ſprings of action, and as parts of one and the ſame great machine.

Marechal de Broglie.

" Beſides the accuſtomed diſtinctions of battalions, regiments, brigades, wings and lines; the ARMY will during the campaign, be formed in ſix diviſions; four of infantry, and two of cavalry.

" The two lines of infantry will compoſe the four diviſions; each of a fourth part of each line.

Prince Ferdinand.

The ALLIED ARMY, from the nature of its compoſition did not admit of the ſame regular and equal diviſions as the French army; from time to time, they however exiſted.

It was generally underſtood as forming ſix diviſions—The cavalry of each wing one—and the infantry of the four nations, Britiſh, Hanoverian, Heſſian, Brunſwick, one each.

The

Prince Ferdinand.

The generals commanding nations, brigades, &c. were charged with their reſpective diſcipline and police.

There was for the day, one lieutenant general, one major general for each wing of the army; one field officer for each wing of cavalry, one field officer for the infantry picquets of each nation.

A brigade of light artillery, conſiſting of twelve ſix pounders attached to the infantry of each of the four nations, and always marched in column and encamped with it.

I.

" The army will march either by diviſions or lines; in the firſt caſe, it will form ſeven columns; in the ſecond, four columns.

" When by diviſions, the cavalry form the columns of the right and left, the heavy artillery that of the center, and the infantry the other four columns; each attended by a light brigade of twelve ſix pounders.

When by lines—the firſt column will be compoſed of infantry of the firſt line with twenty-four ſix pounders; the ſecond of the infantry of the ſecond line with twenty-four ſix pounders.

The third of the heavy artillery; the fourth of the whole cavalry.

The twelve ſix pounders attached to each of the four nations, are to march between the firſt and ſecond brigades of that nation.

In the rear of the battalion which cloſes the column, are to follow the ammunition

Marechal de Broglie.

" The right wing of cavalry will form one diviſion, the left wing of cavalry will form the other.

" A brigade of infantry will be alſo named to cover the flanks of each wing of cavalry.

Each diviſion will be commanded by its own general officers, appointed for the campaign; nor will thoſe of another diviſion ever interfere.

The commanding lieutenant general of each diviſion has charge of the diſcipline, police, marches, communications, &c. and to him all the inferior general officers report.

Each diviſion will have its general officer or brigadier of the day to attend to the above-mentioned objects, and report to its lieutenant general.

Detachments will be furniſhed as much as poſſible by diviſions.

" The army will generally march in ſix columns, or four columns.

When the army marches in ſix columns, each column will be formed by a diviſion, viz. four of infantry, two of cavalry

The right diviſion of infantry will be called the firſt diviſion; the others in ſucceſſion to the left will be the ſecond, third, fourth.

The

Marechal de Broglie.

The cavalry will be named, right or left diviſions, or wings.

When the army marches in four columns, the firſt line of the right wing of cavalry will march with the firſt diviſion of infantry, and the ſecond line with the ſecond diviſion.

The firſt line of the left wing of cavalry will march with the fourth diviſion of infantry, and the ſecond line with the third diviſion.

The nature of the country will determine whether the cavalry ought to lead or follow the columns of infantry.

A diviſion of artillery will always follow each diviſion of infantry.

The flank brigades of infantry will be ordered in front or rear of the cavalry, and under the command of the general officer of the wing to which they are attached.

Thus the general order of march will be—troops, artillery, light carriages, heavy ones.

The artillery of the park will always follow the carriages of ſuch column, as marches by the beſt route, and which will be preſcribed.

The march of the army will never be announced in orders.

Prince Ferdinand.

waggons of all the regiments, according to the order of march of the battalions and brigades—And then the ammunition waggons of the ſix pounders attached to the column.

The columns of cavalry having neither cannon nor ammunition waggons, their equipage will immediately follow the ſquadron that cloſes the column in the order preſcribed.

The equipage belonging to the columns formed by the heavy artillery, will follow the laſt ammunition waggon, and the other carriages of the artillery

2.

The order of march will be given in the following manner.

The army will march the ——— exactly at — o'clock.

The order or notice of march will be ſent to each nation—it muſt be received by the eldeſt general officer, colonel, or lieutenant colonel preſent, and executed in the following manner.

Half an hour before the time fixed for the march, the general commanding each nation, will give the ſignal for that purpoſe; the tents muſt be ſtruck and baggage loaded immediately—Each brigade muſt be formed at the time appointed, and the baggage remain in the rear ready to follow.

The commanding officer of each brigade will order a ſubaltern to conduct the carriages with regularity.

Beſides the notice of march, the eldeſt general, colonel or lieutenant colonel, of each nation preſent in camp, will receive a ſealed order, on the outſide of which will be marked

the

Prince Ferdinand.

the time for opening it. This order will contain the diſpoſition of march.

3.

When the army is to march in ſeven columns—The brigades which will be ready formed in order of battle, muſt begin their march at the moment preſcribed to form in column in rear of each other, the infantry by battalion, the cavalry by regiments—The bathorſes will form and remain on the flanks of their regiments, and the carriages will follow each other, marching in cloſe order as directed.

The twelve pieces of cannon attached to each column will file off, betwixt the laſt battalion of the firſt brigade and the firſt battalion of the ſecond—The ammunition waggons of theſe pieces will remain in file oppoſite the intervals.

The columns ought to be formed in half an hour, from the time the leading battalion or ſquadron begins to move.

Upon the ſignal being given, the whole army will march at once; and as ſoon as the columns have quitted the ground on which they were formed, the ammunition waggons and carriages will follow in the order before preſcribed.

4.

When the army marches by lines; it will form in column by diviſions; twelve ſix pounders will draw up in the firſt line between the firſt and ſecond brigades of Britiſh infantry, and alſo twelve ſix pounders between the firſt and ſecond brigades of Hanoverian infantry.

Marechal de Broglie.

When the general beats, the army is always to prepare for moving: the cavalry will ſaddle, the artillery will harneſs, and the grenadiers, chaſſeurs, new guards, quarter maſters, and camp colour men, will aſſemble one hundred paces in front of the brigades of the firſt line.

At the aſſembly, tents are to be ſtruck, cavalry and carriages to load their baggage.

At the troop and to horſe, the whole army will form ready to march, carriages will be placed behind their reſpective regiments, and follow in the ſame order—The artillery will follow the diviſions of the infantry to which it is attached, unleſs directed to take another route.

———

When the troop has beat, and the lines are formed, the infantry will break to the proper flank by platoons, and cloſe into the leading regiment of the column. The intervals of platoons will not exceed three paces; and at the ſame time, the brigades of the ſecond line will join the firſt.

When the whole infantry of each column ſhall have cloſed up, the general officer commanding will order the head to move on.

———

On the *march*, the columns muſt always be in readineſs to form; no officer whatever is to ride among the troops,

Marechal de Broglie.

troops, but to remain and be dreſſed on the flanks of the column. An intelligent one will be advanced about one hundred paces, to reconnoitre the paſſes to right or left of brigades and communications, and to indicate them to the mounted officers. But if obliged to paſs through the ſame defile as the men, they muſt divide themſelves and croſs quickly; half in front, half in rear of the battalion; and when ſo paſſed they will regain the flanks of the columns, and avoid as much as poſſible the neceſſity of entering into them.

Excluſive of ſuch pioneers as are appointed to open routes for the columns of the army, fifty per brigade will march at the head of each to repair ſuch bridges and communications, as may have been damaged.

The brigadiers ſhall prevent the ſoldiers breaking their files, and attend to their keeping the ſame front they ſet out with. But if ſuch breaking off becomes neceſſary, the defile muſt be paſſed at a redoubled pace, and the diviſions again formed on the other ſide.

All operations of doubling and forming up will be taken, and fol-

Prince Ferdinand.

In the ſecond line twelve ſix pounders will draw up between the two brigades of Brunſwick infantry, and twelve ſix pounders between the Heſſian brigades.

The heavy artillery parked in the center of the army will file off, the cavalry will form in column by quarter ranks, and the baggage of each line will draw up on the flanks of their reſpective brigades.

When the ſignal is given, all the columns will begin their march together; and as they quit their ground the ammunition waggons and carriages belonging to the infantry will follow by brigades, according to the order of march in the rear of the column.

The equipage of the cavalry will follow the laſt ſquadrons, and the bat-horſes will march on the flanks of their reſpective battalions and ſquadrons.

No carriage whatever is to march betwixt the diviſions of the columns—The bat-horſes only will be ſuffered to keep on the flanks, but on no account to mix with, advance before, or remain behind their reſpective regiments—The field pieces are to march with their reſpective battalions—The battalions are to keep well cloſed up, and to march by ſubdiviſions.

5.

The commanding officers of battalions, ſquadrons and brigades of artillery, will be reſponſible—That they are formed, tents ſtruck, and baggage loaded in half an hour, from the time that the ſignal for the march was given them; and for this purpoſe, it is neceſſary that they ſhould exerciſe their men to it, while they remain in ſettled camps.

The

Prince Ferdinand.

The general officers commanding brigades will be reſponſible—That the columns are formed in half an hour from the time the battalions are drawn up, and the generals who lead columns are to be anſwerable that they move together exactly at the hour appointed.

6.

The aids de camp, and major of brigades are always to regulate their watches by head quarters, that preciſion of movement may be attained, and that every brigade may march at the ſame time.

7.

The guides will always be ordered to the brigades which form the heads of columns, and there preſent themſelves to the commanding officer, of the battalion or ſquadron that leads.

8.

The commanding officer of each battalion and ſquadron will pay the greateſt attention during the march, and be anſwerable—That the battalions march always by ſubdiviſions, and the cavalry by quarter ranks—If the *defiles* oblige them to break off, they muſt double up again as ſoon as they have paſſed.

2d. Every officer muſt remain with his diviſion, and never leave it on any account.

3d. No ſoldier is to be permitted to quit his rank.

4th. The bat-horſes muſt not be ſuffered to interrupt the march of the column, but obliged to keep on the flanks.

5th. The diſtance between diviſions is to be exactly obſerved.

Marechal de Broglie.

lowed from the front to the rear of the column.

No carriage or bat-horſe can ever march in the column, or precede it to camp.

No officer or ſoldier ſhall quit his rank without leave.

The cavalry march by troops, and obſerve the foregoing directions.

Whenever the columns halt, in order to collect and bring up the rear; the infantry will form by quarter battalions, or if near an enemy, by battalions; the cavalry will diſmount; centries be poſted round each regiment to prevent ſtraggling; and rolls will be called as well as at quitting the old, and entering the new camp; and when to reſume their march, the troops muſt be particularly alert, and in perfect readineſs to proceed, otherwiſe the columns will be again lengthned out, and in worſe order than when the halt was made.

As ſoon as the commanders of columns ſhall have been informed that they are near an enemy, they will direct and obſerve as follows.

They will divide the columns they lead each into two columns, or even more if poſſible, compoſing them

Marechal de Broglie.

them of part of the troops of each line.

They will take particular care to obtain and preſerve ſuch intervals betwixt the columns, as will enable them all to form in line at one and the ſame inſtant.

Whenever the troops are near their ground, or by the approach of the enemy they are obliged to form—The battalions and ſquadrons will cloſe up to each other, preſerving a diſtance not exceeding twelve paces—the officers will diſmount, the columns will deploy, and the lines be formed either to right or left.

At the ſame time that the firſt line forms, the ſecond line and reſerves will alſo form, keeping or taking a diſtance of three hundred paces between the two lines—All theſe movements will be executed as quick as poſſible, and at a redoubled pace.

The cavalry will conform to the ſame directions—The brigades of infantry appointed to cover their flanks, will remain in column between the two lines of infantry, dreſſing with the battalion neareſt the cavalry.

On the arrival in camp, all ſtaff officers will remain mounted till the tents are pitched, and centries placed; officers of companies will not quit them till thoſe things are done; and the general officers will ſet an example to the whole.

Prince Ferdinand.

The generals, or commanding officers of brigades will take care—

1ſt. That the battalions and ſquadrons march well cloſed, and preſerve their proper diſtances.

2d. That the commanding officers of battalions and ſquadrons punctually obey the orders preſcribed—In caſe of diſobedience, the generals are to put in arreſt, or correct the diſorders of ſuch commanding officers, and report them.

3d. When the army halts, it may be permitted to ſend for water, but the ſoldiers muſt not be ſuffered to ſtraggle—As many officers or non-commiſſioned officers as are neceſſary, muſt conduct them regularly, and be anſwerable that no diſorder is committed.

4th. No carriages except the cannon are to be permitted to march betwixt the battalions; and in caſe any of them ſhould ſtick faſt in a deep road, a proper number of men muſt be ordered immediately to draw them out.

If a carriage breaks, it muſt be drawn aſide, the road cleared, and a proper eſcort left with it, that the march of the column be not interrupted—The officer under whoſe care it is left, muſt get it repaired, and follow the column as ſoon as poſſible.

5th. The general officers commanding brigades ſhall remain with them, and punctually obſerve the order of march, and the execution of every article preſcribed.

The generals who lead columns, are to enforce obedience with the utmoſt ſeverity.

2d. They are to begin carefully their march preciſely at the hour appointed; to keep an equal pace, and ſo to regulate it, that the troops do not exceed three miles in an hour and a quarter.

3d.

3d. The guides ſerve only to point out the routes for the columns—They muſt be provided with pioneers to make the neceſſary openings by bridges, and to repair roads. But the generals muſt not truſt to theſe precautions, they muſt gain the moſt exact knowledge of the routes they are to march, and themſelves deviſe the moſt proper means to avoid all difficulties that may embarraſs the march.

On no occaſion can a general officer more diſplay his ſkill and experience, than in the good conduct of the body which he leads; ſo that the commander in chief may depend on the exact march of the ſeveral columns, and make his calculations accordingly.

Though troops do not always march in preſence of an enemy, it is of infinite conſequence, that they ſhould always conſider themſelves as in that ſituation—Equal and well ordered marches, contribute not only to the preſervation of the army, but accuſtom the troops at all times to be prepared to attack, or repulſe the enemy.

9.

The quarter maſter general of each nation, will go forward with the quarter maſters and camp colour men—The quarter maſter general of the army, or ſuch other perſon as is ordered to reconnoitre the new camp, will direct in general the ground that the brigades of each nation are to occupy; after which the quarter maſters general will mark out their reſpective encampments.

Each nation is to take care to park the brigade of ſix pounders that is attached to it.

The heavy artillery muſt detach an officer with their camp colour men to take up the ground of their encampment.

10.

Whenever the baggage is ordered to be ſent away, all carriages whatever without diſtinction, are comprehended in this order, except ſuch as may be particularly ſpecified.

The equipage of each battalion or ſquadron, will aſſemble in the rear of the camp, exactly at the hour appointed. Thoſe of each

each brigade, on the ſignal being given, are to file off to the rendezvous of their nation, from whence they will be conducted to the place appointed for them.

The guides ordered to ſhow the way, will come to the commanding officer of the laſt battalion or ſquadron of the laſt brigade of each nation; where the officer who is to conduct the brigade, will come to receive him.

It has been already ordered, that each brigade ſhall appoint an officer to conduct the baggage; the eldeſt of whom ſhall take the charge of the whole of that nation, and be anſwerable for the departure of it at the proper time, and for the execution of the neceſſary orders during the march.

11.

The chaſſeurs and light troops, always form the advanced and rear guards, or march on the flanks of the army.

The general officer who commands them, will likewiſe have under his orders, thoſe battalions or ſquadrons, that may at any time be ordered to re-inforce the advanced or rear guards. This general officer will always be particularly named.

12.

Reſerves and detached corps will be regulated according to circumſtances, by the above orders.

Such were the FIXED PRINCIPLES that directed the movements of very large armies with the greateſt honour to their commanders, and in countries offering every variety of ſurface.

The farther meaſures neceſſary for the ſecurity of the march; the ſtrength of advanced, detached, and flank corps, and the combined operations of the whole through vaſt and extended regions, aroſe from a perfect knowledge of the ſcene of war, and the ſkilful arrangements of the general, varied and adapted to circumſtances.

Although

Although every neceſſary appendage to an army may be liberally furniſhed, yet the foreſight and diſpoſitions required to provide for, and to move ſuch bodies to advantage, demand an exertion of the moſt eminent talents. From theſe difficulties chiefly, the fortunate general is curbed in his views; and his progreſs being much regulated by the ſubſiſtence of his army, conqueſt is thereby impeded, the vanquiſhed have time again to make head, and Providence ſeems in this manner to ſet bounds to the ravages of mankind.

In order ſtill farther to exemplify the great *movements* and *poſitions* in the field, we ſhall here add an imperfect OUTLINE of the CAMPAIGNS of the BRITISH ARMY in GERMANY; but including a more particular detail of the operations that took place prior to the *battle* of *Fellinghuſen* in 1761; as a period moſt critical and intereſting, and which produced all the varieties of movement that could be executed by a great army. The very ſlight manner in which theſe general events are meant to be touched, will ſufficiently apologize for the execution, and muſt lead us to regret, that no perſon who may be in poſſeſſion of ſufficient local knowledge and materials, has as yet furniſhed any detailed or inſtructive hiſtory of a war, fertile in great actions, conducted with ſuperior ſcience, and finiſhed with ſo much glory.

OUTLINE of the CAMPAIGNS of the BRITISH ARMY, in GERMANY.

1756.

IN conſequence of the extenſive war which had now raged for ſome time, the FRENCH determined to invade the king's dominions; and at the end of this year, marched one hundred thouſand men, under the command of the Marechal D'ETREES towards

March of the French army to the Rhine.

wards the Rhine, that they might be enabled to enter lower Germany, either through the countries of *Heſſe* or of *Munſter*, which are the two great paſſages that lead into it; and which are ſeparated from each other by the intermediate mountains of the Wetteraw, of the county of Marck, and of the duchies of Berg and Weſtphalia.

1757.

Paſſage of the Rhine.

Having determined to advance from the Lower Rhine, the French army in the month of March croſſed that river, and took poſſeſſion of Weſel; which, though very ſtrongly fortified, was evacuated by the Pruſſian garriſon who retired upon Lipſtadt, and abandoned this place alſo, when in the courſe of the next month the enemy puſhed forward a ſtrong corps upon Munſter and Ham.

Aſſembly of the king's army.

The KING's German army, under the command of the Duke of CUMBERLAND, and conſiſting of between forty and fifty thouſand men, Hanoverians, Heſſians, Brunſwickers and Pruſſians, began to aſſemble near Hameln; and in the month of May advanced to the neighbourhood of Paderborn and Bielefeldt, thereby occupying the paſſages of a ridge of woody hills, which traverſe the country, and endeavouring to cover Heſſe and Hanover.

Progreſs of the French.

But Marchal d'Etrees, who on the laſt day of May had aſſembled the whole French army at Munſter, marched upon Bielefeldt in the begining of June, and the Duke giving way to ſuperiority of numbers, croſſed the Weſer on the 16th and fell back upon Hameln. Before the middle of July, Embden, Munden, Caſſel, Gottingen, and all their dependencies were in poſſeſſion of the enemy, who on the 10th of that month paſſed the Weſer, and advanced upon Hameln, where in the indifferent poſition of Haſtenbeck the Duke was determined to make a ſtand.

The

The loſs of that battle, on the 26th of July, occaſioned his retreat upon Minden, Nienburg, Verden, and Stade ſucceſſively——Hanover, Brunſwick, and Wolfenbuttle ſurrendered before the middle of Auguſt; and on the 8th of September the convention of Cloſter Seven was ſigned, which confined the king's army to a ſmall diſtrict upon the Lower Elbe, and put the enemy in poſſeſſion of all Weſtphalia, and part of Saxony.

Battle of Hastenbeck.

About this time D'Etrees was recalled, and Marechal de Richelieu was ſent to command the French army; part of it was put into quarters of cantonment in the conquered countries, and the reſt marched towards Halberſtadt to re-inforce Prince de Soubiſe, who with a conſiderable corps, joined to the army of the empire, was deſtined for the conqueſt of Saxony.

Diſpoſition of the French army.

Things remained for ſome time in this ſituation, when the king determined that his troops ſhould again take the field, but under a new denomination.—To this he was induced by a variety of infractions of the convention; by the general indignation expreſſed at a neutrality which tied up the hands of ſo great an army; by the oppreſſions, and exactions exerciſed in the country; by the periſhing and helpleſs condition of the enemy, who were ſcattered in their quarters, reduced by ſickneſs, without diſcipline or magazines, and deſtitute of many of the neceſſaries of war; by their defeat at Roſbach, and by the alteration which the ſubſequent victory at Liſſa obtained over the Auſtrians, made in the fortunes of the King of Prussia.

Re-aſſembly of the King's army.

They now became the army of Great Britain, were taken into her pay, and Prince Ferdinand of Brunswick aſſumed the command.—About the middle of November he began to act; Harburg was inveſted, and the quarters of the troops were conſiderably enlarged; the enemy was obliged to evacuate Luneburg, and Halberſtadt, and to aſſemble in a very ſhattered condition in the neighbourhood of Zell, there to diſpute the paſſage of the Aller.—About the end of December Harburg ſurrendered; but the rigour of the ſeaſon, and the arrangements neceſſary for purſuing the war, ſuſpended for a time the further operations on both ſides.

Movements of the armies.

1758.

Movements of Prince Ferdinand, and of the Pruſſians.

About the middle of February Prince FERDINAND, joined by fifteen Pruſſian ſquadrons, again took the field; Prince Henry of Pruſſia with fifteen thouſand men began to act towards Halberſtadt; he advanced to Hildeſheim, and then ſtruck off into Saxony.

Retreat of the French army.

The French army now commanded on Richelieu's recall, by the Comte de Clermont, apprehenſive of being ſurrounded by theſe combined movements, retired in the greateſt confuſion; leaving baggage, artillery, hoſpitals, &c. a prey to the victors—Bremen was evacuated, and the HEREDITARY PRINCE of Brunſwick took Hoya by aſſault, which ſecured a paſſage over the Weſer: Minden ſurrendered on the 14th of March, and in the courſe of this month the French evacuated all the conqueſts of the preceding campaign, and retired upon Weſel and Hanau—Much harraſſed, and weakned, they were put into quarters of refreſhment, betwixt the Rhine and the Maeſe, while Soubiſe's army and the corps which had abandoned Heſſe, retired behind the Mayn.

Progreſs of the Britiſh army.

Prince Ferdinand who had thus preſſed the enemy, advanced on the 7th to Dorſten, and then placed his army in cantonments round Munſter—In this manner with infinite loſs, and for want of diſcipline, and having taken proper precautions for ſubſiſtence, and ſecurity in their quarters, was the French army obliged to fly before one inferior in numbers, and to abandon in the moſt diſgraceful manner all their conqueſts.

BATTLE OF CREVELDT.

To improve the advantages already gained, and to profit from the debilitated ſtate of the enemy; Prince Ferdinand after having given ſome reſpite to his troops to recover from the fatigues of a winter campaign, again took the field in the end of May.—On the 2d and 3d of June he paſſed the Rhine below Weſel in the face of a great army, and on the 25th by ſuperior ſkill and conduct gained a compleat victory at CREVELDT.

The

The French having retired towards Nuys, and Cologne—Detachments were puſhed on to Ruremonde, contributions were raiſed in the Queen's, and biſhop of Liege's country, Duſſeldorff which ſecured a paſſage over the Rhine, was bombarded and ſurrendered on the 8th of July, and for ſome time the enemy was not in a condition to make head againſt the king's army—In this ſituation, and on the appearance of the ſeat of war being transferred ſo near to the Frontiers of France, it was reſolved to ſend a corps of Britiſh troops to join Prince Ferdinand's army, one Engliſh battalion being already in garriſon at Embden, which had been retaken in the month of March, by the aſſiſtance of a ſmall ſquadron of ſhips.

Conſequences of the battle of Creveldt.

But notwithſtanding the brilliancy of the victory at Creveldt, it became very apparent, that it would be impoſſible to carry on the war beyond the Rhine.—Weſel was in poſſeſſion of the enemy, and too ſtrong to be attacked; the French army was daily receiving reinforcements; M. de Contades had taken the command of it, and was preparing to act with that vigour which his ſuperior numbers required of him.

Situation of the French.

Soubiſe alſo who had aſſembled a conſiderable army upon the Mayn, was now marching through Heſſe upon Prince Iſemburg, who had been left to cover the entrance into that country, with ſix or ſeven thouſand men, and who had advanced in the beginning of June to Marburg. On the approach of the enemy he fell back upon Caſſel, and near it occupied the ſtrong poſt of SANDERSHAUSEN, where on the 23d of July he was attacked by the Duc de Broglie, ſuſtained by Soubiſe's army, and obliged to retire, with loſs, upon Hameln, leaving Gottingen and Eimbeck to the enemy.

Progreſs of Soubiſe in Heſſe, and Affair of SANDERSHAUSEN,

This advantage, which gave the French poſſeſſion of all Heſſe, and expoſed the Biſhopricks, the country upon the Weſer, and the communication of the army to their inroads, determined Prince Ferdinand to repaſs the Rhine as ſoon as poſſible. But the rains, which had ſwelled the river to a great degree, damaged the bridge, and left the army in a critical ſituation, prevented the immediate execution of this plan.

Determine Prince Ferdinand to repaſs the Rhine.

Lieut. general de Chevert, deſtined for, but hindered by the ſame reaſons from undertaking the ſiege of Duſſeldorff, reſolved to take advantage of this circumſtance, and to attack lieutenant general Imhoff, who was poſted at MEER, near the confines of Holland, with about four thouſand men to cover the magazines and bridge over the Rhine, and who then had a very imperfect communication with the king's army. He marched from Weſel with a much ſuperior force; but on the 5th of Auguſt was met and attacked by Imhoff in a critical moment, before he had compleated the formation of his troops; they were put to the rout with the loſs of a conſiderable number of men and of ſeveral pieces of cannon.——This fortunate action enabled Imhoff to ſecure and repair the bridge, to keep up his communication with the army, and to enſure the junction of the BRITISH corps, conſiſting of ſix battalions and 14 ſquadrons, which under the command of the Duke of MARLBOROUGH, had landed at Embden the end of July, and was at this time on the borders of Frieſland.

Affair at MEER.

A defeat in this critical ſituation of the army, conſidering the ſtrength of Contades, and the progreſs of Soubiſe, might certainly have been attended with the worſt conſequences.—Prince Ferdinand would moſt probably have been obliged to paſs the Rhine at Duſſeldorff; and with loſs he muſt have found very great difficulty in regaining the country of Munſter, or in joining the Britiſh corps, which might have been forced back upon the Ems, or Weſer. But the enemy diſpirited by their ill ſucceſs, gave no diſturbance to Prince Ferdinand, when he paſſed the Rhine on the 9th and 10th near Rees. Duſſeldorff was at the ſame time evacuated, and the garriſon retired by the Roer into the county of Marck, without any loſs. The whole army joined in the camp at Coesfeldt, on the 25th of Auguſt, where the Britiſh corps of 8000 men had been ſince the 14th.

Prince Ferdinand repaſſes the Rhine.

Contades, now made a Marechal of France, croſſed the Rhine on the 20th near Weſel, with his whole force; but though much ſuperior in numbers, he was not able to advance into the country, or to undertake any operation of importance. He was obliged to draw his

ſubſiſtence

ſubſiſtence from the Rhine, and from Weſel, where no magazines could have been previouſly eſtabliſhed; nor could he move on, without rendering his communications too precarious, while Prince Ferdinand remained in the poſition of Coesfeldt and Dulmen; where having the countries of Munſter, Frieſland, and the navigable river of the Ems behind him, he was abundantly ſupplied with whatever was eſſential.—The harraſſing ſervice of the early part of the year might contribute to that inaction in which the armies remained during the months of Auguſt and September, for there was no conſiderable change in their poſition: the Lippe divided them; Prince Ferdinand kept his camp at Coesfeldt and Dulmen, and Marechal Contades continued near Recklinghuſen. On the death of the duke of Marlborough at Warendorff, lord G. Sackville had ſucceeded to the command of the Britiſh troops.

Operations of Contades.

After the affair of Sanderſhauſen, Soubiſe who had only ſent a ſmall corps towards Gottingen, marched with the greateſt part of his force to Warburg, and made detachments towards Lipſtadt and Paderborn. On the 8th of September he croſſed the Weſer with his troops, to make an irruption into Hanover, but was obliged on the 26th to return to Caſſel to oppoſe lieutenant general Oberg, who, detached from the army with a conſiderable force, had encamped the end of Auguſt under Lipſtadt, and having been joined by Prince Iſembourg, now advanced upon Caſſel in the abſence of Soubiſe.

Operations of Soubiſe and Oberg.

To favour theſe movements in Heſſe, Contades, who about the time of the junction of the Britiſh, had been reinforced by ten thouſand Saxons, taken into the pay of France, moved about the 23d to Ham, drove Kilmanſegge into Munſter, and detached thirty-five battalions and thirty ſquadrons to reinforce Soubiſe, while Prince Ferdinand ſtill remained at Dulmen. Oberg who had encamped for ſome days before Caſſel, croſſed the Weſer on the 5th of October, and took poſt at Landwerhagen, where he remained till the 9th, when he fell back upon LUTERNBERG, and was there attacked on the 10th by Soubiſe reinforced from Contades's army. With the loſs of above three thouſand men he was obliged to retreat upon Munden.

Battle of LUTERNBERG.

To

To aſſiſt Oberg, and to profit of the opportunity of attacking Contades, while weakened by the great detachment ſent into Heſſe, Prince Ferdinand marched from Dulmen on the 7th of October, and after remaining ſome days at Munſter, paſſed the Lippe near Lipſtadt, drove in the enemy's advanced corps at Soeſt, and on the 20th moved forward to Werle, where he found the enemy on the heights of Wambeln, behind the Saltzbach (the poſition occupied by the Hereditary Prince's corps, at the battle of Fellinghuſen in 1761) too ſtrongly poſted to be attacked. He was therefore obliged to give up this intention and to return to Lipſtadt, where Oberg came with the greateſt part of his corps, and from whence Prince Ferdinand proceeded to his camp at Munſter. Contades was joined on the 23d by his detachment from Soubiſe, and remained in the neighbourhood of Ham.

Movements of Prince Ferdinand and Contades.

This was the laſt operation of the campaign, and the French, notwithſtanding their ſucceſs and ſuperiority of numbers, not having acquired any poſt of ſufficient ſtrength, which they could provide and maintain during the winter, ſaw themſelves again obliged to relinquiſh their conqueſts, and to approach their own frontiers.

Cloſe of the campaign.

About the middle of November Soubiſe evacuated Heſſe, and went into winter quarters behind the Mayn. Contades alſo marched upon Weſel, croſſed the Rhine, and placed his army between that river and the Maeſe. The allied army broke up the camp at Munſter, November 15th, and took their winter quarters in the countries of Heſſe, Munſter, Oſnaburgh, Paderborn, and Hildiſheim—Marburg and Ziegenhayn were the advanced poſts towards the army of Soubiſe; and Ham, Coesfeldt and Dulmen, towards that of Contades.

Winter quarters.

1759.

On the 2d of January the French took poſſeſſion of *Francfort* on the Mayn; and in the next month the army of the empire quartered in Thuringia, made an irruption into Heſſe, as far as Hirſchfeldt; the

the French light troops acting in conjunction, advanced to Marburg, but on the approach of major general Urff, who was detached for that purpoſe, they were obliged to retire. About the middle of March the army of the empire again extended themſelves into Heſſe, towards Fulda and Hirſchfeldt, while ſtrong French detachments puſhed on towards the Lahn, and the Ohm. The principal object of theſe movements was to impede the recruiting of the Heſſian troops, and prevent the collection of forage for the magazines.

Movements of the enemy in Heſſe.

Prince FERDINAND, in order to check this progreſs, had aſſembled a conſiderable part of his army in the neighbourhood of Caſſel, and marched upon Hirſchfeldt, while the Prince of Holſtein, with a corps, advanced upon Marburg. The enemy was obliged to retire, Prince Ferdinand was on the 27th maſter of Fulda; and the army of the empire hemmed in on the other ſide by the Pruſſians in Thuringia, were obliged, with conſiderable loſs, to make their retreat upon Nuremberg.

Movements of Prince Ferdinand.

Prince Ferdinand, who had thus got rid of theſe invaders, and who had now collected a conſiderable corps, conſiſting of all the Heſſians and Brunſwickers; ſeven Engliſh, and ten Pruſſian ſquadrons; ſeven battalions and ſeven ſquadrons of Hanoverians, beſides light troops: after remaining ſome time at Fulda, marched upon M. de Broglie, who had aſſembled the French army of the Upper Rhine in the ſtrong poſition of BERGEN, near Francfort. Prince Ferdinand, to whom a victory would have produced the greateſt conſequences, by giving him the poſſeſſion of Francfort, of the Mayn, and by the probable retreat of the French from that part of Germany; and who, if unſucceſsful, would only the ſooner quit a tract of country where he had no eſtabliſhment, and which he muſt neceſſarily relinquiſh if no action took place, attacked Broglie on the 13th of April, but was repulſed with conſiderable loſs, and retired upon Windecken, without being purſued by the enemy. Broglie, immediately after the battle, was joined by a large body from the Lower Rhine, under M. de St. Germain; the army of the empire began to

Battle of BERGEN.

act

act upon his right towards Fulda, and Prince Ferdinand continued his retreat gradually into Heſſe, arriving at Ziegenhayn the 23d.

Cantonment of the army.

While theſe operations were going on in Heſſe, Imhoff had commanded a corps aſſembled near Lipſtadt, and the quarters of the reſt of the army, in the country of Munſter, had been contracted to oppoſe any attempts which the French troops on the Lower Rhine might have made in Prince Ferdinand's abſence.—In the end of April, Imhoff with his corps was ſent towards Caſſel, and the army which had acted in Heſſe, went into quarters of refreſhment, in the countrys of Paderborn and Marck; while the French did the ſame about Francfort, Gieſſen, and in the Veteravia.

Aſſembly of the French army.

The enemy, from the experience of laſt year, having ſeen the advantage which the poſſeſſion of the courſe of the Lippe, Lipſtadt, and of Munſter, where large magazines were eſtabliſhed, gave to Prince Ferdinand, in defending that entrance through the flat country into Weſtphalia; now determined to make their principal effort by the other through Heſſe, which was more woody and mountainous, and abounds in ſtrong poſitions.—Their army of the Lower Rhine encamped in ſeveral corps the 6th of May. Detachments were puſhed into the Veteravia, to cover the march of a great proportion of it, which in ſeveral diviſions croſſed the country between the Lahn and the Rhine, and on the 31ſt was aſſembled, together with the army of the upper Rhine, in the neighbourhood of Gieſſen—Marechal de CONTADES took the command, while D'Armentieres remained near *Weſel* with about twenty thouſand men.

Poſition of the Britiſh army.

On the 10th of May the Hereditary Prince, with a large corps, had advanced towards Fulda, but was recalled on the march of the French army towards the Lahn. Imhoff, with ten or twelve thouſand men, encamped near Fritzlar, and Prince Ferdinand, with the body of his army, remained cantoned on the Lippe, and in the county of Munſter, as in a central poſition, till it could be determined from whence the great effort of the enemy was to be made; whether from the Mayn, or from the Lower Rhine. The aſſembly of the French army on the Lahn at laſt determined the removal of the magazines, thoſe

thoſe of Munſter to Lipſtadt, thoſe of Oſnaburg to the Weſer, and the march of the greateſt part of the army from the country of Munſter to the neighbourhood of Ham, where it encamped the beginning of June in different corps, and on the 8th the whole aſſembled in the camp of Werle.

The French army preceded by its advanced corps was put in motion the 3d of June, Marburg was occupied the 5th, Ziegenhayn the 6th, and while Broglie puſhed on to Caſſel which he entered the 11th, Contades with the army arrived on the 10th at Corbach.—On the 14th, having gained the paſſes of Stadberg he croſſed the Dimel at that place, while Broglie on the ſame day was at Warburg, and on the 16th, after marching over the Paderborn hills, he arrived at Leichtenau within two leagues of Contades—D'Armentieres who croſſed the Rhine on the 15th, with nineteen battalions and twenty ſquadrons, advanced to Schermbeck four leagues from Weſel where he remained for the reſt of the month, and was watched by lieutenant general Kilmanſegge who encamped at Dulmen with a ſmall corps, to cover Munſter. Progreſs of the French armies.

While Contades was making theſe rapid advances; Prince Ferdinand who on this occaſion does not ſeem to have been ſufficiently apprized of the motions of the enemy, or may not then have fully reflected on the great importance of the poſitions of the Dimel, did not arrive at Buren five leagues from Stadberg with the head of his army till the 14th, too late to oppoſe the paſſage of the defiles which Contades had now gained.—At Buren he was joined by the greateſt part of Imhoff's corps which had retired before Broglie upon Caſſel and Warburg, after ſending off a ſmall detachment towards Gottingen to cover that country from the incurſions of the enemy's light troops: the army now conſiſted of fifty battalions, fifty-nine ſquadrons and light troops. Movements of Prince Ferdinand.

Contades being in poſſeſſion of all Heſſe and having aſſembled his army of 110 battalions and 106 ſquadrons, in the country of Paderborn, began to extend on his right, in order to encompaſs Prince Ferdinand's left flank who was poſted behind the little river Alme, and had a ſmall corps on the other ſide of the Lippe. Movements of Contades.

In the ſituation of Buren though Prince Ferdinand might have been able to keep up his communication with Lipſtadt, that with Munſter would have been precarious; as d'Armentieres if enterpriſing, was able to drive Kilmanſegge back upon it.—The nature of the country prevented his effectually diſturbing the communications of the enemy, and in caſe of a battle, he would have had the whole ſuperior French force to combat, freſh, inſpirited with their ſucceſs, and not yet weakned by detachments or garriſons.—At any rate he left Hanover, and the whole country on the Weſer at their diſcretion, where his eſſential poſts were ſuch as could make no conſiderable defence.—Since the beginning of the war the fortifications of Munſter had been conſiderably ſtrengthned, and thoſe of Lipſtadt particularly ſo, it was now a reſpectable place.—Throwing therefore a ſufficient garriſon into Lipſtadt he marched the 18th at night, croſſed the Lippe, and encamped on the 21ſt at Ritberg.

Neceſſity of Prince Ferdinand's retiring.

Contades now advanced to Paderborn where the neceſſity of bringing up ſupplies for his army kept him ſome time, but on the 29th he moved on to Lipſpring.—This determined Prince Ferdinand to quit his poſition of Ritberg, and to march by Guterſlohe and Marienveldt upon Diſſen, where he encamped the 3d of July.—Contades moved the 2d to Stuckenbrock, and on the 4th to Bilefeldt: Broglie's reſerve was near Hervorden, which was occupied by his light troops; and Chevreuſe's reſerve of the left was placed at Delbrugge.—On the 7th Broglie's reſerve was advanced to Engern, and on the 8th Contades marched to Hervorden, and Chevreuſe to Ritberg, leaving Lipſtadt blockaded.

Progreſs of Contades.

Theſe movements of Contades which ſtill tended to gain Prince Ferdinand's left flank, obliged him on the 8th to march to Oſnabruck, and to recall a ſtrong detachment which he had ſent to Melle.

Armentieres who had advanced and driven Wangenheim back upon Munſter, inveſted that place on the 9th—Broglie on the ſame day carried Minden by ſurprize and aſſault, his reſerve encamped under

Minden taken.

under it on the 11th, and on the 14th croſſed the Weſer, being replaced by another corps.

Contades remained near Hervorden to obſerve Prince Ferdinand, who having failed in his intention of drawing the enemy to a diſtance from the Weſer into the biſhopricks, and now ſeeing himſelf in danger of being cut off from that river ſince the loſs of Minden, was obliged to quit his poſition near Oſnabruck on the 11th, and march by Bomte and Raden to Stoltzenau, where he arrived the 14th, in order to cover his magazines and hoſpitals at Nienborg, and Bremen.

Retrogade movements of Prince Ferdinand.

On the 14th Contades quitted Hervorden, and on the 15th encamped at MINDEN—St. Germain who had been for ſome time detached towards Caſſel arrived on the 16th near Hameln, and Broglie with his reſerve repaſſed the Weſer in conſequence of Prince Ferdinand's movement from Stoltzenau to Peterſhagen on the 16th, but he again paſſed it on the 17th.

Contades encamps at Minden.

On the 17th Prince Ferdinand advanced into the plain of Minden with his army, and after examining the French poſition returned to his camp of Peterſhagen; but Wangenheim with his corps remained and intrenched himſelf behind Thonhauſen, and the Piquets and poſts of the army were extended on the right quite to the Marſh of Minden—In this ſituation the armies remained for ſome time—Contades was employed in ſecuring his communications which were now very extended, and in bringing up his ſupplies from Paderborn, at the ſame time that he waited the event of the ſiege of Munſter which D'Armentieres took on the 25th after ſix days open trenches—Prince Ferdinand was employed in reconnoitring and making preparations for giving battle to the enemy, which he ſaw he could do to advantage, whenever they quitted their ſtrong ſituation.

Prince Ferdinand encamps at Peterſhagen.

This camp of Minden, which might be advantageous for a ſmaller corps, and was indeed inattackable, was a very improper one for ſo great an army acting on the offenſive, to be cooped up in. With a chain of woody mountains immediately in the rear

Nature of the camp at Minden.

and on the left, a river upon the right, and a moraſs extending along the front; there was no means of advancing from this poſition, but by marching along the narrow ſpace between the town and moraſs, and afterwards forming in line when arrived in the plain of Minden. That this ſituation muſt ſoon occur, Prince Ferdinand foreſaw—to attack the enemy while in the act of extending themſelves, or before their columns ſhould have completely croſſed the narrow ground, was his fixed and early intention. That he afterwards was not timeouſly enough apprized of their motions, was the fault of his advanced poſts, not of his diſpoſitions. Every arrangement made for many days before the battle, had this deſired object in view; all neceſſary openings were made, and routes traced for the expeditious march of the army; every thing was prepared which human foreſight could ſuggeſt; and every individual kept ready to ſeize the expected opportunity.

Situation of detached corps.

When Prince Ferdinand had quitted Oſnabruck, the French put a ſmall garriſon into it, and one alſo into Hervorden to cover their communication; a conſiderable corps encamped at Coveldt, on the river Werra, where they had eſtabliſhed their bakeries; they alſo took poſſeſſion of Lubbeké, at the head of the moraſs of Minden, and a paſs through the hills. In order to diſturb this communication, Lieut. Gen. Dreves with ſome light troops, and the greateſt part of the garriſon of Bremen, marched upon Vecht, a ſmall poſt which the enemy held inveſted, and advanced to Oſnabruck which he took by aſſault, the ſame day that the Hereditary Prince detached from the army with about ſix thouſand men, forced the poſt of Lubbeké. He joined Dreves on the 29th, on the 30th was near Hervorden, and on the 31ſt placed himſelf at Quernum near Coveldt, with eleven battalions, eleven ſquadrons, and three of huſſars.

Camp at Hillé and Thonhauſen

To protect theſe movements, made in a ſituation ſo critical, Prince Ferdinand on the 29th, marched his army by its right to Hillé, placed that flank near the moraſs, and with its left approached Wangenheim, who remained behind Thonhauſen where he had thrown up conſiderable works. On the 30th, Lieut. Gen. Gilſæ,

Gilſæ, with three battalions and a detachment of cavalry, took poſt at Lubbeké—The piquets of the infantry and cavalry, were puſhed as forward as poſſible on the plain of Minden to give the earlieſt intelligence.—Orders where given that the generals ſhould reconnoitre the ground, and make themſelves maſters of the routes of the columns—The army was directed to be in readineſs to advance on the firſt notice of the enemy's being in motion, and to take up a given poſition on the plain, the right at the village of Hahlen, the left extending towards Wangenheim's corps, whoſe left touched the Weſer. In this ſituation, Prince Ferdinand was ready either to give battle to Contades if he advanced, or to aſſiſt the Hereditary Prince in his intended attack upon the Duc de Briſac at Coveldt. Both theſe fortunate events took place on the ſame day, the 1ſt of Auguſt.

Contades from the abſence of the Hereditary Prince, and from the extent of ground which the Britiſh army now occupied in its two camps of Hillé and Thonhauſen, thought he had an opportunity of attacking the latter to advantage. In the night of the 31ſt, Broglie repaſſed the Weſer; and the whole French army, conſiſting of ninety battalions and ninety-four ſquadrons, marched at midnight in nine columns, and was formed in order of battle about five next morning, on the plain of MINDEN; their center and left being nearly advanced to the poſition marked out, and intended for that of the king's army of forty-three battalions and fifty-eight ſquadrons.

March of the French army.

Although the troops had been ordered to be in readineſs to march at one in the morning, yet Prince Ferdinand and Wangenheim, not properly apprized of the enemy's movements, were not in motion before five o'clock—The right of the army however, advanced towards its ground; about half paſt ſeven the battle began; about nine the French gave way, and before ten they retired in the greateſt diſorder to their old camp, behind the moraſs; having loſt many cannon, ſtandards, colours, and near ſix thouſand men. The loſs on the ſide of the allies, did not amount to one thouſand five hundred men. The Britiſh infantry on this occaſion, high'y

BATTLE OF MINDEN.

highly diſtinguiſhed themſelves in withſtanding and repelling the repeated attacks of the enemy's cavalry, and the gallantry of the troops in general, ſeconding the wiſe diſpoſitions of their commander, obtained a moſt ſignal and brilliant victory, which would have been compleat indeed, had the cavalry as ordered, been led on with that rapidity, which the critical minute of ſucceſs required.

But what rendered this day the more deciſive in its conſequences, was the defeat, which at almoſt the ſame hour the Hereditary Prince gave the Duc de Briſſac, near COVELDT; and the deſtruction of the two bridges over the Werra. This effectually cut off the retreat of the French army upon Hervorden, which they had begun to make, till informed of the diſaſter by the ſhattered remains of Briſſac's corps, who were driven in upon them, and obliged them that ſame night to croſs the Weſer, and retire in the greateſt diſorder towards their magazines in Heſſe.

Action at COVELDT.

On the 2d Minden ſurrendered, and the Hereditary Prince with a conſiderable corps, followed the enemy; made ſeveral attacks upon them, took many priſoners, much baggage, and purſued them by Oldendorp, Haſtenbeck, Eimbeck, Gottingen, quite to the defiles of Munden which they paſſed on the 9th. All their detachments quitted the biſhopricks; D'Armentieres raiſed the blockade of Lipſtadt, which he was preparing to beſiege; ſent back his artillery to Weſel, and himſelf marched, after putting a ſtrong garriſon into Munſter, with the reſt of his corps towards Warburg. Contades' army was aſſembled on the 11th near Caſſel; and D'Armentieres, who joined him in that neighbourhood, was from thence poſted near Wolfshagen.

Retreat of the French.

Prince Ferdinand, after reſting his army ſome days at Minden, marched on the 4th to Coveldt, 5th to Hervorden, 6th to Bielefeldt, 8th to Stuckenbrock, and on the 9th to Paderborn. To oblige the enemy to quit Caſſel, where they ſeemed determined to make a ſtand; he marched on the 11th to Dalem; on the 13th he croſſed the defiles of Stadberg; and on the 17th encamped at Arolſen.

Movements of the armies.

This

This ſituation alarming the French for their communication with Franckfort, they marched on the 18th to Fritzlar; and on the 22d were encamped behind the Ohm, with D'Armentieres at Marburg, and Broglie's reſerve towards Ziegenhayn, from whence he afterwards fell back oppoſite to Wetter.

Prince Ferdinand advanced on the 19th to Corbach, 21ſt to Frankenberg, and on the 28th encamped at Oberwetter, after diſlodging the enemy, whoſe main army was encamped behind Amœneburg. Marechal D'Etrees arrived about this time to aſſiſt Contades; and D'Armentieres returned to the Lower Rhine to aſſemble the troops left in that country, and others who where on their march from France. The Marquis of GRANBY now commanded the Britiſh corps.

Progreſs of Prince Ferdinand.

Such were the immediate conſequences of the battle of Minden, aided by intrigue and diſunion in the French army, the want of ſupplies, and of a ſtrong well provided poſt on which to retire— The enemy were now conſiderably diminiſhed in their numbers, their hoſpitals and magazines were in the hands of the victors, diſcontents prevailed among them, while the moſt perfect confidence in the abilities of their commander reigned through the Britiſh army. Conqueſts ſo rapidly made, were as rapidly relinquiſhed; and Munſter, Marburg and Ziegenhayn, were the only acquiſitions of this year that remained in their hands, and of which it was neceſſary that Prince Ferdinand ſhould diſpoſſeſs them, in order to inſure winter quarters to his army.

Conſequences of the battle of Minden.

Still perſevering in his operations on the enemy's left, at the ſame time that the light troops acting towards the Fulda, incommoded their communication on the right; Prince Ferdinand by his movements on the Upper Lahn, obliged Contades to quit his poſition behind the Ohm; on the 4th of September, he fell back to Muntzlar, and on the 7th encamped near Gieſſen; the Saxon troops there left him to return towards their own country, where the advantages lately gained by the imperialiſts, gave them hopes of again repoſſeſſing it.

Retreat of the French.

Prince

Camp of Croſdorff.

Prince Ferdinand now inveſted and took Marburg, and on the 18th encamped at Croſdorff, oppoſite to the enemy at Klein Linnes. The Lahn ſeparated the two armies, who both began to ſend conſiderable detachments towards the Lower Rhine, to ſupport their reſpective operations on that ſide.

Imhoff, with a conſiderable corps had beſieged Munſter ſince the 24th of Auguſt, but was obliged to retire on the approach of D'Armentieres September 5th, who re-victualled the place, and marched back upon Weſel; but being joined by a conſiderable corps of cavalry from France, he again advanced, on the 24th encamped at Luynen, puſhed his light troops to Soeſt, threw further ſuccours into Munſter, and in the beginning of October fell back to Dorſten, where he waited for the troops which Contades was ſending to him.

Siege of Munſter.

Imhoff much ſtrengthned by detachments from the army, blockaded Munſter in the end of October; and having received further reinforcements and his heavy artillery, opened trenches on the 9th of November. D'Armentieres advanced to its relief on the 19th; but Imhoff, who covered the ſiege carried on by Count la Lippe, having deſtroyed the roads, ſecured the avenues, and thrown every impediment in his way, obliged him to retire again upon Dorſten; and on the 21ſt the garriſon ſurrendered.

Situation of the two armies on the Lahn.

The two armies ſtill remained in the ſame poſition on the Lahn, much occupied and finding great difficulties in procuring forage and ſubſiſtence. The cavalry was ſent into cantonments, contiguous to their poſitions; but the infantry remained encamped, hutted, and the whole in a conſtant ſtate of alertneſs. The Saxons together with the army of the empire, were placed in the cities of the Mayn from Hanau to beyond Wurtzburg. About this time alſo, ten thouſand Wirtembergers taken into the pay of France, were ordered to march and make a diverſion towards Heſſe; they arrived at FULDA on the 21ſt of November, where they cantoned, occupied Hirſchfeldt and Vacha with their light troops, and their left was covered by the French poſts of Lauterbach,

terbach and Herbſtein. In this ſituation, they remained till the end of the month, raiſing contributions, and cutting off ſupplies of all kinds, which the countries on the Fulda had hitherto afforded to the allied army.

Defeat of the Wirtembergers at FULDA.

As it was neceſſary to diſlodge ſuch troubleſome neighbours, the Hereditary Prince, with a conſiderable corps marched from Marburg on the 28th; on the 29th he forced the French light troops from Lauterbach, and continuing his march, on the 30th in the morning, he ſurprized the Wirtembergers diſperſed in their cantonments, drove them from Fulda with great loſs, obliged them to quit the country, and to fall back upon the Mayn in the utmoſt diſorder.

Cantonment of the French.

The Hereditary Prince returning from Fulda, was on the 3d and 4th of December at the ſources of the Ohm, on the left flank of the French army. This poſition, and the lateneſs of the ſeaſon, induced BROGLIE who for a month paſt had commanded, to march back upon Friedberg, and canton his troops in that neighbourhood, leaving St. Germain with an advanced corps at Butzbach, and a garriſon of two thouſand men in Gieſſen.

March of the Hereditary Prince to Saxony.

Prince Ferdinand, who ſtill kept his camp of Croſdorff, now ſent ſeveral detachments acroſs the Lahn, and formed the blockade of Gieſſen, but could not undertake the ſiege, being obliged in conſequence of the unfortunate affair of *Maxen* to detach a very large corps under the Hereditary Prince; he marched about the 8th, and ſurmounting every obſtacle the army of the empire could throw in his way, croſſed Thuringia, and joined the KING of PRUSSIA at Freyberg, near Dreſden, on the 28th.

Cloſe of the campaign.

On the march of the Hereditary Prince, *Broglie* now made a Marechal of France, advanced with his army, and putting the Wirtembergers in motion on his right, and a detachment from D'Armentieres on his left upon the Upper Lahn, he hoped to oblige Prince Ferdinand to quit his camp of Croſdorff—The poſts of Klein Linnes and Langhorn were attacked on the 22d, on the 25th the blockade of Gieſſen was raiſed, and on the 27th the

allied army aſſembled and lay au Bivouac.—But Broglie finding it impoſſible, from the rigour of the weather, to continue his operations with any proſpect of ſucceſs, fell back to Friedberg on the 28th.

Prince Ferdinand, who notwithſtanding the remarkable ſeverity of the ſeaſon, had ſo long perſevered in his poſition of CROSDORFF, poſſibly from the neceſſity of aiding the Pruſſian operations in Saxony; broke up his camp on the 3d of January, cantoned his troops for ſome days round Marburg, and on the 7th proceeded through Heſſe. Both armies now ſeparated, and remaining in poſſeſſion of the ſame country and poſts as laſt year, took up the ſame general winter quarters. The Hereditary Prince returned alſo from Saxony, and cantoned in Heſſe and on the Fulda.

Winter quarters.

1760.

The winter paſſed without any very conſiderable event taking place—But the enemy, who were now commanded by the Marechal de BROGLIE, determined to exert every nerve, and greatly reinforced in numbers, being expected again to make their chief efforts through HESSE, Prince FERDINAND prepared to prevent their re-entering that country, and to oppoſe them at the paſſage of the river Ohm.—The *poſition* on the Ohm—viz. behind Homburg, Schweinſburg, Kirchain, with a ſtrong corps on the right at Wetter, on the Lahn, together with the poſſeſſion of Marburg, effectually covers the two entries from the Mayn into the Lower Heſſe, can hardly be turned on the flanks, and is difficult to be forced in front—It was intended to be poſſeſſed at the opening of this campaign; was occupied by the Britiſh army in March 1761, to cover the ſiege of Caſſel; and again in October 1762, at the time the peace took place.

Poſition on the Ohm.

Having left general Sporken in the country of Munſter, to face St. Germain, who commanded a conſiderable army of thirty-two battalions and thirty-two ſquadrons, beſides light troops, on the Lower Rhine; Prince Ferdinand early advanced a ſtrong corps upon Fulda, Homburg, and Marburg, and with the body of the army encamped

Camp of Wavern, 20th of May to 22d June.

encamped on the 20th of May near Fritzlar, within three marches of the Ohm; that the forage of the country might be the longer preſerved, and the poſition the more eaſily maintained. The German troops had been much augmented, ſeven battalions and eight ſquadrons had arrived from England, and farther reinforcements were daily expected, ſo that the eſtabliſhment of the army this year amounted to ninety thouſand men.

But Broglie having with great ſecreſy aſſembled his ſuperior army of one hundred and eighteen battalions and one hundred and ſixteen ſquadrons, beſides light troops, round Gieſſen; advanced, and on the 24th of June forced the paſſages of the Ohm at Homburg, before Prince Ferdinand, who had marched from Wavern, could arrive there; drove in his advanced corps, commanded by the Hereditary Prince, and Imhoff who never ſerved after this period; obliged him to retire to Ziegenhayn; took Marburg; and then moving rapidly on the 7th of July to his left, was joined by St. Germain on the heights of *Corbach*, on the 10th, where he that day gained a conſiderable advantage over the Hereditary Prince, ſupported by the head of the army. The ſtrong poſition of *Saxenhauſen*, which Prince Ferdinand immediately ſaw and occupied, after failing in that of *Corbach*, prevented the enemy for ſome time from entering Lower Heſſe, or the country of Paderborn, which were now their objects, and nearly open to them.

Broglie paſſes the Ohm —Affair of CORBACH, 10th July.

While ſuch was the ſituation of the armies at Corbach and Saxenhauſen, M. de Broglie, in order to maſk Ziegenhayn, which we ſtill poſſeſſed, and to cover his communication with Marburg and Gieſſen, from whence he drew his ſupplies, had left five battalions and the corps of Berchini, horſe and foot, encamped at *Emſdorff*, their left to the village and the wood; their right extending into the open country.——Prince Ferdinand, informed of the poſition of this corps, determined to attack it, although ſo far removed. On the 14th ſix battalions of the army marched, and next morning early, the Hereditary Prince aſſembled at Zweſten beyond Fritzlar, thoſe ſix battalions, Luckner's huſſars, a ſquadron of Freytag's chaſſeurs, and ELLIOT's

Poſition at Corbach and Saxenhuſen.

regiment of ſix hundred men newly arrived from England, and by forced marches brought to the rendezvous. That evening this corps marched to Ziegenhayn, and next morning about eleven arrived in front of Speckwinckel, where they formed under cover of a riſing ground about two miles from the enemy, who had no idea of their danger, and were prevented from diſcovering it by the advanced parties of chaſſeurs, which were poſted in the front for that purpoſe early in the morning.

Affair of Emsdorff, 16th July.

About twelve the Hereditary Prince, taking five battalions and a body of chaſſeurs, marched to the right, made a conſiderable detour acroſs the woods and hills by the village of Wolfſkulen to gain the enemy's left; while Luckner with the cavalry and one battalion, remained in the front of Speckwinckel, to engage their attention. —About two the Hereditary Prince came out of the wood, formed, and attacked the enemy's left, who were completely ſurprized, being in the act of delivering their bread, and had only time to place two battalions on that flank—On the firſt firing Luckner advanced on their right where their cavalry was placed; little reſiſtance was made; the whole went off through the woods: baggage, tents, and artillery were all taken, with ſome priſoners, and the cavalry was purſued and completely diſperſed.

In the mean time the enemy's infantry being, by the poſition of the Hereditary Prince, cut off from the direct road to Marburg, collected together, retired through the wood upon Langſtein, and meant to have proceeded to Kirchain, there to have paſſed the Ohm. But Eliott's regiment having in the courſe of purſuing the cavalry, already placed themſelves on that route, this infantry was obliged to change its intention, and by marching through Langſtein upon Nider Klein endeavoured to gain the heights of Homburg. Near Langſtein their rear was attacked by Eliott's, and ſome priſoners made; the column however proceeded ſlowly through intricate ground, while the Hereditary Prince, who found his infantry too much fatigued to follow, made a circuit at the head of Eliott's and the horſe chaſſeurs only, to the right by Blaſdorff, and came up with the enemy near Nider Klein, who after giving a very deſtructive fire were attacked

Attack and ſurrender of the enemy.

in

in ſeveral places, broke, and about five hundred made priſoners.—The remainder of their column ſtill perſevering in their endeavour to gain a wood about a quarter of a mile diſtant, which would have effectually ſheltered them, the regiment again prepared to renew the attack, and had advanced within two hundred yards for that purpoſe, when a parley was beat, and the whole ſurrendered about five in the evening: Mr. de Glaubitz who commanded, about two thouſand men and officers, and ſix pieces of cannon, were taken.——Our loſs in killed and wounded conſiſted of one hundred and eighty-ſix men and one hundred and eighty-one horſes, of which one hundred and twenty-four men and one hundred and ſixty-eight horſes belonged to Eliott's, who on this occaſion had brought forward about five hundred men.

The whole merit of the event of this action was due to ELIOTT's regiment commanded by Major *Erſkine*, which newly raiſed, diſembarked, and proceeding to join the army, was ordered when on the other ſide of Caſſel upon this ſervice. After an almoſt uninterrupted march of three days and nights, and when the infantry, exhauſted with fatigue, were unable to follow; it continued the purſuit, and under the direction of the Hereditary Prince, attacked, broke, aſtoniſhed the enemy, and obliged that great body of infantry to ſurrender.

The affair of *Emſdorff* however honourable for thoſe concerned, was not of ſufficient magnitude to influence the operations of the two principal armies.—The ſuperiority of Broglie allowed him to detach on both flanks of his adverſary, who after maintaining in the moſt wonderful manner the accidental poſition of *Saxenhauſen* for above a fortnight, was at length obliged to relinquiſh it, and to fall back upon Caſſel.—In full expectation of forcing the Britiſh army over the Weſer, and into Hanover, he detached Du Muy who now commanded St. Germain's corps of thirty thouſand men, acroſs the Dimel to *Warburg*, ſtill more to circumſcribe us on the right.

Prince Ferdinand falls back to Caſſel.

Prince Ferdinand ſenſible of the danger of being cut off from the biſhopricks and confined in a narrow ſpace, ſaw there was no farther time to be loſt in extricating himſelf; he marched in the evening

evening of the 30th by his left towards Caſſel; but as ſoon as it was dark, his columns changed their direction, moved to the right, croſſed the Dimel, and near Liebenau joined the Hereditary Prince and Sporken who had been previouſly ſent forward with a large corps, and were deſtined to begin the battle and turn the left of the enemy.—The whole marched on in five columns, a foggy morning favoured the approach of the army, and about mid-day of the 31ſt, Du Muy, formed on the heights of Warburg, unſupported by Broglie, and not imagining he had ſo great a force to deal with, was attacked and defeated: with the loſs of ſeveral cannon and three thouſand men, he was driven over the Dimel and obliged to fall back upon Broglie, who when too late was moving from Caſſel to his aſſiſtance.

Battle of WARBURG, 31ſt of July.

This great advantage, and the ſtrength of the extenſive poſition which Prince Ferdinand now occupied behind the *Dimel*, enabled him to cover the biſhopricks of Munſter, Paderborn, and Oſnabruck of which he remained in poſſeſſion, whoſe communication with Holland and the ſea was ſo eſſential to his ſubſiſtence, and whoſe preſervation he was determined never to loſe ſight of. *Hanover* remained protected by the difficulties of the country, the woody mountains of the Hartz, and a ſmall corps under Kilmanſegge and Wangenheim which had evacuated Caſſel and Gottingen, and was afterwards poſted on that ſide of the Weſer at Uſlar during the remainder of the ſummer.

Poſition of the Dimel.

Marechal de Broglie having ſeen the danger of too rapid an advance, and that ſolid eſtabliſhments alone could ſecure him the poſſeſſion of the country he had acquired; inſtead of endeavouring to graſp at greater advantages, and ſtill farther to puſh his ſucceſs, turned his whole attention and arrangements towards the beginning of autumn, to the fortifying of Caſſel and Marburg, as points by which together with Ziegenhayn and Gieſſen he meant to hold his preſent poſſeſſions, and to keep up his communication with the Mayn.

Deſigns of Broglie.

Prince Ferdinand who had truſted that the enemy, as in former years, would be obliged in the winter to evacuate Heſſe, and again to return to the Mayn and the Rhine; on finding this change of ſyſtem,

endeavoured

endeavoured by every means in his power to retard its execution and prevent its taking place. Although he could not directly attack Caſſel, and impede theſe operations, he hoped to effect it by a powerful diverſion, and towards the end of September he gradually detached a very large part of his army to aſſemble on the Lower Rhine, which the enemy had left totally unguarded.—The light troops croſſed that river, and ſcoured the whole country beyond it; the Hereditary Prince took the command; *Weſel*, which was garriſoned by one thouſand men only, was inveſted; battering cannon were ordered up from Munſter, C. la Lippe had the conduct of the ſiege, a bridge of boats was eſtabliſhed immediately below the town, Cleves and Rhinberg were occupied by the light troops, and intrenchments were thrown up on the oppoſite ſhore to Weſel. The undertaking however exceeded our force, although forty-ſeven battalions and thirty-two ſquadrons marched and were deſtined for the enterprize; the difficulty of tranſporting artillery and ſtores prevented our making any great progreſs before the town, and the extent of the operation proved to be beyond our ability.

Siege of Weſel.

Lieut. Gen. de Caſtries was now aſſembling an army about Cologne, compoſed of troops from France, and of large detachments ſucceſſively ſent from M. de Broglie with great expedition acroſs the Weſtphalian mountains. On the 13th of October he was at Nuys with thirty-two battalions and thirty-ſix ſquadrons, and ſtill expected conſiderable reinforcements, but without waiting for theſe, on the 14th he advanced to Meurs, and with his van-guard attacked and carried Rhinberg.

Advance of De Caſtries' army.

It now became neceſſary for the Hereditary Prince, either to relinquiſh the enterprize, or by defeating De Caſtries, prevent his ſuccouring the town: he therefore marched from before Weſel, about midnight of the 14th, croſſed the Rhine in the morning, and on the 15th aſſembled a corps of twenty-one battalions and twenty ſquadrons, amounting to near ten thouſand men, at Oſſenberg near Rhinberg, behind which latter place the enemy were encamped with their left extending oppoſite to Cloſter camp, and the old unnavigable canal which reaches from the Rhine to the

Hereditary Prince croſſes the Rhine to attack the enemy.

the Maeſe, immediately in their front. Having previouſly reconnoitered their poſition, he determined that night to attack their left; therefore, after leaving a ſmall corps to watch Rhinberg, and the movements on their right, he marched at eight o'clock in one column, made a conſiderable circuit, arrived on Fiſcher's corps poſted round CLOSTER CAMP, diſperſed them, paſſed the convent, croſſed the canal (which is every where choaked up with mud and water) over a narrow bridge which the enemy had prepared for their own accommodation, and advanced along a ſmall heath to the village of Camperbroeck and line of wood and incloſures, behind which the enemy were encamped, and who were now alarmed and prepared for their defence.

BATTLE OF CLOSTER CAMP. Oct. 16th.

The action began long before day, and for ſeveral hours ſucceſſive attacks were made by the infantry; but the nature of the ground on which we ſtood, preventing our extenſion to either flank, it became impoſſible to force ſo ſuperior an enemy at his center, which he could conſtantly ſupport and relieve. About nine o'clock of the 16th our whole infantry totally exhauſted, and having expended their ammunition, gave way and retired in diſorder towards the canal, followed by the regiment of Normandie of three battalions, which advanced in perfect order and had not been engaged. In this critical ſituation, while the German cavalry alſo was retiring, the Hereditary Prince ordered Eliott's brigade of Britiſh cavalry (1ſt, 6th and 10th dragoons) to charge the enemy; they broke them, drove them into the wood, made near three hundred priſoners with two pieces of cannon, gave time for paſſing the canal, and then themſelves alſo croſſed it, protected by a brigade of Britiſh infantry which had formed the reſerve, remained near Cloſter Camp, was now come up and lined the banks of the canal. This effort effectually checked the purſuit of the enemy; the army re-aſſembled ſome miles off on the heights of Alpen, and from thence marched towards their bridge on the Rhine. Our loſs was conſiderable in proportion to our numbers, and fell heavy on the Britiſh troops; that of the enemy was ſtill greater, amounting at leaſt to three thouſand men. On this occaſion

caſion, we experienced the uncertainty which ſo often attends night attacks however well planned, our guides miſled us; for inſtead of croſſing the canal where we did, and thereby falling in upon the enemy's center; had we turned to the right cloſe to the convent, and followed the road which led to Meurs, it would neceſſarily have brought us on the left flank of their cavalry and of their whole army. The conſequences that would have flowed from ſuch a ſituation, are hardly to be doubted; they muſt have crowned with ſucceſs the gallantry and exertions of the troops, and of our commander who was here wounded.

When we arrived in the evening at the Rhine, we found that our bridge did not exiſt; for the waters having riſen, it had become neceſſary to remove it at the very inſtant of the battle, and every exertion was now making to reſtore it over a river ſo rapid, and near one thouſand feet broad. In this critical ſituation, exhauſted with fatigue, ill ſupplied with ammunition, and having an imperfect communication with the reſt of the army; the troops lay upon their arms that night and next day, behind an old Landwehr which here cut off a great bend of the Rhine, and to which the enemy advanced in force, and now threatened to attack us. Our bridge being ready, about two in the morning of the 18th we began to repaſs the Rhine, the whole had croſſed it by nine, our rear from the precautions taken ſuffered little, nor on that or the preceding day, had we felt all the exertion that might have been expected from a ſuperior and ſucceſsful army.

Army repaſſes the Rhine and raiſes the ſiege.

The ſiege having been raiſed on the loſs of the battle, the artillery was ſent back towards Munſter; Kilmanſegge with ſeventeen battalions and ten ſquadrons returned to the Dimel; and the Hereditary Prince with thirty battalions and twenty-two ſquadrons marched as ſoon as the paſſage of the river was compleated to Bruynen and Schermbeck, where he remained for ſome days to cover the march of the artillery, and on the 26th fell back to Klein Reckum. The enemy attempted no purſuit, being ſatisfied with having obtained their point in the relief of Weſel. In this

Camp of Klein Reckum.

camp of Klein Reckum, and without any material occurrence happening, the troops remained till the middle of December, when they went into winter quarters in the country of Munſter.

Had this enterprize on the Lower Rhine proved ſucceſsful, it might have transferred the ſeat of war into an enemy's country, and would undoubtedly have prevented Broglie from eſtabliſhing himſelf in Heſſe; but the loſs of the battle of Campen, and the raiſing of the ſiege of Weſel, put an end to all expectation from that quarter. While this event was depending, except an incurſion which the enemy made into the country of Halberſtadt, nothing very material had paſſed between the two principal armies. But Broglie now determined to maintain *Gottingen* alſo, worked hard to put it in a ſtate of defence, furniſhed it with proviſions and a large garriſon, and then drew back the corps which he had in that neighbourhood to the Weſer and the Werra. Prince Ferdinand was ſtill in hopes, that he could diſlodge the enemy from this advanced point. He therefore quitted the exhauſted poſition of the Dimel, where with difficulty he had ſubſiſted till this time, croſſed the Weſer, and on the 27th of November blockaded Gottingen; but the very late ſeaſon of the year ſoon obliged him to relinquiſh this deſign, and to leave the enemy in poſſeſſion of all their conqueſts.

Blockade of Gottingen.

Both armies now ſeparated about the 10th of December, and went into *winter* quarters—The Hereditary Prince with twenty-two battalions and eighteen ſquadrons in the country of Munſter; Sporken with twenty battalions and eighteen ſquadrons towards Duderſtadt and Hildeſheim covering Hanover; the body of the army was placed in the biſhopricks of Paderborn and Oſnabruck, and poſts on the Dimel were ſtill preſerved by the light troops. As to the French, the protracted operations of the campaign had ſo exhauſted the country of Lower *Heſſe*, that Marechal de Broglie, after leaving ſtrong garriſons in Caſſel and Gottingen, could only place an inconſiderable portion of his army in it, the reſt he quartered in a very extended manner on the Frontiers of Saxony, Upper Heſſe, Fulda, and on the Mayn and Rhine.

Winter quarters.

1761.

1761.

In this ſituation, the armies remained for two months; and the French were employed with great induſtry in forming and collecting magazines for future operations—But Prince FERDINAND, who foreſaw the great advantages which their preſent poſition gave them in opening the campaign, and who was in hopes that they were not immoveably fixed in their new eſtabliſhments, felt the neceſſity of uſing every effort to diſlodge them; and notwithſtanding the ſhattered ſtate of his troops, who had ſo long kept the field; ſecretly prepared and arranged every thing needful for the attempt.

Prince Ferdinand's preparations.

For this purpoſe, in the beginning of February 1761, his whole army, which embraced the circle from the borders of Saxony to thoſe of Holland, was put in motion to unite and concentrate in the country of Heſſe—The body of it croſſed the Lower Dimel, and advanced upon Caſſel. The Hereditary Prince on the right from the biſhoprick of Munſter, marched by the Upper Dimel to Fritzlar, on the enemy's communication. Sporken on the left being joined by a large corps of Pruſſian cavalry, gained a conſiderable advantage over the enemy on the frontiers of Saxony; and in purſuing his progreſs, cut in upon the Fulda to the very center of their cantonments. Several other ſmall and intermediate corps, acted in conjunction and communication with theſe; and Munſter remained ſecured by the garriſons of that city and Lipſtadt.

Movements of the army towards Heſſe in February.

Marechal BROGLIE thus preſſed on all ſides, after ſtrengthning Caſſel, was obliged to abandon the whole country, and to retire with ſuch force as he could collect, upon Homburg, Hirſchfield, Fulda, Gieſſen, and finally upon Francfort; where in the poſition of Bergen, he ordered his army to aſſemble, and the troops from the Lower Rhine to march thither.

Broglie's retreat towards the Mayn.

In the mean time, the ſeveral corps of the allied army always advancing and approaching each other, puſhed and followed the enemy to the ſtrong poſition of Homburg on the Ohm; where they united on the 28th of February, and remained to cover the ſiege of *Caſſel*, which had been immediately begun under the direction of La Lippe Buckeburg—Marburg was poſſeſſed—The Hereditary Prince with a ſtrong corps was advanced towards Gieſſen—the light troops penetrated to the neighbourhood of Hanau and Dettingen—the enemy every where gave way, and ſuch had been their firſt conſternation and uncertainty, that Gottingen was for ſome hours evacuated, and the garriſon had begun its retreat.

General poſition of the army during the ſiege of Caſſel.

So far had this great operation proved ſucceſsful; but the debilitated ſtate of the army prevented its completion. From this reaſon, as well as from the unfavorableneſs of the ſeaſon, did the ſiege of Caſſel (on the taking of which alone the realizing of all our other advantages depended) linger on till the middle of March. At which time Marechal de Broglie, who had aſſembled a very ſuperior army in the neighbourhood of Francfort, rapidly advanced to our front, drove in the Hereditary Prince's corps with great loſs from Grunberg, and begun to extend to our left.

Advance of Broglie towards Caſſel.

Prince Ferdinand, who found his nominal army unequal to the defence of the ſtrong poſition of the Ohm; that he could no longer ſubſiſt it in this advanced ſituation; that after three weeks open trenches, no great progreſs was made at Caſſel; that he could not prevent the French moving to his left, and thereby relieving it; and that all proſpect of ſucceſs from perſeverance was now at an end; ordered the ſiege to be raiſed. After remaining with his army au Bivouac for three days behind the Ohm, in order to check the progreſs of the enemy; he retired on the 23d by Newſtadt, Treyſa, Wildungen, Fritzlar, Wolfshagen; and on the laſt day of March croſſed the Dimel, at the ſame time that the raiſing of the ſiege was perfectly compleated without any conſiderable loſs.

Retreat of Prince Ferdinand on the Dimel.

Broglie,

Broglie, who had gained ſome advantages in this retreat, preſſed it no farther than Fritzlar, and himſelf entered Caſſel on the 29th, ſatisfied with the credit of having thus relieved it. On the whole his conduct was judicious, ſhowed ſpirit and reſource, and was crowned with ſucceſs: The commandant Comte de Broglie, alſo acquired reputation from his defence. After this hard ſervice, the two armies immediately went into quarters of refreſhment—That of Prince Ferdinand (leaving the Dimel guarded) in the countries of Munſter, Paderborn, and Oſnabruck—That of Broglie returned on the Mayn and the Rhine.

Cantonment of the armies, 1ſt of April.

Was the whole of this *winter* campaign fully analiſed, it might perhaps be found not inferior in the conduct to the famous irruption of TURENNE into Alſace, when he forced the German army to repaſs the Rhine—The ſcene of operations was here in a more wide and extended country—The previous diſtribution of quarters, was made with a view to the ſubſequent event, and without alarming the enemy—The movements of the troops from the circumference of ſo great a circle, were connected, juſt, and wonderfully combined in their effect of diſlodging the enemy, who ſurprized and unprepared, could no where aſſemble in any of the ſtrong poſitions which Heſſia offers—The arrangements for the ſiege and for ſubſiſtence in that ſeaſon, were made with ſkill; nor did the army ever experience want, although ſo long acting in a very advanced ſituation, and in a country ſuppoſed to be exhauſted—Much reſource was certainly found from the French magazines which fell into our poſſeſſion—The ſervice was ſevere; for during the months of February and March the movements of the troops were unremitting, ſometimes made in cantonments, but often under canvas or the open air—When perſeverance had done its utmoſt, and it became neceſſary to retire, although ſome of the rear corps received checks, yet the ſiege was raiſed, and the

Remarks on this expedition.

the army fell back without any brilliant advantage on the ſide of a ſuperior enemy.

The *object* of this expedition was great and worthy of trial; and had it been ſucceſsful, might have given a final turn to the war. If Caſſel fell, Gottingen followed of courſe, and twelve thouſand men of the beſt troops of France were priſoners; nor would the advantages have been confined to the repoſſeſſion of Heſſe—The failure alone aroſe from the weak ſtate of the army, which proved unequal to the execution of this undertaking; and from ſome peculiar accidents which could not be foreſeen, and turned out unfavourable. The other calculations of the general were juſt; for three weeks of open and undiſturbed trenches, ought in any other caſe to have decided the fate of Caſſel, and the fortune of the war.

Great objects in view.

The deſtruction of the French magazines in Heſſe, and the other conſequences of the SPRING EXPEDITION, which had extended its effects as far as the Mayn, retarded the opening of the campaign of 1761 on that ſide, and determined the efforts of the enemy towards the countries of Paderborn and Munſter, where the taking of LIPSTADT became their principal object. In the beginning of June, the army on the Lower Rhine, commanded by Marechal de Soubiſe, was in motion to aſſemble being greatly reinforced from France, although Broglie's army had not begun to collect in Heſſe, the country having been entirely exhauſted, and the green forage as yet affording no ſubſiſtence.

This obliged Prince Ferdinand to encamp a corps under Lieut. Gen. Conway at Soeſt, on the 12th of June, from whence Lieut. Gen. Howard with four battalions and three ſquadrons, was detached on the 15th to Ham to ſecure that place, and to communicate with the Hereditary Prince, who about this time formed his camp at Nottlen, and covered the country of Munſter—The reſt of the army remained cantoned in the biſhopricks of Paderborn and

Situation of the Britiſh army the beginning of June.

and Munſter, ready to march. Hanover was protected by light troops and a ſmall corps under Luckner.

Soubiſe's army, conſiſting of one hundred and nine battalions and one hundred and eight ſquadrons, croſſed the Rhine at Weſel the 14th and encamped on the 18th at Dormundt—This occaſioned the Hereditary Prince to quit his poſition at Nottlen on the 19th and approach the Lippe: he encamped on the heights oppoſite Ham on the 21ſt—The body of the army marched from their cantonments, and on the 19th encamped at Paderborn, as did Sporken's corps the ſame day on the Dimel, near Warburg.—The eſtabliſhment of the armies now conſiſted of, but the French were more than proportionally complete.

Soubiſe's army.

Camp at Paderborn, June 19th.

French.

Infantry -	105,000	109 battalions	Soubiſe's army	Including their light troops, communications, and garriſons in Germany.
Cavalry -	26,000	108 ſquadrons		
Light troops	10,000	88 battalions	Broglie's army	
		89 ſquadrons		
	141,000			

Britiſh.

Infantry -	68,500	97 regular battalions, including grenadiers.
Cavalry -	15,160	5 battalions of Hanoverian militia.
lt. troops Cavalry	3,000	a large body Chaſſeurs and irregular infantry.
lt. troops Infantry	5,000	84 ſquadrons of cavalry.
		21 ſquadrons of Huſſars.
	91,160	3 ſquadrons Britiſh legion.
		mounted Chaſſeurs, a conſiderable body.

Carriages of all kinds, about - 5,000 } beſides country carriages,
Horſes of all kinds, about - 58,000 } impreſſed and employed.
The daily conſumption of forage, little ſhort of 70,000 rations.

At

At this time, the ſituation of the different corps which compoſed the BRITISH army, was as follows, viz.

Situation of the army the middle of June.

	Bat.	Squad.	Light Troops.
Luckner upon the Weſer with	4	4	Hanoverian chaſſeurs, Brunſwick huſſars, Stockhauſen's corps.
Sporken upon the Dimel -	15	16	Heſſian chaſſeurs.
Army at Paderborn -	28	14	
Wangenheim near Buren -	7	4	1 battalion and 1 ſquadron of the legion, 4 ſquadrons Brunſwick huſſars.
Conway at Soeſt - -	8	7	5 ſquadrons Pruſſian huſſars.
Howard at Ham - -	4	3	
Hereditary Prince at Nottlen -	26	24	4 ſquadrons Heſſian Huſſars, Scheiters, Trembachs, 2 battalions of the legion.
Munſter, Lipſtadt, Hameln Rinteln, Minden garriſoned	5	2	Excluſive of 5 battalions Hanoverian milice, and 2 battalions 2 ſquadrons of the legion.
	97	84	

A. Camp at Stadt Geſeke.

In order to ſtop the further operations of the enemy, the army marched on the 21ſt of June from Paderborn to Stadt Geſeke in ſix columns.—On the 22d the Hereditary Prince's advanced poſts at Lunen, Unna, and Kamen, were forced in by Conde's reſerve, which

B. Camp at Alt Geſeke.

encamped the 23d at Unna; on which day our army moved forward from Stadt to Alt Geſeke.

Plates { 18. 19.

On the 24th at one in the morning the army marched in ſix columns to Soeſt where it encamped, and was joined by Conway's corps—Soubiſe's army moved forward this day to Unna. On the 25th Lord Granby with ſix battalions and ſix ſquadrons was advanced to Wippringhuſen; Howard marched to Kirk Denkeren;

C. Camp at Soeſt.

and the Hereditary Prince croſſed the Lippe and encamped at Ham. On the 26th Howard with his corps joined Lord Granby, and the Hereditary Prince occupied the heights of Kirch Denkeren, leaving Kilmanſegge with eight battalions, and four ſquadrons to cover Ham. On the 27th at night the caſtle of Werle garriſoned by a detachment of our infantry was attacked, but the enemy were repulſed. In the evening Lord Granby's corps marched, and lay under arms behind Rhunne.

On

On the 28th at one in the morning the army marched in ſix columns, and encamped at Werle, where the Hereditary Prince joined on the right—The enemy abandoned Neheim on the Roer, (which we took poſſeſſion of,) and drew in all their advanced poſts nearer to the ſtrong camp of Unna, which they now occupied. D. Camp at Werle.

On the 29th at four in the morning, the army marched from the right in nine columns.

				Batts.	Squads.	
H. Prince	1ſt, 2d	—		18	22	
Army.	3d	—	—	6	7	
	4th	—	—	1	0	Britiſh artillery.
	5th	—	—	6	7	
	6th	—	—	8	6	
	7th	—	—	1	0	Hanoverian artil.
	8th	—	—	9	5	
Ld. Granby.	9th	—	—	10	9	
				59	56	

Diſpoſition of march to Lunderen.

The light troops and piquets, formed the advanced guards of the columns, and the whole was in expectation, and readineſs to meet the enemy, and in an inſtant to form in line of battle; but Soubiſe did not move from his camp of Unna—Condé's reſerve which had occupied the heights of Oſt Buren, was therefore driven in upon the enemy's army, and the camp eſtabliſhed at Lunderen. Beckwith's brigade took poſt at Cloſter Sheide, and the next day joined on the left of Lord Granby. E. Camp at Lunderen.

On the 30th in the morning Kilmanſegge's corps from Ham, appeared on the heights of Kamen—The enemy retired the right of their camp, and cannonaded ours with little effect—This and the following day, Prince Ferdinand was employed in reconnoitring

H.

Soubiſe's camp at Unna.

their ſituation which was found exceedingly ſtrong: The right flank covered by the river Roer, beyond which lies the mountainous, woody and barren dutchy of Weſtphalia; the left by Unna, ſeveral marſhy rivulets, and a deep country betwixt, and the Lippe; the front was defended by a line of redoubts and entrenchments thrown up with incredible labour, and before which ran a deep ravine, wooded on each ſide, and paſſable only in three places.

In this ſituation it appeared to be Soubiſe's intention to wait the approach of Broglie, to cover the march of the heavy artillery from Weſel, and to make every neceſſary preparation for the ſiege of Lipſtadt, which was to be the great object of their joint operations, but for which purpoſe a ſure communication with the Lower Rhine was abſolutely neceſſary, as from thence the principal ſupplies for both armies muſt be drawn.

The irreſolution and timidity apparent in Soubiſe's conduct confirmed Prince Ferdinand in his deſign to attempt ſome coup d'eclat before the enemy could be ſupported by Broglie who was now within five marches of us, and who aſſembling his army of eighty-eight battalions and eighty-nine ſquadrons, had croſſed the Dimel on the 29th and obliged Sporken to retire upon Blomberg.—Wangenheim alſo fell back towards Lipſtadt July 2d.

Preparations to attack Soubiſe.

There was now no time to be loſt—The enemy was unattackable in front and on either flank, their rear alone might be acceſſible, and it was eſſential to diſlodge them from this ſtrong poſt, before the junction of their armies was effected near this point, and that their combined operations ſhould oblige Prince Ferdinand to paſs the Lippe—The troops were therefore ſupplied with bread for ſeveral days, their waggons returned to Lipſtadt, and as ſoon as it was dark the tents were ſtruck, and ſent with the baggage to Ham. At eleven at night of the 5th of July the army marched from, and to the right in five columns as encamped, viz.

The

The 1ſt or left column, compoſed of the infantry of the 1ſt line.
2d — — infantry of the 2d line.
3d — — line of cavalry.
4th, 5th — — artillery.

Diſpoſition of march to Dortmundt.

The Hereditary Prince's corps which was joined by Kilmanſegge at Kamen, formed the van-guard of the three left columns of the army, and Lord Granby's corps formed the rear-guard in like order.

About day break the rear-guard had paſſed Lunderen, and got into the incloſed country, without any conſiderable annoyance from the enemy; but an uncommon heavy rain, which fell in the night rendered the routes almoſt impaſſable, and prevented the columns arriving on the heights of Kamen before mid-day; in this ſituation we were oppoſite the flank of Soubiſe, who as yet had made no movement, imagining we were going off towards Ham. About two leagues beyond Kamen, the columns halted for ſome time, with a view of directing them to the open ground within three miles of the enemy's rear, which we had now gained, and who by this time were exceedingly alarmed, and had ſtruck their camp. But the difficulties of the country, and the abſence of the artillery, determined that the columns ſhould reſume their march upon Dortmundt, where the front arrived about eight at night. The rear however and the piquets, which flanked the march of the columns on the left, and repulſed an attack of the enemy on a temporary poſt of ours eſtabliſhed at Waſſer Kurle, did not get up till ten next morning, nor was all the artillery arrived before mid-day of the 3d.—This march was lengthened at leaſt twelve hours by the unlucky rains which had fallen, and prevented our immediately advancing on the enemy.

March to Dortmundt, and difficulties.

The tents were now ordered up, and the army encamped at Dortmundt on the 3d; the Hereditary Prince being advanced two miles in front, and Lord Granby's corps, which had remained the night of the 2d near Meidel, encamped alſo at Lanſtrup. The enemy, who on the 3d had altered their encampment and now faced

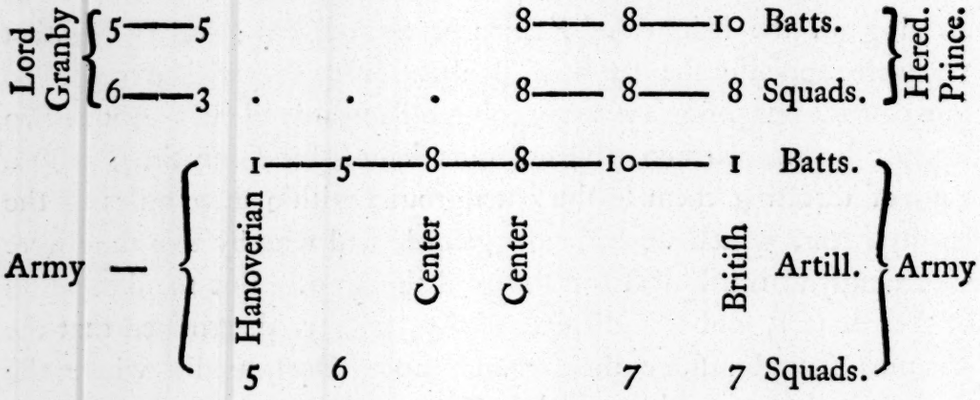
F.

Camp at Dortmundt.

towards us, about ſix in the evening ſtruck their tents and marched upon Werle, not venturing to await us in their poſition of Unna, which preſented a camp ſufficiently ſtrong to the Dortmundt Front, and to diſlodge them from which would have much puzzled us, had they taken ſuch a reſolution. Perhaps the interruption of their communication, and the difficulty of ſubſiſtence determined this retreat; whereas our communication with Luynen and Ham was ſtill preſerved.

On the 4th at one in the morning, the army now conſiſting of ſixty-nine battalions and fifty-five ſquadrons, advanced in ſix columns from the right, preceded by the vanguards.

Diſpoſition of march to Unna and Hemerden.



The noble routes which the enemy had already opened in advancing from Dortmundt, facilitated this march. About ſix we arrived in their camp of Unna, and ſaw their rear-guard on our former ground at Lunderen: the armies having thus exactly changed ſituations. The Hereditary Prince's corps puſhed forward, drove the enemy from hollow to hollow, and cannonaded them briſkly, till they formed under the protection of the ſtrong Landwehr, which extends from Buderick to the Roer. The number of deep hollow ways, with which this whole open and fertile country from Paderborn to Dortmundt is cut, and which are not apparent till on the very brink of them, prevented our cloſing with the enemy, and enabled them thus frequently to make a ſtand.

Soubiſe's

Soubiſe's army, now on their march to Soeſt, finding their rear-guard ſo warmly preſſed, came back and formed between the caſtle of Werle (which we ſtill poſſeſſed) and the woods. The heads of our columns advanced cloſe to the enemy, but finding them in poſſeſſion of the heights over the Roer, which we had endeavoured to gain, ſtrongly poſted, and ſuſtained by their whole army, we fell back at four o'clock and encamped at Hemerden.

Camp at Hemerden.

G.

At five o'clock on the morning of the 5th, the army marched to attack the enemy, in the ſame number of columns and diſpoſition of march as yeſterday: the Hereditary Prince and Kilmanſegge to attack on the right next the Roer, and lord Granby on the left at Budrick. The heads of the columns had advanced and halted within cannon ſhot, and a few were fired on each ſide, when the Duke ſent for the lieutenant generals, acquainted them that he found the enemy too ſtrongly poſted to be attacked, that they were formed behind the principal Landwehr, which he thought we had gained (for we were in poſſeſſion of one) and that he was therefore obliged to deſiſt from his original intention.

Attack of the enemy poſtponed.

This manœuvre however appears to have been a feint calculated to preſerve the idea of ſuperiority, and to try the countenance of the enemy, who might have been induced to abandon their preſent poſition, as they had before done that of Unna.—From the operations of yeſterday the Duke muſt have known their exact ſituation, which was now exceedingly ſtrong, as they had worked hard all night, and converted the Landwehr into an intrenchment which covered their whole front.

Reaſons.

About nine the army returned to their ground and encamped—The enemy ſtill remained au Bivouac, nor had they any regular camp formed ſince the 29th of June; ſuch was the panic that had ſtruck them, from the bold, rapid, and unexpected movements of the Britiſh army. In the evening Beckwith with four battalions, three ſquadrons, Eliott's, and ſix ſquadrons of Huſſars, took poſt at Borg and Budberg, on the enemy's right flank.

Situation of the enemy.

The

The enemy ſtill continued on the 6th fortifying their camp; but as Broglie was now advancing from Paderborn, and could ſoon act in conjunction with Soubiſe's army, it became neceſſary to quit our preſent expoſed ſituation and approach the Lippe, in order to preſerve our communication with Ham, from whence our ſupplies were drawn.——On the 7th therefore at two in the morning, the army marched with the greateſt circumſpection, by the left, in five columns, to the camp of Hillbeké.

March to the camp of Hilbeké.

L.

1ſt or right column,				compoſed of the infantry of the 1ſt line.
2d	—	—	—	infantry of the 2d line.
3d	—	—	—	cavalry.
4th 5th	—	—	—	artillery.

Lord Granby's corps formed the advanced guard of the three firſt columns: the Hereditary Prince's corps formed the rear-guard, and the piquets with cannon flanked the march. Sheidingen was occupied by Campbell's Highlanders, Eliott's, and the Huſſars.

When day broke, we found that the enemy alſo had marched off in the night in the greateſt ſilence, and were now paſt Rhunné on their way to Soeſt, to effect a junction with Broglie's army which was advancing upon Erwite, after leaving Prince Zavier's reſerve in the neighbourhood of Paderborn. In this manner were the two French armies drove in upon each other, and their direct intercourſe with the Lower Rhine thoroughly interrupted.

March of Soubiſe to Soeſt.

The BRITISH Army was now ſituated as follows.

Freytag with his chaſſeurs in the woods upon the Weſer, to interrupt the enemy's communications with Gottingen, and cover Hanover. Luckner with his ſmall corps watched Prince Zavier—Wangenheim had retired on the 5th under the cannon of Lipſtadt.—Sporken was advancing from Blomberg to Hertzfeld, where he arrived the 8th.—The army and Hereditary Prince occupied the heights of Lunderen and Wambeln—Ham was in the rear of the army, and thereby the communications with Lipſtadt and Munſter on the

Situation of the Britiſh army.

the other ſide of the Lippe were kept open, as from them our principal ſupplies were drawn.

On the 8th, Broglie arrived at Erwite—Sporken alſo encamped at Hertzfeld; and Howard was detached with four battalions, three ſquadrons of Eliott's, and five of Huſſars to cover Ham—The French armies thus united, could evidently not long remain inactive. Far removed from their magazines, and their communications precarious and of great extent, they were under the neceſſity of giving up the firſt and great object of the campaign, or of forcing Prince Ferdinand to paſs the Lippe.

Junction of the French armies.

K.

From the poſition of Broglie's army (which formed the right of the enemy) near the Lippe, from the enterprizing ſpirit of that general, and from the ſtrong reconnoitring parties that were puſhed daily along the great road from Lipſtadt towards Ham; it became neceſſary to croſs the Aas, extend our left, and occupy the heights of Kirch Denkeren, which was done between the 10th and 14th, by eighteen battalions and fourteen ſquadrons under Lord Granby and Wutgenau; the right of the army being proportionably thinned, but ſtill occupying the whole of the former poſition. Fleches, redoubts, and various field works were conſtructed at different points, along the whole front; bridges were laid acroſs the Aas; heavy baggage was ſent to Ham; every thing was kept in conſtant readineſs and expectation of an attack; and the advanced poſts of Budrick, Werle, Sheidengen, Meyericke, Welfert, Madena, Huſnehel, Nardel, Hiltrup, Heyntrup, were occupied by ſtrong detachments.

Diſpoſition made to receive them.

On the 13th, Soubiſe advanced and encamped between Cloſter Paradys and Rhunné; and on the 14th, all our advanced poſts on the right, beyond the Saltzbach, were drove in. Howard's brigade was therefore ordered to recroſs the Aas, and Wutgenau's corps to move from the left to Kirch Denkeren, as our right ſeemed to be immediately threatned.

Advance of Soubiſe's army.

P.

But

Attack of Broglie on the 15th at FELLINGHUSEN.

L.

But this proved to be only a feint—For on the 15th, Broglie marched early in the morning from his camp near Erwite in four columns, advanced between the Aas and the Lippe, drove in our light troops and out poſts, followed them, and before ſunſet arrived on the heights of Denkeren in front of Lord Granby, whoſe camp he cannonaded while the troops were forming; he then puſhed along the Ham road to the heath in the rear of FELLINGHUSEN; but was ſoon obliged to retire from the reſiſtance made in the wood and caſtle of Fellinghuſen, by a battalion of the legion and the Highlanders, and by the timely arrival of Wutgenau's corps from the right.

In this manner the night cloſed, the armies within muſquet ſhot, occaſionally keeping up a ſcattered fire, and ſeparated on our left by a ſingle incloſure and a Landwehr, of which we were in poſſeſſion. Soubiſe alſo, who had marched about mid-day, was formed in different corps behind the Saltzbach, in front of Conway and the Hereditary Prince, but made no attack in the courſe of the evening.

During the night, the Duke determined on reinforcing his left; different corps marched; the right was anew arranged; and before day light, the poſition of the armies was as follows.

Poſition of the armies on the 16th.

BRITISH.	Bat.	Sq.	Huſ
The Hereditary Prince behind the Saltzbach, between Hillbeck and Ellingſen, with — —	26	24	6
Conway, between Ellingſen and Hohenover, with	8	7	0
The body of the army on the heights of Kirch Denkeren, and between the Aas and the Lippe —	35	27	6

FRENCH.	Bat.	Sq.
Duvoyer near Unna, with	12	14
Dumeſnil near Budrick -	16	30
Soubiſe with the reſt of his army along the Saltzbach, between Werle and Cloſter Welſert.		
Broglie with his army in different lines and columns, between the Aas and the Lippe.		

At

At day break, Broglie renewed his attack, extending from the heights of Denkeren by Fellinghuſen to the Lippe, along an extent of about a mile; but ſuch were the difficulties and intricacy of the ground, and the gallant reſiſtance of our troops, that he made no impreſſion after repeated attempts; and at laſt about ten in the morning (on the arrival of ſix battalions and ſix ſquadrons detached from Sporken's corps, who had croſſed the Lippe at Hus Haren where bridges were eſtabliſhed) the enemy began to give way; nine pieces of cannon, and the four battalions of Rougé were taken with many others priſoners; the enemy were preſſed and followed to Heintrup, from whence the nature of the country favouring them, they retired upon Hoveſtadt and Oeſtinghuſen, without farther purſuit.

Attack of Broglie.

R.

While ſuch were the tranſactions on the left, Soubiſe meeting with many impediments in advancing, had attacked but faintly on the right, and had never been able to croſs the Saltzbach in any conſiderable force, nor to paſs through the village of Sheidingen; being prevented by the reſiſtance made in an old redoubt, gallantly defended by the piquets of the army. On Broglie's defeat, which he was immediately apprized of, he drew off, and retired to his camp at Paradys, from whence next day he fell back to Soeſt. After the battle, our tents and baggage were ordered up from Ham; the army was directed to repoſſeſs, and encamp on the ſame ground it occupied on the 15th; and additional works were alſo begun on the Dinkerberg.

Attack of Soubiſe.

R.

Although the poſition at FELLINGHUSEN was very extenſive, being ſeven miles from right to left; yet were the communications between the different parts of the army ſo well eſtabliſhed, the front ſo well covered by natural and artificial obſtacles, rendering the approach through an intricate country exceedingly difficult, that the columns of the enemy could not aſſiſt each other, or act in conjunction—Their efforts were reduced to certain points of attack, thoſe points were ſtrengthned, the ſituation of the allied army was every where commanding; a retreat

Nature of the poſition of Fellinghuſen.

was ſecured upon Ham a few miles in the rear, and the whole was ſo judiciouſly poſted and ſupported, that their attempts were repulſed with eaſe—Nor was there ever any conſiderable impreſſion made after the evening of the 15th, which was indeed a kind of ſurpriſe to which every army muſt be liable in a country like this, flat and incloſed; where a ſuperior enemy lying ſo near, could aſſemble unſeen behind his advanced poſts, and at once move forward in force to the attack.

Original intention of the enemy,

The enemy ſenſible of the difficulties they had to encounter, had agreed to have employed the 16th in forcing in our out poſts, eſtabliſhing themſelves along our whole front, gaining our right flank and rear, opening communications between their ſeveral columns; and on the 17th, to have made a general and extended attack with their ſuperior numbers. But the ardour and confidence of Broglie broke through this plan, before it could be put in execution in its ſeveral parts by Soubiſe, haſtned the ſubſequent defeat of the two armies, and occaſioned that want of concert, which was ſo apparent in the operations of that day, upon which Prince Ferdinand gained ſo memorable a victory.

not executed.

Importance of this poſition.

It is remarkable that this poſition of the Britiſh army (at leaſt the right of it) was the ſame occupied by Contades in the end of 1758, when he detached a conſiderable part of his army to reinforce Soubiſe in Heſſe, who was thereby enabled to defeat Oberg near Caſſel. Prince Ferdinand at that time marched from Munſter by Lipſtadt, Soeſt, and Werle, to attack Contades; but was obliged to return without venturing to effect his purpoſe, finding him too ſtrongly poſted. The ſtrength of this poſition ſeemed by degrees only to have been diſcovered, for ſeveral days the Dinkerberg was unoccupied; and had the enemy on the 9th, 10th or 11th, made the ſame rapid march which they did on the 15th, and gained poſſeſſion of it; Prince Ferdinand would poſſibly have been obliged to fall back on Ham, and to paſs the Lippe.

Such

Such was the event of the battle of FELLINGHUSEN; which effectually deranged the hopes and the ſchemes of an enemy, greatly ſuperior in numbers, although their loſs in men from local circumſtances was not very conſiderable—The jealouſy which ſubſiſted between the two generals, now openly broke out; each ſupported by his party, accuſed the other of precipitancy or delay; the court was appealed to, and the armies remained inactive till further orders were received.

Conſequences of the battle of Fellinghuſen.

The French armies having now only a mountainous intercourſe with the Lower Rhine, and drawing their ſupplies of bread from Caſſel and their ſcanty magazines in Heſſe, could not long remain together—Luckner alſo with a ſmall corps, had all this time hovered about their rear, in the country of Paderborn, and very much diſturbed their communications. On the 19th, Broglie fell back to Erwite, and Soubiſe to Soeſt; our advanced poſts were puſhed forward, and nothing conſiderable occurred for ſeveral days.

Difficulties of the enemy.

On the 25th, the French armies which had with difficulty ſubſiſted, now ſeparated—Broglie, who had undertaken for the future ſucceſs of the campaign, being reinforced from the other army with thirty-ſix battalions and fifty ſquadrons, marched back on Paderborn; and Soubiſe croſſed the Roer, entered the mountains of Weſtphalia, marched by Arenſberg, and with the remainder of his troops much ſhattered, again came out into the low country between Weſel and Dortmundt, where about ſix weeks before in a flouriſhing ſtate he had begun the campaign—The houſehold troops unequal to ſuch rude ſervice, were ſent into cantonment, and did not again appear in the field.

Their armies ſeparate and retire.

A new ſcene of operations, and in another country now took place—The Hereditary Prince with his corps was left near Werle to watch the motions of Soubiſe's army, and prevent his too ſoon iſſuing from the mountains; the army marched on the 27th, and advanced ſucceſſively,

Advance of the Britiſh army.

To Borglen in ſix columns
To Erwite in ſix columns
To Stormede in ten columns
} By the ſpacious and noble routes opened by the enemy;

and to Buren in five columns, where it encamped the 30th, having been previouſly joined by Sporken and Wangenheim; and then amounting to ſixty-one battalions, fifty-five ſquadrons, thirteen ſquadrons huſſars, beſides irregular infantry.

Broglie's object was now to attempt the Siege of HAMELN. For which purpoſe he placed his army in different corps, behind the Dimel at Stadberg, and the hills and woods of Paderborn, and made every preparation for forwarding his artillery from Caſſel—But Prince Ferdinand ſeeing the country round Lipſtadt thoroughly exhauſted, and that there was no probability of a return of the enemy to that place; marched on the 10th of Auguſt by his left, ſucceſſively to Delbruck, Stuchenbroeck, Detmold, and on the 13th to the ſtrong camp of Blomberg, which effectually covered Hameln—Broglie prevented in every other object, was now obliged to croſs the Weſer on the 17th and 18th at Hoxter, and endeavour to ſubſiſt in the country of Hanover; to this determination, the rapid march of the Hereditary Prince to Buren on the 12th (after leaving a ſmall force to watch Soubiſe) and his operations from thence on the rear of Broglie's army, did not a little contribute.

Broglie obliged to croſs the Weſer.

During the reſt of the campaign, Soubiſe much weakned by the detachment he had made to the other army, was not able to undertake any thing ſubſtantial, either againſt Munſter or Lipſtadt, although his light troops occaſionally overran and plundered Frieſland, and the biſhopricks—Broglie's army was extended in different corps from Eimbeck, by Gottingen, Munden, Caſſel, Fritzlar, Ziegenhayn, Marburg, to cover their communication with the Upper Rhine, and ſtrengthen the poſts they already occupied—The various movements of the Britiſh army kept them in

Progreſs of the campaign.

in conſtant alarm; ſeveral inconſiderable actions happened; and Prince Ferdinand held a central ſituation near the Dimel ready to move on either army, ſhould they attempt any operation of importance.

In the month of October, Broglie having collected ſupplies, and being enabled to give up his communications for a time, made a laſt effort on the country of Hanover, but was repulſed with loſs in his attack on Brunſwick—This drew Prince Ferdinand from the Dimel towards Hameln, and the beginning of November he croſſed the Weſer at that place, marched upon Eimbeck, and by a ſeries of maſterly manœuvres, diſlodged Broglie who it was thought had an intention to eſtabliſh himſelf there, and forced him back on Gottingen. The ſeverity of the weather now obliged the armies to ſeparate, and go into winter quarters, each remaining in poſſeſſion of the ſame country with which they had begun the campaign; but much to the honour of Prince Ferdinand, who had in every inſtance reſiſted the great efforts of France, and baffled the attempts of ſuch ſuperior enemies.

End of the campaign.

The quarters of our army extended from the frontiers of Holland to thoſe of Saxony; and their front was covered by the advanced poſts of Coesfeldt, Dulmen, Halteren, Ham, Neuhans, Driburg, Brakel, Hoxter, Daſſel, Eimbeck, and Oſterode, in the Hartz Foreſt. The French extended from Muhlhauſen, through Heſſe and the Veteravie to the Rhine, and behind it; having their advanced poſts at Muhlhauſen, Heiligenſtadt, Gottingen, Munden, Caſſel, Waldeck, Corbach, Winterberg, Arenſberg, Iſerlohn, Hattingen and Doeſburg on the Rhine.

1762.

The winter paſſed without any attempt of conſequence being made on either ſide, until the middle of April, when the Hereditary

ditary Prince aſſembling a ſmall corps at Ham and Lipſtadt, marched upon Arenſberg, one of the enemy's moſt advanced poſts; it ſurrendered on the 19th, was diſmantled, and the troops returned to their quarters. This year neither of the armies were ſo numerous, or ſo well recruited, as in the laſt campaign; but the ſuperiority of the French ſtill enabled them to expect conqueſt, and as uſual they prepared to form two armies. One of one hundred thouſand men in Heſſe, under the command of the Marechals D'ETREES and SOUBISE, and another of twenty-five thouſand on the Lower Rhine, under the Prince of CONDE.

Winter operations.

About the middle of May, our quarters were contracted as a preparatory meaſure. On the 4th of June, the infantry and artillery encamped in front of Blomberg; the cavalry was cantoned in the rear, where they remained till the 17th, when they alſo encamped; and from the 8th, Lord Granby's reſerve of eleven battalions and nine ſquadrons had been advanced to Brakel—Major Gen. Retz with four battalions, was near Paderborn; Luckner with ſix battalions and four ſquadrons, was near Eimbeck; and on the 19th, the Hereditary PRINCE with his corps of twenty battalions and twenty-three ſquadrons, encamped at Dulmen—The Chaſſeurs were in the Hartz, and the other light troops were divided among the ſeveral parts of the army. The enemy alſo was every where in motion to take the field.

Aſſembly of the army.

On the 18th the body of the army of forty-ſix battalions and forty-eight ſquadrons marched to Brakel—On the 19th Lord Granby moved to Peckelſheim, and the light troops extended along the Dimel—On the 20th Lord Granby encamped at Warburg and the army at Borgholtz—On the 21ſt it occupied the camp of Buhne, the caſtle of Sabbaborg beyond the Dimel was alſo poſſeſſed, and the enemy began to aſſemble near Caſſel.

On the 22d the French moved forward to the camp of Grebenſtein in front of WILHELMSTALL, having their flanks covered with detached corps, but their out poſts not ſufficiently advanced, and puſhed on to the bank of the Dimel which they were entitled to poſſeſs—PRINCE FERDINAND perfectly acquainted with the nature of

of their poſition determined to attack them in it, and as a preparatory ſtep now occupied ſeveral poſts on both ſides to ſecure the paſſages of the Dimel—On the 21ſt and 22d his light troops ſcoured the country beyond it, to gain more accurate intelligence of the enemy's ſituation, and he ordered Luckner, after leaving a ſmall detachment near Eimbeck, to march ſo as to arrive on the 23d at night in the neighbourhood of the Sabbaborg.

Finding that the Marechals had aſſembled in a confined poſition, and had not begun to extend corps to their flanks; on the 24th our whole army of ſixty-ſeven battalions and ſixty-one ſquadrons, beſides light troops, was put in motion, and early in the morning paſſed the Dimel in ten columns in various places, the advanced poſts which we occupied concealed the knowledge of this movement from the enemy.—Sporken and Luckner were deſtined to turn and attack their right, Lord Granby (who had a great detour to make) their left, and the main army their center—The enemy aſtoniſhed and unprepared to make head againſt ſo many combined efforts ſtruck their camp, and began to retire in great confuſion on Caſſel, this their right and center effected without any conſiderable loſs and before they could be joined by our line, being covered by Stainville's reſerve of their left, which alſo would have eſcaped; had not Lord Granby, foreſeeing ſuch event, moved briſkly on to the rear of the enemy near WILHELMSTALL, where intercepting them a very briſk action took place, which ended in the entire defeat of that corps, and the capture of many priſoners—The French were purſued and retired under the cannon of Caſſel, their loſs amounted to about ſix thouſand men: our army ſuffered little, and encamped on the field of battle behind Wilhelmſtall.

BATTLE OF WILHELMSTALL. June 24th.

It is ſingular and here worthy of obſervation, that Prince Ferdinand during three ſucceſſive campaigns had conſtantly in view the attacking of the enemy whenever he ſhould find them in this poſition of Grebenſtein and Immenhuſen, and the diſpoſitions he made for that purpoſe were nearly the ſame all the three years—He intended on the 15th of September 1760 to have marched from Warburg

burg upon Marechal de Broglie then encamped on the heights of Immenhuſen, but the Marechal fell back to Caſſel on the 13th and thereby avoided an action.—He croſſed the Dimel in September 1761 to attack a large corps encamped under Stainville on the ſame heights, who alſo was enabled to regain Caſſel, by the troops deſtined to turn his left, not making a ſufficient circuit.—Theſe two rehearſals undoubtedly taught Prince Ferdinand on the 24th of June ſo to combine his extenſive movements, that on the very opening of the campaign, he ſurprized and defeated a ſuperior enemy who meditated ſieges and conqueſt, and he then gained a victory which in its conſequences obliged them to abandon Hanover and Heſſe, and to retire on the Mayn.

Movements of the armies.

On the 25th the French army paſſed the Fulda at Caſſel and encamped behind it, the Saxon corps was on their right between Munden and Gottingen, Rochambeau with four battalions and eight ſquadrons was on their left at Homburg, and they alſo occupied ſeveral inconſiderable poſts on the Werra, Eder, and Fulda, all which covered their communication with Upper Heſſe, and the Mayn.—Prince Ferdinand now began to extend to his right, Lord Frederick Cavendiſh with the light troops, on rhe 26th moved towards Fritzlar which the enemy abandoned, as well as Felzberg, and Gudenſberg on the 29th—On the 1ſt of July, Lord Granby and Lord Frederick marched to attack Rochambeau, who nevertheleſs with ſome loſs effected his retreat upon Ziegenhayn: the light troops took this opportunity of extending towards Hirſchfeldt, but returned, when Lord Granby on the 2d fell back upon Fritzlar in conſequence of the enemy's movements to their left.—On the 4th Rochambeau reinforced again, took poſt at Homburg, and on the 7th advanced to the heights of Wavern, where he remained till the 12th, when he fell back anew upon Ziegenhayn, and from thence on the 15th to the Ohm, to avoid the attack of Luckner, who had marched for that purpoſe.

The caſtle of Waldeck having been taken on the 12th by Lt. Gen. Conway, and the various movements made to the right of the Britiſh army, alarming the enemy much, for their communication with the Mayn;

Mayn; they extended to their left, recalled their troops from beyond the Werra, and on the 15th croſſed the Fulda with a very large corps, which was placed on the Heiligenberg, and in the woods in front of Melſungen.—The viſible movements of the Britiſh army ſtill tending to fix the attention of the Marechals to their left, and to draw their force towards that hand; Prince Ferdinand, who had ſecretly made other arrangements for the purpoſe, determined to diſlodge the Saxon corps now poſted at LUTERNBERG, and forming the right of their army. On the 23d, notwithſtanding the difficulties of ſituation, the Fulda was paſſed in ſeveral places, and the enemy were attacked in front by Lieut. Gen. Zaſtrow, at the ſame time that a corps which had marched from Uſlar paſſed the Werra above Munden, and fell upon their rear; twelve hundred priſoners and thirteen pieces of cannon were taken. After this ſucceſs our troops returned to their former poſitions, and the Saxons again encamped at Luternberg.

Affair of LUTERNBERG.

On the 24th and 25th Prince Ferdinand made ſtill farther movements to his right, which ſo alarmed the Marechals, that on the night of the 25th they abandoned their ſtrong poſition at the Heiligenberg, repaſſed the Fulda, and thereby enabled Lord Granby's reſerve to occupy the heights above Melſungen, and our light troops to extend quite to the city of Fulda, of which we took poſſeſſion. From this time to the 6th or 7th of Auguſt, both armies were employed in obſerving each other, and no conſiderable changes of ſituation were made: the river ſeparated them—the French extended from Munden behind the Fulda to Spangenberg, and Stainville with a conſiderable corps was towards Hirſchfeldt. The allies extended in ſeveral bodies from Gieſmar on the Dimel to Melſungen, having Luckner on their right near Rothenburg, and a ſmall corps on their left near Uſlar, deſtined to cover Hoxter, ſecure the navigation of the Weſer, and watch the garriſon of Gottingen.

General ſituation of the armies.

By this time alſo the two armies from the Lower Rhine were arrived in Upper Heſſe; for the battle of Wilhelmſtall having entirely deranged the projected and combined operations of the enemy, which were probably the ſieges of Munſter and Lipſtadt: the two Marechals found it neceſſary to call the Prince of Condé to their aſſiſtance, who

had aſſembled at Weſel on the 25th of June, and had begun his operations by advancing on the 28th to Coesfeldt. On the 17th of July he croſſed the Lippe at Halteren, and marching in four diviſions by Eſſen, Duſſeldorff, Siegen, &c. was on the 4th of Auguſt at Herborn, and on the 7th at Grunberg, from whence he communicated with Stainville. Theſe movements were accompanied by the Hereditary Prince's corps, who taking the other ſide of the Weſtphalian mountains, croſſed the Lippe at Ham on the 21ſt of July, and marching by Stadberg, Corbach, and Frankenberg, was on the 1ſt of Auguſt at Wetter, on the 7th near Kirchain, and on the 8th behind Homburg on the Ohm, not far diſtant from Condé.

It was evident that the Marechals having a very uncertain and circuitous communication with the Mayn, and having nearly conſumed the forage in the narrow country they poſſeſſed about Caſſel, muſt ſoon be obliged however unwillingly to abandon their preſent poſition, and leave that city to it's own defence. But Prince Ferdinand deſirous to haſten an event, which was to realize to him the advantages acquired by the battle of Wilhelmſtall, made preparations for a general and combined attack along the whole French front. On the 9th this took place at ſeveral points, but chiefly on their left, which was turned by Wangeheim (detached by Lord Granby) and Luckner with a ſmall corps, who croſſing the Fulda, took poſt at Spangenberg; while Lord Granby with his main body cannonaded Melſungen, and while Prince Frederick of Brunſwick with ſome battalions and ſquadrons was even at Eſchewegé on the Werra, in the rear of their army.—Notwithſtanding theſe meaſures, the ſtrength of the enemy's poſition was ſuch, that no material impreſſion could be made, nor would they relinquiſh it: On the 10th therefore, the army encamped, was anew arranged, and Luckner marched upon Alfeldt, where he joined the Hereditary Prince's corps.

Intended general attack.

The Marechals now began to ſhow ſymptoms of their ſpeedy retreat. On the 13th the Saxons fell back to Lichtenau, on the 16th Munden and Gottingen were evacuated, and on the 17th placing ten battalions and three hundred cavalry in Caſſel, their whole

whole army marched to the left, and retiring between the Fulda and the Werra, reached the neighbourhood of Francfort about the 28th. Prince Ferdinand leaving a corps to watch Caſſel, accompanied their movements by Homburg, Schwartzenborn, Grebenau, Mahr, Ulrichſtein, Schotten, and Nidda, where he arrived on the 29th, and on the 30th was at hand to prevent the conſequences of our repulſe at Johanneſberg.

Retreat of the French army.

For during theſe movements of the principal armies, the Hereditary Prince having been conſiderably reinforced on the 20th, had advanced on the 21ſt to the heights of Homburg, diſlodged Levi on the 22d, and taken his camp and 500 priſoners. On the 23d he advanced to Grunberg to attack Condé, who fell back to Gruningen. —On the 25th he followed the enemy, whom he found too ſtrongly poſted to attempt with any proſpect of ſucceſs.—On the 26th as the Marechals were now approaching the Mayn, he retired upon Grunberg.—On the arrival of our army at Schotten on the 28th, he again advanced to Gruningen, and from thence on the 29th to Wolferſheim near Friedberg; beyond which and towards Rodheim Condé had retired to effect a junction with the two Marechals, who were now ſuppoſed to be at Bergen. On the 30th the Hereditary Prince ſent Luckner to poſſeſs the commanding heights of the JOHANNESBERG, while he ſhould march to Aſſenheim; but on receiving intelligence that Condé was advancing upon Johanneſberg, he altered his route to aſſiſt Luckner. The heads of the two corps met on the heights, where Condé (unexpectedly to us) being ſupported by the whole French army, ſoon obliged the Hereditary Prince, who was here ſeverely wounded, to retire upon Wolferſheim with the loſs of above two thouſand men, chiefly made priſoners.

Movements of the Hereditary Prince.

Affair of JOHANNESBERG.

This check, which encouraged the enemy for ſome time to act on the offenſive, ſuſpended whatever hopes Prince Ferdinand might have entertained of forcing them over the Mayn, or of gaining poſſeſſion of Friedberg, and taking a poſition which would have covered his future operations againſt Caſſel, Marburg, and Gieſſen. On the 30th he detached a conſiderable corps to ſupport the Hereditary

Prince, and on the 31ſt he himſelf marched forward to Bingenheim and Staden, in face of the French army, which after leaving the Saxons at Bergen was now encamped on the Johanneſberg; and behind Friedberg.—On the 3d of September ſtill deſirous of preſerving the appearance of ſuperiority, he advanced Lord Granby's corps conſiderably on his left towards Bergen; but the enemy ſenſible of the advantage they had lately gained, began on the 4th to extend to their left, and on the 6th their whole army was in march upon Guningen—This determined Prince Ferdinand immediately to retire behind the Ohm, in order the more effectually to cover, and carry on the ſiege of Caſſel, which was now his great object. He marched therefore on the 8th towards Grunberg, intending to have paſſed the Ohm the next day, but ſuch was the extreme badneſs of the roads and weather, that it was the 11th before this could be accompliſhed by the artillery, and rear guard, on which the enemy preſſed hard.

Movements of the armies.

In this manner did the firſt part of the campaign paſs, in which Prince Ferdinand by a conduct ſingularly ſkilful had defeated a very ſuperior enemy, overturned their ſchemes of conqueſt; and confining them in a narrow extent of ground behind a river, cramped them in all their future operations, cut off their communications, obliged them to call in another army to their aſſiſtance, and when that could not extricate them, by a ſeries of maſterly movements, ſevere and fatiguing to the troops, had forced them to abandon Hanover and Lower Heſſe, and to retire upon the Mayn; this river poſſibly, they alſo muſt have croſſed, but for the check received at Johanneſberg, which induced him to fall back upon the Ohm, and to attend ſolely to the ſiege of Caſſel.

Advantages gained by Prince Ferdinand.

For ſeveral days the enemy's motions behind Marburg, and to their left ſeemed to indicate an intention of forcing a paſſage towards Caſſel by Frankenberg, and Corbach; but this at all events Prince Ferdinand was determined to oppoſe: therefore leaving his ſeveral poſts on the Ohm of Homburg, Sweinſburg, Amœneburg, Kirchain, properly guarded, he extended to his right in ſeveral corps, and on the 15th obliged the French to quit the heights of Wetter and retire over the Lahn.—On the 18th the enemy having marched to their

their right and encamped behind Amœneburg ſeemed thereabouts to threaten the paſſage of the Ohm, and occaſioned the return of a part of our army towards that quarter.—Under Amœneburg which they now held inveſted they took poſſeſſion of the BRUCKER MUHL, and of a ſmall work on their ſide of a bridge over the Ohm, while we occupied a redoubt on ground ſome what lower fifty or ſixty paces from the bridge on our ſide—On the morning of the 21ſt which was very foggy, they began an attack both with cannon and muſquetry on our redoubt, we returned it, and inſenſibly a very warm local action was engaged, which laſted till it was dark. Seventeen battalions ſucceſſively relieved each other in our redoubt, and twenty pieces of heavy cannon on each ſide were at laſt employed, from the diſtance of three hundred to five hundred yards—Night put an end to this ſingular and bloody conteſt, which was begun in the darkneſs of the morning from accident, but perſevered in from mutual diſtruſt and apprehenſion of a deſign entertained by neither ſide to force the paſſage of the bridge and river, and in conſequence of which both armies were drawn out—Our loſs in killed and wounded was about ſeven hundred, that of the enemy from being more expoſed, was nearly double.

Affair of the Brucker Muhl.

During the remainder of this month, the armies made no conſiderable changes of ſituation; ſeveral efforts of the enemy to interrupt our communications were defeated by our light troops, and our poſition behind the Ohm was ſtrengthned and ſecured by many works. The ſeaſon advancing, forage becoming ſcarce, and Prince Ferdinand now feeling himſelf enabled to begin the ſiege of Caſſel, which had been blockaded from the 17th of Auguſt, ſent off the heavy baggage and uſeleſs horſes on the 2d of October to Hameln—On the 11th, he reinforced Prince Frederick, who with twenty-ſix battalions and ten ſquadrons, opened trenches on the 16th at night; and on the 1ſt of November, the garriſon capitulating with the honours of war, thereby allowed Prince Frederick's corps to join the army.

Surrender of Caſſel.

The French on the 7th, knowing that the PRELIMINARIES of PEACE were ſigned on the 3d, propoſed a ceſſation of hoſtilities; but

but Prince Ferdinand having received no ſuch intimation from our ambaſſador at Paris, could not conſent, and ordered ſeven battalions under Major Gen. Huth, on the 19th, to open trenches before Ziegenhayn. On the 14th, the courier from England arrived; on the 15th, the ceſſation was ſigned at the BRUCKER-MUHL; on the 16th, the French marched to their winter quarters; and on the 19th, the allied army ſeparated. The Britiſh corps marched to their cantonments on the frontiers of Holland, through which country they began to paſs on the 23d of January 1763, in ſeveral diviſions; the laſt of which embarked from Wilhelmſtadt on the 23d of March, and the whole arrived ſafe in ENGLAND.

Concluſion of the war.

In this manner ended a WAR, glorious and honourable for PRINCE FERDINAND, and for the troops whom he commanded. The whole body of ALLIES ſerved with diſtinguiſhed reputation, and each ſucceſſive campaign added freſh luſtre to the Britiſh arms. With an army much inferior in numbers, but whoſe confidence in their general was unbounded; he ſucceſsfully withſtood for ſix years the fulleſt exertions of the French monarchy, and gained many ſignal victories. At the beginning of the campaign, he ſometimes was obliged to give way to the ſtrength and ardour of his enemies; but before the end, he never failed to reſume the offenſive, and deprive them of their ſhort lived advantage. The difficulties that attend the conduct of an allied army, vaniſhed before his ſuperior reputation; and the ſingular inſtance of one without party, jealouſy or diſcontent, was ſeen under his command. His arrangements for the ſupply of his troops, were juſt and well executed; his activity was unremitting; his local knowledge and combinations wonderful; his firmneſs and preſence of mind were often tried; and the quick remedies which he applied to unforeſeen misfortunes, or critical ſituations, marked his ready deciſion which was always conſpicuous. From his well weighed purpoſes, no common difficulties ever diverted him, for he could depend on their being

General obſervations.

being ſurmounted by the zeal of his generals, and the bravery and attachment of his troops. The theatre of war was new, and his ſyſtem of operations was each year different; when he advanced, it was with vigour and effect, when he retired, he kept his enemy in reſpect; his defenſive poſitions were moſt ſkilfully choſen, and of ſuch a nature, that he was ever in a ſituation to take advantage of the opportunities which the moment might preſent. He did not always oppoſe the enemy in front; but ſkilfully covering and ſecuring his own communications, he placed himſelf on theirs in ſuch a manner, that when the country ſeemed moſt expoſed and inviting them to take poſſeſſion; they durſt not advance for fear of having their retreat or their ſupplies cut off. There was no poſition from which his ſuperior local knowledge and perſeverance when on the offenſive, did not enable him to turn and diſlodge the enemy. The conſtant changes that took place from the defenſive to the offenſive war, and from the open to the woody and mountainous country, gave a full ſcope and diſplay to the ſingular talents of this great man, who ſo ſucceſsfully directed the ſeveral corps of an army, acting in concert from Saxony to the frontiers of Holland; and whoſe movements were frequently combined acroſs the whole of Germany, with thoſe of the KING of PRUSSIA his great maſter and inſtructor. All the actions he atchieved, may be traced up to his own ſuperior ſkill and conduct; and in the rank of generals, PRINCE FERDINAND muſt always be conſidered as one of the moſt diſtinguiſhed.

For much information, and many of the circumſtances contained in this relation, Col. Dundas muſt here expreſs his acknowledgements to his friend Major Gen. Roy; and moſt truly regrets, that one ſo perfectly acquainted with the ſcene of operations, and poſſeſſed of the moſt ample materials, ſhould never have given to the world a detailed hiſtory of that war, the whole of which he ſerved, and is ſo well enabled to inveſtigate.

The annexed map will give ſome idea of the low, and of the mountainous country, as alſo of the tracts where the principal operations of the armies were carried on. Such names alone as are material are marked on it, becauſe it was apprehended that the inſertion of a greater number, would only tend to confuſe a ſcale ſo ſmall, and a map ſo ſlight.

The

The BRITISH CORPS that ſerved in GERMANY.

General officers that arrived with the corps.	Numbers.	Regiments.	Periods of Arrival.
Duke of MARLBOROUGH Lt. G. Lord G. SACKVILLE M. G. Marquis of GRANBY Waldegrave Whiteford Kingſley	2300	royal regiment horſe guards 1ſt, 3d dragoon guards 2d, 6th, 10th dragoons	Theſe regiments under the command of the Duke of Marlborough, joined the army at the camp of *Coesfeldt*, in Auguſt 1758.
	6200	12th, 20th, 23d, 25th, 37th, 51ſt infantry	
Moſtyn	1000	Kieth's Highlanders	Joined in 1759.
Major Gen. Howard Honeywood	1300	2d dragoon guards 1ſt, 7th, 11th dragoons	Theſe regiments joined the army at the camp of *Wavern*, in May and June, 1760.
Douglas	6200	5th, 8th, 11th, 24th, 33d, 50th infantry	
	1000	Campbell's Highlanders	
Eliott	700	3d, 4th horſe	Theſe regiments joined the army at *Saxenhauſen* camp, in June, 1760.
Earl of Pembroke	700	15th dragoons	
Cæſar	2000	1ſt, 1ſt, 1ſt battalions of guards	The guards joined the army at *Buhne* camp, in September, 1760.
	500	artillery	The artillery joined, and was increaſed from time to time.
	22000		

Britiſh corps	30 ſquadrons of cavalry	—	5000	The grenadiers of the guards and line formed three battalions.
	21 battalions of infantry and artillery	—	17000	
			22000	

	Years	1757	1758	1759	1760	1761	1762
General eſtabliſhment of the ALLIED army in Germany	Cavalry	8600	13,160	14,060	18,160	18,160	18,400
	Infantry	41,500	47,640	54,740	72,000	72,640	73,200
	Total	50,100	60,800	68,800	90,160	90,800	91,600
General eſtabliſhment of the FRENCH army in Germany	Cavalry	——	18,000	22,000	27,000	29,000	26,000
	Infantry	——	82,000	90.000	109,000	112,000	100,000
	Total	100,000	100,000	112,000	136,000	141,000	126,000

Allies.

During the campaigns of 1757, 58, and 59, the light troops were gradually increaſed to about three thouſand. In the campaigns of 60, 61, and 62, they were carried up to eight thouſand. In the years 60, and 61, every effort was made to augment the army: it remained in 62, at the ſame high eſtabliſhment, but was not then well recruited. The companies of grenadiers from the year 59, were formed into battalions, and reckoned as ſuch in the ſtrength of the army. Ten ſquadrons of Pruſſian dragoons ſerved from 57, till 1760, and then joined the King; five ſquadrons of Pruſſian huſſars ſerved the whole war.

French.

During the campaigns of 1757, 58, and 59, the light troops were gradually increaſed to about five thouſand. In the campaigns of 60, 61, and 62, they were carried up to eleven thouſand. In the years 60, and 61, the armies of France were greatly augmented; in the year 62, their numbers were rather leſſened. In general, they were at leaſt one half ſtronger than the allies. The eſtabliſhment of the French battalions, was lower than that of the allies; but the cavalry per ſquadron was much the ſame.

General proportions of the ALLIED army in the Year 1761, including light troops.

Nations.	Cavalry.	Infantry.	Total.	The Line. Bat.	The Line. Sqd.
Britiſh - - -	5000	17,000	22,000	20	30
Hanoverian -	7600	27,000	34,600	30	34
Heſſian - -	3600	18,800	22,400	34	16
Brunſwick -	1200	8300	9500	11	4
Buckeburg -	60	740	800	1	—
Saxe Gotha -	——	800	800	1	—
Pruſſian - -	700	——	700	—	—
Total	18,160	72,640	90,800	97	84
The Light Troops may be reckoned - - - -				10	25

There were alſo five battalions of Hanoverian Militia in Garriſon.

PLATES.

The firſt poſition is expreſſed, by — — — } Yellow—or light dotted lines.

The laſt poſition is expreſſed, by — — — } Red—or a ſtrong ſhaded line.

The intermediate poſitions, are — — — { Blue—or two lines without ſhade.
Buff—or one ſingle ſtrong line.
Green—or two lines with a light ſhade.

Many of the poſitions are alſo marked 1, 2, 3, &c. in the order in which they follow.

The dotted lines and arrows expreſs the direction of movements.

The plates to No. 19, incluſive, ſhould be bound at the end of the work.

The plates from No. 20, incluſive, ſhould be bound at the end of the Appendix.

References to Plate Nineteen.

BRITISH.

June 19th to 21ſt.		Camp of Newhaus, near Paderborn.
21ſt to 22d.	A.	Camp of Stadt Geſeke.
22d to 23d.	B.	Bivouac at Alt Geſeke.
24th to 28th.	C.	Camp at Soeſt.
— 28th.	D.	Camp of Werle, including the Hereditary Prince and Lord Granby's corps.
29th to 30th.	E.	Camp at Lunderen.
July, 2d to 4th.	F.	Camp at Dortmundt.
4th to 7th.	G.	Camp of Hemmerden.
7th to 27th.	L.	Wangenheim's camp at Lipſtadt. Camps of Hillbeck and Hohenover. Sporken's Camp at Hertzfeld.
— 16th.	L.	General poſition of the army the 15th at night, and during the action of the 16th at Fellinghuſen.
— to 27th.	L.	Camp of Hohenover.
— 27th.	M.	Camp at Borglen.
— 28th.	N.	Camp at Erwite.
— 29th.	O.	Camp at Stormede, from which the army marched to Buren next day.

FRENCH.

		June
H.	Soubiſe's camp at Unna.	24 to *July* 4.
S.	Poſition of Soubiſe's army behind the Landwehr, light troops between Werle and Sheidingen.	4th to 7th.
K.	Soubiſe's camp at Soeſt.	7th to 13th.
	Broglie's camp at Erwite.	7th to 15th.
P.	Soubiſe's camp at Paradys.	13th to 19th.
	Broglie's camp at Oſtinghuſen.	16th to 19th.
R.	General poſition of Soubiſe and Broglie's army, during the action of the 16th.	16th.
K.	Soubiſe's camp at Soeſt to the 25th, when he retired acroſs the Roer.	19th to 25th.
	Broglie's camp at Erwite to the 26th, when he fell back upon Paderborn.	19th to 26th.
	The enemy retired on the Dimel, and the Lower Rhine.	27th. 28th. 29th.

PRINCIPLES

OF

MILITARY MOVEMENTS.

APPENDIX.

WORDS of COMMAND, and Circumſtances of EXECUTION, neceſſary in the Movements of the *Company*, *Battalion*, *Line*, *Open Column*, *Cloſe Column*, *Echellon*, &c.

THE PRINCIPLES and OPERATIONS of the column, open and cloſe, of the battalion, and of the line, have been detailed at length in the firſt part of this work; but in order to bring their ſeveral moſt material movements into more diſtinct view, it is here meant to recapitulate the words of command, and to ſubjoin the chief points of execution.

The following practical ABSTRACT is therefore given. *Diviſion* is often meant as a general word for platoon, company, or whatever front the column then has. Columns are ſuppoſed marched off from the right; but the conſequent changes of command and circumſtances, that would attend columns marched off from the left, are ſufficiently obvious. The words of command, which are twice marked, are firſt given by the leaders of battalions, and then repeated by thoſe of diviſions. The general heads of many changes of poſition are alſo added: their diviſion and detail of execution, as well as thoſe of other various combinations of manœuvre that may be readily imagined, are eaſily inferred from the EXAMPLES given.

The CIRCUMSTANCES which follow, are among many others, eſſential to be obſerved in movements and operations of the *column*, open and cloſe, of the *battalion*, and of the *line*.

ALL movements of the line, are in general regulated by a battalion of that flank which is neareſt to, and is to preſerve the appui. All movements of the column are directed by its head; and the commander of the whole is with the regulating body.

Every movement ſhould be ſubdivided into its diſtinct parts, and each executed by its ſeparate command.

Attentions in movement.

All marches, movements, and formations, muſt be made on fixed points; and thoſe points and lines muſt be previouſly and truly aſcertained. Independent of diſtant objects, the given lines of march and formation muſt always be ſubdivided by mounted officers.

The neceſſity of field officers and adjutants, being at all times mounted and alert on horſeback, is evident and indiſpenſable; each battalion to manœuvre and act well in line, muſt have two mounted officers at leaſt.

All alterations of poſition ſhould begin from a previous halt, except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or diminiſhing or increaſing their front, which may be done while in motion.

Words of command muſt be quick, loud, and in the inſtant circulated.

All alterations in carrying arms, change of pace, facing, inclining, halting, marching, and in general every operation of the battalion, whether in line or column, which ought to be executed by the whole at the ſame inſtant, are made in conſequence of one word from the commander of each battalion: but when broken and in column, the leaders of diviſions on many occaſions, repeat or give the words of *march*, *wheel*, *halt*, &c. to their ſeveral diviſions as is neceſſary. **Commands.**

Muſic and drums ſhould never be uſed with a view to inſtruct, or to regulate the cadence or ſtep of any body, great or ſmall. **Muſic.**

Signals ſhould not be multiplied, they are cautions addreſſed to the leaders only of diviſions or battalions, who give their orders in conſequence for the execution. **Signals.**

Haltin

The ordinary march may be eighty in a minute, each ſtep thirty inches in length: it is the pace on all

all occaſions, where greater celerity is not ordered. The quick march may be one hundred and twenty in a minute; each ſtep thirty inches, when moving in front, and twenty-four inches when moving in file. It is the pace in all wheelings and filings of diviſions from line to column, and from column to line; ſhould it be increaſed beyond one hundred and fifty in a minute, it becomes a run. To theſe ſteps, and theſe only, and to their cadence, muſt the ſoldier be habituated without drum or muſic.

March. In line, individual battalions muſt frequently by order, and without change of cadence, lengthen and ſhorten their ſteps to preſerve dreſſing; and alſo on particular occaſions, but for no great diſtance, larger bodies will be required to ſtep out.

A diviſion or company, may occaſionally run; a battalion may march quick; but the hurrying a large body in front or in column, will certainly produce confuſion and diſorder: this is never to be riſked where an enemy is to be encountered, though it may ſometimes be neceſſary where a poſt or ſituation is to be ſeized.

Halting. All *halts* are made to the point to which the troops are looking, when the order is given, and a ſeparate word directs the after dreſſing.

When the word *dreſs* is ſingly given, it implies to the hand to which the troops are then looking. When eyes are to be turned to another point, the addition of *right*, *left*, or *center* will be uſed.

Dreſſing. In dreſſing battalions, regard is had to the general line, not ſolely to a partial diviſion of it.

No rank or body ought ever to be dreſſed without the officer on its flank, determining a given object on which the diviſion or battalion is to be formed.

One flank at leaſt of a line, battalion, or other body, is always conſidered as to be placed or poſted near ſome ſupport, which it ought not to quit. From that flank of *appui* the dreſſing always begins, and is made upon a point beyond the other flank in the direction in which the line is to be preſerved. In general dreſſing, eyes are therefore always turned to the point of *appui*, which remains unmoveable, and from whence orders and directions proceed.

Wheeling. All wheels or filings made from the halt into column or line, are made at a quick ſtep.

In all wheels of the columns when in march, the wheeling flanks muſt proportionally quicken their pace, to prevent a ſtop in the ſucceeding

ceeding diviſion; but this increaſed pace does not become neceſſary, if the wheel which the head makes exceeds not one-ſixth of the circle.

During the wheel, eyes are turned to the wheeling hand, and after the wheel to the pivot flank.

A perfect uniformity in the formation and arrangement of all companies and battalions, as already preſcribed, is indiſpenſable for the execution of juſt and combined movements.

The equal ſtrength of diviſions, is eſſential to the correct manœuvres of a battalion, or of a line.

Column.

All changes of poſition from one point to another, are made in one or more columns.

Every column of march or manœuvre is formed by a regular ſucceſſion of the diviſions, from right to left, or from left to right of the line, or of ſuch of its parts as compoſe the column.

In column, diviſions cover and dreſs to the proper pivot flank—to the left, when the right is in front; and to the right, when the left is in front.

Open column.

The commanding officers of diviſions (ſhift if neceſſary) to lead files, and alſo conduct pivot flanks, when marching in column in the alignement.

The countermarch of diviſions is always to be made from the right, and behind the rear.

Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be compoſed of platoons or companies—Cloſe columns of companies, or grand diviſions.

Columns of march or manœuvre, will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank; and vice verſa when required to the left flank.

In column, rear ranks are one pace aſunder—When a conſiderable diſtance is to be marched, they may be opened to two paces, but without increaſing the diſtances of diviſions, which remain ſuch as are preſcribed, according to the object of the movement. Open column.

All marches are made in columns of diviſions, never by files. Filings are only applied to the internal manœuvres of the diviſions of the battalion, not to any conſiderable movements of the battalion itſelf, or of greater bodies.

In marching in column, the rear diviſions follow every turn and twiſt, which the head one makes, until they are particularly ordered to gain a ſtraight alignement, and that the object is to form in line.

In open column, the artillery, muſic, drummers, &c. wheel with, and remain cloſed up to the rear of their reſpective diviſions. In column,

lumn, at half or quarter diſtance, or in cloſe column, they may occaſionally file on the flank, which is not the pivot one. In the ſquare or oblong, they will be in the interior part of it, or follow it when marching.

The column marching, at half or quarter intervals, ſhould preſerve a diſtance betwixt battalions, equal to the front of the column.

In column of march, the leaders of diviſions may be in front of their diviſions, and the flank non-commiſſioned officers preſerve diſtances; but when moving in an alignement, the leaders are then on the flanks, and become the pivots, who cover each other exactly—When the column halts, and the line is to form; the officers, and the ſergeant coverers, place themſelves behind the files of men next to them, and thoſe files (being then eaſily corrected if neceſſary, by the mounted officer) become the pivots on which the diviſions wheel, and the line forms.

Open column.

When marching in the alignement, there muſt never be more than one file of officers on the pivot flank; all others are either on the oppoſite flank, or in rear of the diviſions: the colours cover the pivot files of men.

In whatever manner the leading flank of a battalion arrives in a determined line, a mounted officer always gives the preciſe point where it enters; and if it there halts, and is to form; he from thence if neceſſary, corrects the pivot files of men on the given diſtant points, before the diviſions wheel up into line.

If the battalion after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dreſſed, the fault muſt be in the internal parts of the diviſions; this muſt be immediately corrected by each officer on the pivot men, who on no account muſt move or ſhift, but remain ſo many given and fixed points, on whom the battalion is exactly lined.

When ſeveral columns of battalions are marching to form in one general line, a mounted officer ſhould conduct the leading flank of each column—And diſtances and dreſſing of their heads, are taken from the regulating battalion, and the one adjoining to it.

Open column.

All doubling up or increaſing the front of the column muſt be made before entering on the alignement.

All marching in the alignement muſt be made in ordinary time, and taken up from the point where it is entered; the pivot officers then become more particularly anſwerable for the diſtances and exact covering of the flanks.

If the line is to be formed to the flank, wheeling diſtances muſt be exactly preſerved: if forming the line to the front is the immediate object, the column may march at half, or quarter diſtance, and form either by deploying from cloſe column,

lumn, or by wheeling into the alignement, taking diſtances, and forming up to the flank.

When the column ſtanding with the right in front, wheels up and forms in line, the dreſſing of the whole will be of courſe to the right along the ſtanding pivots, and when the left is in front, the dreſſing will be to the left.

The point where the head of the column enters the alignement, which is given and muſt never be quitted by a mounted officer, but as he is relieved, and till the whole have entered it; the point where the flank of the leading battalion begins to form; the ſeveral adjutants who place themſelves in the true line; the colours of battalions which have halted, or are formed up; are ſo many marked points within the line itſelf, independent of diſtant objects, on which the dreſſing of pivots or battalions can be regulated.

Open column.

The juſtneſs of wheeling diſtances and of leading upon the points of march; the covering of pivot flanks; and the true wheels of the quarter circle, are the indiſpenſable circumſtances that enſue exactneſs in movements of the open column, and in all changes and formations of the line.

When the cloſe column is halted, rear ranks are one foot, diviſions are one pace, and each battalion of which it is compoſed is three paces aſunder.

Muſic, drummers, pioneers, &c. are cloſed up to their ſeveral diviſions, or may be ordered on the flanks. Officers, ſergeants, &c. are in their places as in open column: ſtaff and artillery are on the flanks of the column.

The cloſe column ſhould not exceed five or ſix battalions; when there are more troops, more columns ſhould be formed.

Cloſe column.

The head of the cloſe column is always brought up, and halted in the line into which the column is to extend; and it muſt alſo be placed perpendicular to that direction.—Though the cloſe column may be required to march to the flank, yet a conſiderable movement in front cannot be expected from it without looſening the diviſions.

In echellon, the diviſions are retired at equal but parallel diſtances behind, but out-flanking each other.

Whatever diſtances the diviſions are retired behind each other; if thoſe diſtances are equal, and the diviſions alſo equal, the flank files of the whole will always line in a diagonal direction.

Echellon.

When the object is to form in oblique line; in proportion as the diviſions are retired, they muſt cover inwards, part of the one preceding them, viz. If retired a diſtance equal

to

to $\frac{3}{4}$—$\frac{2}{3}$—$\frac{1}{2}$—of their front, they muſt cover reſpectively $\frac{1}{2\,8}$—$\frac{1}{7}$—$\frac{1}{3}$, &c. of the front of the one preceding. In theſe ſituations, when the diviſions wheel, the line will be formed without falſe intervals, and more or leſs oblique, as required.

The whole or only part of the body may be thrown into echellon, and that either to the front or rear. In the one caſe to gain a flank, in the other to refuſe it.

The echellon may be formed on a flank, or on any central diviſion, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

The echellon poſitions and movements are neceſſary and applicable to a conſiderable corps, rather than to a battalion, which may however occaſionally aſſume that ſhape for the ſake of inſtruction.

The exactneſs of march in line, depends on the ſquareneſs of each individual's body, on the touch of the files, on the uniform cadence of ſtep, and on the exact perpendicular of march, given by the advanced colour and ſergeants, which the battalion in every reſpect covers, follows, and complies with.

The cadence is not to be altered by particular battalions when marching in line, but when it is neceſſary, they may lengthen or ſhorten their ſtep, by word from their own commanders.

The whole line ſhould halt at the ſame inſtant when the word is given, and no dreſſing or correction of intervals takes place till ſo directed—The advanced colour on the halt falls back to the battalion.

The line retires by the advanced colours, in the ſame manner that it advances.

Diſtances of battalions are taken from colours to colours, and the mounted officer in the rear, can beſt direct their preſervation.

The march and halt, and attention of each battalion in line, is by its own center. The commander alone regards the regulating battalion—Dreſſing to a flank is by a ſeparate direction, and given when neceſſary or proper after halting. **March in line.**

The intervals betwixt battalions are twelve paces—When without cannon, they may be ſix paces.

Cautions and words of command, are repeated loud by commandants of battalions, from the one regulating—the words, *march*, *halt*, &c. of each, muſt be inſtantaneouſly circulated.

When the line is marching, there may be two regulating colours of two adjoining battalions, with which the others are apprized always to dreſs—The commander remains on the flank of one of them, and from thence by a ſignal of his hand, directs the other to lengthen or ſhorten the ſtep, ſo as to preſerve the parallel movements of the line.

The march of a conſiderable body in line, can only be at the ordinary ſtep; a quicker movement would produce diſorder; nor could artillery attend its motions when advancing to the enemy—But there are ſituations where a brigade or ſmaller front, ſhould move on to a particular attack at a lengthy ſtep, or where even a quicker cadence may be required from them.

COMPANY.

Commands given by Leaders of

Nature of Movements.	Battalions.	Companies or Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the company being halted is to march in front.		*Forward*	A caution—The points of march are given to the leader.
		March	Dreſſing to the right, or by whatever point is directed—The flank officer conducting on the fixed objects.
When to halt.		*Company*	A caution
		Halt	To which ever hand it is then looking while in march.
		Right, Dreſs	If neceſſary.
When halted and ordered to dreſs.		*Dreſs*	Eyes are turned to the hand ordered—Each individual dreſſes, ſo as juſt to diſcover the face of the 2d man from himſelf; and the flank officer corrects the whole of the front rank, on the given diſtant object.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Companies or Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When halted, and to wheel by platoons to either flank into column.		*By Platoons to the right, wheel.*	A caution—The pivot man of the front rank of each platoon, faces ſquare to the right—A non-commiſſioned officer of the right advances, and marks the ground at which the left of his platoon is to arrive.
		March	Eyes to the left, platoons wheel quick, and with an uniform front.
		Halt	Halt to the left when the quarter circle is compleated, officers are placed in the front of their platoons, or on the pivot flanks.
When platoons are halted in column and wheel up to form in line.		*Platoons to the left wheel to form in line*	A caution—Pivot man of each platoon faces ſquare to the left.
		March	Eyes to the right.
		Halt	Each platoon ſeparately by the right and officers take their poſts on the right.
When to march in file.		*To the right, face*	The whole face to the right.
		March	At a ſhort quick ſtep, in file, opening out as little as poſſible, and exactly covering the leader who conducts the body truly on two diſtant points.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalion.	Companies or Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When filing, and ordered to halt and front.		*Halt*	The whole file covering exactly, and at juſt diſtances; the leader dreſſing it exactly on the intended point before fronting.
		Front	By facing to the left and dreſſing to the right.
When to countermarch.		*The company will countermarch*	A caution—A non-commiſſioned officer from the right, ſhifts to where the right is to be placed.
		To the right, face	The whole face to the right.
		March	In file behind the rear rank, till the right flank arrives at its ground where the left ſtood.
		Halt	The leader then halts it, and makes the files dreſs and cover exactly in the new direction.
		Front	The whole face to the left, and dreſs to the right.
When the comany is moving and is ordered		*To the right incline*	At this word, the whole will look to the right, preſerve the body perfectly ſquare to the proper front, and ſtep with the right foot to the right, in the direction of the incline, and the left foot brought exactly before it. The company muſt not open or fall into file, and muſt move in a direction perfectly parallel to the one they have quitted—The leader muſt

dered

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Companies or Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
dered to incline.			be very exact in taking his oblique points of marching, and not exceed an angle of about forty degrees with the former perpendicular of march.
		Front / *Forward*	The whole ceaſe inclining and move forward in line, parallel to their firſt direction.

BATTALION or LINE.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions,	Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is halted and is to march in front.	*The battalion will move forward*		A caution—The points of march are given as directed, after the 1ſt colour and the ſergeants covering them have moved out three paces. The colour is betwixt the ſergeants, its place in the front rank is ſupplied by the ſecond colour moving up from the center rank.
	March		The whole looking to the center, which follows the advanced colour at the diſtance of three paces, and is directed by the commanding officer in the front, and major in the rear.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is to halt.	*Battalion*		At this word the colours ceaſe to advance; the battalion marks the time, and dreſſes well by the ſecond colour.
	Halt		The whole halt, looking to the center—Colours and ſergeants reſume their places.
	Dreſs		The center, which cannot be wrong, does not move—And the dreſſing is obtained as directed for the battalion.
	Eyes to the right.		The whole look to the right.
			When ſeveral battalions march in front, the advanced colours of the whole are kept as much as poſſible in proper line, by direction from the leader of the flank regulating one.
			When they halt, he will then be particularly careful, that the adjoining colours ſtop in the true intended line, and he will dreſs the line in the manner preſcribed under that article.
When the battalion is halted, and is to march in file.	*To the right face.*		The whole face to the right: the officers move out three paces to the left flank, and the covering ſergeants take their places in the ranks.
	March.		The whole ſtep off at a quick ſhort ſtep, each man replacing the foot of the one before him, and the leader conducting on two diſtant objects.

The

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
			The battalion muſt not open out; nor ought it ever to march any conſiderable diſtance in this manner, and that chiefly for the purpoſe of opening or cloſing an interval in line. If more ground is to be gone over, it ſhould be done by diviſion marching.
	Halt.		The whole covering truly, and at juſt diſtances.
	Front.		By facing to the left, and dreſſing to the right.—The officers reſume their places in the front rank.
When the battalion is moving, and is ordered to incline. Fig. 58.	*To the right incline.*		As directed for the company.
	Forward.		The whole look to the colours, and move forward in line parallel to their former front. If the intention of the incline is only to regulate an interval when moving in line—Heads will remain turned to the colours during ſuch operation.
When the battalion is marching in front, and makes a ſmall change in its direction to either flank. Fig. 60.			The colours by the moſt inſenſible alteration of the poſition of the perſons of their bearers, take new points of march, and move upon them. One half of the battalion gives back, and the other gradually advances, till the whole are again perpendicular to the points of march.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is halted and is to retire.	*The battalion will retire*		A caution.
	Right about face		Dreſſing to the former point now the left.
	Forward		Colours and ſergeants move out, and points of march are taken as directed for the battalion.
	March.		
When the battalion after retiring, halts and dreſſes.	*Battalion.*		A caution—it ceaſes to advance and dreſſes.
	Halt.		By the center.
	Right about face		By the center, colours reſume their places.
	Dreſs.		As directed for the battalion.
	Eyes to the right.		If neceſſary, and that the battalion is to remain halted.
When from battalion, the diviſions retire by files from the right, and again front in column and wheel up into line. Fig. 126.	*The line will retire by files from the right of diviſions.*		A caution.
	To the right face.		The whole, and the heads of files, diſengage themſelves to the right.
	From the right of diviſions, file.		A caution.
	March		The whole march to the rear, regulated by the right diviſion.
		Halt.	Each diviſion taking it from the head, and the rear of the files cloſing up and covering.
		Front.	The whole are then in column.

To

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
	To the left wheel and form in line	*Left dreſs*	To the pivot flanks which are then dreſſed.
			A caution.
		March / *Halt*	As before—In forming the line from column.
	Right dreſs.		
When the battalion is advancing in front and any partial obſtacles occur to interrupt parts of it.		*Company* / *Halt*	Such parts of the line as are not interrupted, ſtill move on—Such platoons or companies as cannot continue th ir march in front, are ordered to halt.
		To the right, or left face / *March*	The platoon will *file* from one flank—The company will file from both flanks—And two contiguous companies thus interrupted, will each file from its outward flank. In this manner, they follow the adjoining parts of the line which are marching in front, and which take care to preſerve the intervals that the filing diviſions ſhould occupy.
Fig. 61.			If a half or whole battalion is thus interrupted, inſtead of filing, it may follow in two columns of ſubdiviſions from its outward flanks. While the battalion is advancing, in proportion as the obſtacle increaſes or diminiſhes, will the formed and filing parts of the line increaſe or diminiſh.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the obſtacle is paſſed and the line is again completed		*Move into line* *Quick* *Dreſs*	The intervals having been preſerved; as ſoon as the obſtacle in whole or in part is paſſed, the diviſions which are in file or their parts ſucceſſively, are ordered to move up quick, and reſume their places in line.

When the line is retiring, and an obſtacle is to be paſſed.

Fig. 61.

As when advancing in line, the interrupted parts follow in file, the formed parts; ſo when *retiring* (and when an enemy is near) they precede the line, which muſt therefore halt, when ſuch operation is performing by any conſiderable part of it, to prevent too much hurry. In both caſes, the natural order of the battalion is preſerved, and the flank of the entire part muſt be joined by the proper flank of the broken part: the filing muſt therefore begin accordingly; in retreating from the point which is fartheſt removed from the part that remains formed; and vice verſa when the line is advancing.

As ſoon as the ground admits, the broken parts re-enter the line; in the one caſe by waiting for it, and in the other by moving up quick.

But if in retiring, no particular attempts of the enemy are to be apprehended; then the breaking off may be performed behind the line, in the ſame manner, as when advancing; and the halt and inconveniences occaſioned by the breaking off before the line, will be much avoided.

The

Paſſage of battalions or lines through each other.

The ſecond line advances to within twenty yards of the firſt, and halts. The firſt line then receives the word *paſs*—The whole face to the right, and each platoon diſengages its head—They then march, paſs quick through the ſecond line (which throws back four files wherever the heads of platoons preſent themſelves to paſs) and when through, reſume the ordinary ſtep—The heads of files keep dreſt, and at a given diſtance of one hundred and fifty or two hundred paces, they halt, front into column, and wheel up into line.

Should the ſecond line remain poſted, the firſt retires till within twenty yards—At the word *paſs*, each platoon turns to the left, paſſes from the left through the ſecond line, and proceeds to form as above.

OPEN COLUMN. The RIGHT in FRONT.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
		By diviſions to the right wheel	A caution—The pivot man of the front rank of each diviſion faces ſquare to the right.—A non-commiſſioned officer of the right diviſion runs out to mark the ground at which his left flank is to arrive.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is halted, and to wheel by diviſions of any kind into column, to either flank. Fig. 13.	*March*		Eyes to the left, ſtep off quick, and wheel with an uniform front.
		Halt	By the left when the wheel of the quarter circle is completed, each diviſion ſeparately. Officers place themſelves in front of their diviſions, if the continuation of the march is the object; or on their pivot flanks, if the column is to march and form in the alignement.
		Dreſs	Eyes to the pivot flank.
When the battalion is to march in open column of diviſions from a flank to the front. Fig. 11.	*By diviſions to the right wheel*	*Flank diviſion*	A caution—Whether right or left.
		March	The leading flank diviſion only advances a ſpace equal to its own front, and then halts.
		Halt	
	March	*Halt*	The reſt of the battalion wheels the quarter circle to the right by diviſions, and each ſeparately halts.
	March	*March*	The whole column is put in motion, and follows the direction which the front now takes; officers being in front of their diviſions, or on their pivot flanks, according to the object of the march.
When the battalion is to march in open column of diviſions from the flank to the rear. Fig. 12.			The whole battalion is wheeled to the flank by diviſions, and halted.
			The front diviſion is then ordered to continue its wheel to the rear, and is followed by the reſt of the column which is put in march.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is to form open column to the front on any one diviſion. Fig. 9.	*The battalion will form open column to the front on the 5th diviſion—The right in front*		A caution—To form at half, quarter, or whole diſtance.
	Face inwards to the 5th diviſion		The fifth diviſion ſtands faſt.—The reſt of the battalion faces to that diviſion, and the heads of diviſions diſengage themſelves to the right.
	March		The whole file quick—To their places in column.
		Halt	The head of each diviſion, when in line with the flank of the fifth.—The rear of the diviſion cloſing in.
		Front	Each diviſion is then at its proper diſtance and place in column.
		Eyes to the left	Left pivots cover, as the right is in front.
When the column is halted and is to march.	*The column will move forward*		A caution.—Its points of march are aſcertained to the leader.
	March	*March*	The word is repeated quick from front to rear of the column by the ſeveral leaders of diviſions.
When the column is marching and is to halt.	*Halt*	*Halt*	Beginning at the front when arrived at its ground and repeated inſtantaneouſly by each leader to his diviſion.—The pivot flanks muſt carefully cover in the true line when they halt.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When diviſions are halted in column, and wheel up to either hand to form in line. Fig. 14.	*Diviſions to the left wheel into line*		A caution—Pivots being dreſſed, and the diviſions at due diſtances, each flank man of the front rank faces ſquare in the new line.
	March	*March*	Eyes to the right. Step off quick.
		Halt	Each diviſion ſeparately by the right, in the line of the pivot men.
	Dreſs	*Dreſs*	Which can hardly be neceſſary, if the whole have lined with, and halted on the pivot men who remain immoveable.—Officers take their proper places, if not at them.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the head of the column wheels into a new direction, marches on, and is ſucceſſively followed by the rear diviſions. Fig. 129.	Leading Diviſion.	*Halt*	When the leading diviſion of a column arrives at the point A, where it is to wheel—It will receive the words ***halt, wheel, march;*** and its outward flank will then increaſe its pace, at leaſt in the proportion of the circumference of the wheel, to the diſtance betwixt diviſions.
		Right wheel	
		March	
		Halt	When the wheel is completed, it will receive the words ***halt, dreſs,*** and then inſtantaneouſly the word ***march,*** to reſume the general pace at which the column is marching.
		Dreſs	
		March	
	Succeeding Diviſion.	*Halt*	In this manner the pivot point A will be free for the ſucceeding diviſion, which comes up to it at the general pace, and there receives the words ***halt, wheel, march, halt, dreſs.*** Each makes a pauſe after the word halt, and ſteps off at the word march, given
		Right wheel	
		March	
		Halt	
		Dreſs	

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
		March	given when at its due diſtance, from the preceding diviſion, and the inſtant before the coming up of the ſucceeding one. At the word ***wheel***, eyes will be always directed to the wheeling flank. At the laſt word ***march***, heads will be turned to the pivot flank, as the diviſion is then to move on.

Wheel of unequal diviſions in column of march.

Fig. 130.

As the diviſions in column always cover on the pivot flank, when they are equal in extent, each will wheel on the exact ground of the preceding one. But when they are unequal, the wheel of each will be calculated to begin, ſo that at its completion, the pivot flanks may ſtill cover in the true line.

In this manner, if the column is marching with the right in front, and that the wheels are to be made to the right—The ſecond diviſion (which is ſuppoſed out-flanked four files by the firſt and third) will paſs the ground on which the firſt wheeled, a ſpace equal to the extent of four files before it begins to wheel at a—And the third diviſion will begin to wheel at a like diſtance, ſhort of where the ſecond diviſion wheeled, viz. On the ground of the firſt to which it is equal in extent—This difficulty does not take place in wheels to the pivot flanks, which continue to cover both in wheeling and marching.

When the column has its left in front, the pivots then dreſs to the right, and the out-flanking of diviſions will be to the left.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given to Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given to Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the leading diviſion of a battalion marching in column, has wheeled into a new direction, and *halts* for the purpoſe of forming in line; the other diviſions then inſtantly *file* to cover it in column, and are in readineſs to wheel into line. Fig. 18.		Leading Diviſions. *Halt*	The leading diviſion wheels into the new line—Marches with its left flank along it—and halts when it arrives at its intended point of formation C. It is followed ſucceſſively by the other diviſions of the column.
		Right wheel	
		March	
		Halt	
		Dreſs	
		March	
	Halt	*Halt*	The whole diviſions of the battalion halt when the leading one halts.
		Succeeding Diviſions. *To the left face*	But at the inſtant that the head and ſuch other diviſions as have wheeled into and are now in the new direction do halt; each other diviſion which is ſtill marching in the old column is ordered to face to the left, and is ſeparately conducted in file to gain by the ſhorteſt route its point of formation in the line.
		March	
		Halt	Each diviſion, when its left flank arrives in the new line, and at its proper diſtance from the one preceding it.
		Front	When the rear of each diviſion has cloſed up—Dreſſing is to the left which is the pivot flank, and the whole column is now in a ſituation to form in line.
			The battalion may now form in line by the diviſions wheeling up to the left.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When in open column of ſeveralbattalions marching by diviſions, one or more having wheeled into a new direction, halt, in order to form in line—The others continuetheirmarch in ſeparate columns, to gain ſuch new direction and be in readineſs to form line. Fig. 26, 27.			When the head of the column is arrived at its point of formation, the whole receive the word *halt*. Such diviſions of the laſt battalion which has begun to enter, but are not yet all in the alignement, are immediately ordered to march to the flank as before directed, and place themſelves in column. Such intire battalions as are ſtill in the old line of march, are at the ſame inſtant directed into the alignement in the following manner.
		Leading diviſion of each battalion, to the left wheel *March Forward*	They break ſeparately from the general column to the left, and each directs its front diviſion on its reſpective point in the new line, the rear diviſions following in column the tract of their leading one.
		To the right wheel *Halt*	When the head of each battalion arrives behind the new line, it wheels to the right, with its left flank placed in it—halts—dreſſes—covers to the left.
		Halt	The remainder of each battalion when its head halts.
		To the left face *March* *Halt* *Front*	When the leading diviſion of each battalion thus halts in the new direction, the rear diviſions then are ordered to gain it by *filing* to their flank, where they halt and front, with their left flanks covering in the line.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
			As each battalion is halted in column in the new line, it may ſeparately wheel up by diviſions and form in line.
When ſeveral battalions halted in column at half or quarter diſtance, are to form in line to the front of their march, in any oblique poſition. Fig. 50.			The whole may cloſe up to quarter diſtance at leaſt—The battalion which is to form on the neareſt point of the line will be named—The ſeveral battalions will diſengage to right and left, from the general column, and ſtand in an echellon poſition—The head of each battalion will then be directed to its neareſt flank point in the new line, will enter it, take its open diſtances, and form in line, by wheeling up of diviſions. Or—each battalion when arrived at its flank point, will halt in cloſe column, and deploy into line.
	The diviſions of the column will countermarch, each form its right behind its own rear.		A caution—For each diviſion to countermarch ſeparately.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the column is to change its front by the countermarch of diviſions. Fig. 20.	*Right face*	*Right face*	Each diviſion—An under officer marks where the leading flank of each diviſion is to arrive.
	March	*March*	Each diviſion files to its right behind its own rear.
		Halt	Each diviſion when it comes to its ground.
		Front Dreſs	Front to the left, and dreſs to the right, which is now the pivot flank, as the column has its left in front.
When the column, with its head arrived at the new direction, is to form in line facing to its then rear, and on the leading diviſion. Fig. 39.			The ſame operation takes place as before directed in forming the line to the front, except that the front diviſions arrive with their left flank before the intended line, and wheel to the left. The rear diviſions, and battalions, *file* and *march* to the right, when the head of the column is halted, in order to gain the new poſition.
When the column is halted and it is neceſſary to form the line on the rear diviſion, facing either to the then front or rear of the column. Fig. 17.			In either caſe, the column will firſt countermarch by diviſions ſingly, and become a column with the left in front.—The right being now the pivot flank. In the firſt caſe, the leading diviſion will wheel to the right; and in the ſecond to the left, in order to march along the intended line. In both caſes the line will be formed by the wheeling of diviſions to the right.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the column is to form in line to the right flank. Fig. 128.			1. If the column is halted, and adjuſted, it may be done by wheeling of diviſions to the right into line; but then both battalions and diviſions of battalions will be inverted. Or, 2. If the line is firſt formed to the left, and then each battalion countermarched, it will front to the right, and prevent the inverſion of diviſions in the battalion; but not that of battalions in the line. This can only be remedied by 3. Firſt forming to the left, and then countermarching the line. Or, 4. The whole column muſt firſt countermarch by diviſions in front to the rear, and then wheel to the left into line.
When a battalion in column of diviſions files to the right to change poſition, and again fronts to reſume column. Fig. 30.		*Right face*	The whole diviſions of the column being then in file.
		March	The whole to the right flank, being regulated by the two leading diviſions which march ſteadily on their given points A. C.
		Halt	When the leading diviſion arrives at its point in the new line it halts.—The others alſo ſucceſſively halt, when at their ground.—The rear of the files cloſe up, and their heads are dreſſed.

Front

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
		Front	When the leading diviſion fronts, the others ſeparately front. Pivot flanks are dreſſed, diſtances are juſt, and the column is again in a ſituation to form in line if ordered. The column would file to the left if it was to change poſition to that flank.
When a column of ſeveral battalions marching by diviſions, changes poſition to a flank. Fig. 30.			The preceding regards a column of one battalion only. The ſame operation may however take place in ſome ſituations when the column is compoſed of a greater number. But in general in ſuch caſe the front battalion will alone *file* as mentioned, and the other battalions will each break from the original column, and march ſeparately in *column* of diviſions to their point in the new line. When the leading diviſion of each wheels into it, the rear diviſions of each then file, and take their places in the new column, ready to wheel up into line.
When the column of one or more battalions is to form in line on a central diviſion in any given direction. Fig. 131. 132.			The named diviſion is placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to the intended direction. All the diviſions in front of the named one countermarch and face it. The diviſions of the named battalion file into the new column, the other battalions march ſeparately in columns of diviſions into it. The whole place their pivot flanks in the new direction, and form in line by wheeling up.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Divisions.	Circumstances of Execution.
When the line changes position on any central division. Fig. 127.			The named division is placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction. The whole line wheels inwards by divisions towards the named one, and proceeds as already directed for the column.
When the column forms in line on its front, or rear division. Fig. 133. 134.			The front division is placed with its pivot in the new direction; the remainder of the column moves to the flank and covers it. The line is formed by wheeling to the pivot hand. If on the rear division, all the others must first singly countermarch, and then proceed as before.
Fig. 131. A.	*The line will form oblique to the left of the rear, on the 5th division of the 2d battalion.*		A caution.—The named division is placed perpendicular to, and with its left flank in, and behind the new line of direction, and fronting to the right of the new line.
	The divisions of the line in front of the named division countermarch.		Viz.—The first battalion, and the four right divisions of the second, in order to face the named division.
		Right face *March* *Halt* *Front*	The several divisions of the right of the line, who will, when countermarched, face the named division in column.

To

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Divisions.	Circumstances of Execution.
To form an oblique line, facing to the left of the rear on a central division. The front of the column thrown to the left. Fig. 131. A.	*Central battalion.*	*Right face*	The leaders of divisions of the second or central battalion only give this word. All the divisions of that battalion, except the named one, face to the right, in order to point to their places in the new column.
	The line	*March*	Given by leaders of divisions of the whole line.—Those of the central battalion file. The leading division of every other battalion wheels, marches in front, and is directed towards its point in the new line, and is followed in column by the other divisions of that battalion.
	Central battalion	*Halt*	Each division of the central battalion halts in file, when the right flanks of its right divisions, and the left flanks of its left divisions are arrived and placed at their due distance in the new direction. —Such flanks being regulated by the commanding officer who is with the named division.
		Front	Viz.—The divisions of the central battalion, the left of which are in the rear of the 5th division, and the right of which are in its front—These last face the 5th division, and therefore the division next it has preserved a double distance in taking its place in the new column, that such interval may be filled up by the wheel into line.

The

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Fig. 131. A.	*The central battalion will form in line.*		A caution to the battalion.
		Wheel inwards	A caution to the diviſions of the central battalion.
		March	
		Halt	And form in line.
			The central battalion being thus formed, the other battalions will proceed to form as follows.
		Front diviſion to the right	By the time the leaders of the central battalion diviſions have taken their places in the new column, the heads of the other battalions will be arriving in the new line, and each will wheel into it, and receive the word halt. The right battalion ſo as to have its right flank in the new direction—The left battalions ſo as to have their left flanks in it.
		Wheel	
		Halt	
		Halt	The rear diviſions of each battalion.
		Rear diviſions to the right face	When the front diviſion of each battalion halts in the new direction, all the following diviſions are ordered to face, file, and each halts when its pivot flank is in the new direction, and fronts by facing to the left.
		March	
		Halt	
		Front	
			Thus battalion after battalion arrives and takes its place in the new column.

From

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Fig 131. A.	*Wheel to the Right and form line* / *Wheel to the Left and form line*	*Right wheel* / *Left wheel*	From new column, the whole or parts of it are ordered to form the line. The diviſions of the central battalion as above, wheel inwards, both to the right and left; thoſe of the right battalion wheel to the right, thoſe of the left battalion wheel to the left.—The ſeveral explanatory commands of right and left are given according to the poſition of ſuch battalions.
		March / *Halt*	
	Right dreſs		If ordered to the right, or any other particular point, as the line will then be halted and looking to the named diviſion.
To form an oblique line on a central diviſion facing to the left of the front, the head of the column being thrown to the right. Fig. 131. B.	*The line will form oblique to the left of the front on the 5th diviſion of the ſecond battalion.*		The named diviſion will be placed with its left flank in, and behind the new direction, and fronting the right of the new line.
	The diviſions of the line to the right of the 5th diviſion will countermarch.		A caution.
		Right face / *March* / *Halt* / *Front*	Thoſe diviſions.
			Each other circumſtance and word of command is exactly the ſame as when the oblique line is formed, facing to the right of the front.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Divisions.	Circumstances of Execution.
To form an oblique line on a central division facing to the right of the front—The front of the column being thrown to the right of the rear. Fig. 132. C.	*The line will form obliquely to the right of the front on the 5th division of the second battalion.*		The named division will be placed as before, its left flank in and behind the new direction, and fronting the right of the new line.
	The divisions of the line to the right of the 5th will countermarch.		A caution.
		Right face, March, Halt, Front	Those divisions.
	Central battalion	*Left face*	The divisions of the central battalion only.
	The line	*March*	The whole—The central battalion files; the others wheel and march in front, in column of divisions separately.
	Central battalion	*Halt, Front*	The divisions of the central battalion only. The right divisions being then in the rear, and the left divisions in front of the named one.
	The central battalion will form in line		A caution to the battalion.
	Wheel inwards		A caution to the divisions of the central battalion.
		March, Halt	And form in line.

To

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
To form an oblique line on a central diviſion facing to the right of the front —The front of the column being thrown to the right of the rear. Fig. 132. C.			The central battalion being thus formed, the others will proceed to form as follows.
		Front diviſion to the right wheel / *Halt*	Of each battalion when it arrives in the new column.
		Halt	The rear diviſions of each battalion.
		Rear diviſions to the left face / *March* / *Halt* / *Front*	The rear diviſions of each battalion, when the front is arrived at its ground.
	Wheel to the Right and form line / *Wheel to the Left and form line*		A caution to each battalion.
		Right / *Left* *wheel*	A caution to the ſeveral diviſions.
		March / *Halt*	The diviſions of the ſeveral battalions.
	Right dreſs		The ſeveral battalions.

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
To form an oblique line on a central diviſion, facing to the right of the rear—The front of the column being thrown to the left of the rear. Fig. 132. D.	The named diviſion will be placed with its left flank behind the new direction, and fronting the right of the new line. The diviſions in front of it will countermarch and arrive with their right flanks, as thoſe in rear of it will arrive with their left flanks behind the new direction. The line will be formed by the diviſions wheeling to the intended front.
To form an oblique line on the front diviſion, facing to the right of the front—The rear of the column thrown to the left of the front. Fig. 133. E.	The front diviſion will be placed with its left flank behind the new direction. The reſt of the column will march to the left, and place the left flanks of their diviſions behind the new direction The line will be formed by diviſions wheeling to the left.
To form an oblique line on the front diviſion, facing to the left of the front—And the rear of the column thrown to the left. Fig. 133. F.	The ſame operation as in facing to the right of the front.
To form an oblique line on the front diviſion, facing to the left of the rear—The right of the column thrown to the right. Fig. 133. G.	The front diviſion will be placed with its left flank behind the new direction—The reſt of the column will march to the right, and place the left flanks of their diviſions behind the new direction—The line will be formed by wheeling to the left.

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
To form an oblique line on the front diviſion, facing to the right of the rear—The rear of the column thrown to the right of the front. Fig. 133. H.	The ſame operation as in facing to the left of the rear.
To form an oblique line on the rear diviſion, facing to the left of the rear—The front of the column thrown to the left of the rear. Fig. 134. I.	The diviſions of the column will countermarch, and it will then become a column with its left in front. The head diviſion will be placed with its right flank behind and fronting to the left of the new line—The reſt of the column will march to the right, and place the right flanks of their diviſions behind the new direction. The line will be formed by diviſions wheeling to the right.
To form an oblique line on the rear diviſion, facing to the right of the front—The front of the column thrown to the right of the rear. Fig. 134. K.	The diviſions of the column will countermarch and become a column the left in front. The head diviſion will be placed with its right flank behind the new direction. The reſt of the column will march to the left, and place the right flanks of their diviſions behind the new direction. The line will be formed by diviſions wheeling to the right.
To form an oblique line on the rear diviſion, facing to the left of the front—The front of the column thrown to the right of the rear. Fig. 134. L.	The ſame operation as in forming to the right of the front.

To

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
To form an oblique line on the rear diviſion, facing to the right of the rear—The front of the column thrown to the left of the rear. Fig. 134. M.	The column will countermarch and become a column with its left in front. The head diviſion will be placed with its right in the new line—The reſt of the column will march to the right, and place their rights in the new line. The line will be formed by wheeling to the right.
If the battalion is to form a ſquare. Fig. 135.	The center grand diviſion will ſtand faſt. The reſt of the battalion will face towards, it, and the head of each company will diſengage to the rear. The companies will march and form in two open columns, behind the center grand diviſion—The companies of the flank grand diviſions will wheel outwards to form the flanks of the ſquare; and the grenadier and light companies will cloſe up and countermarch, if neceſſary to form the rear face of the ſquare.
When the ſquare marches.	The half company of the flank faces, will wheel backwards, and again place themſelves in column.
When the ſquare halts.	The half company of the flank faces, wheel up, and cloſe the ſquare.
From the ſquare to form an oblong. Fig. 136.	The left company of the center grand diviſions will double behind the right company, and at half diſtance—The light company will alſo double behind the grenadiers, and the flank ſides of the ſquare will cloſe in.

From

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From the battalion in line to form an oblong.	In the ſame manner as the ſquare is formed, except that the left company of the center grand diviſion, doubles behind its right company. The other grand diviſions, grenadiers, and light company, form in columns (behind the center grand diviſion) of half companies; the flank faces are then formed by the wheeling up of the half companies.
From the ſquare or oblong, to form in line on any given company. Fig. 137.	Any one company is placed in any given direction, the other companies face towards their point in line, diſengage their ſeveral heads if neceſſary, and are ordered to march in file to their points in battalion.
When from column of march, it is neceſſary to make front to both flanks. Fig. 138.	The firſt diviſion halts—The reſt of the column will take half diſtance and halt. The half diviſions will wheel outwards, halt, and form an oblong cloſed in the rear by the laſt diviſion. When there are ſeveral battalions in the column, each will form as above, cloſed by its own front and rear diviſions.
When column of march is to be reſumed.	The half diviſions will wheel backwards into column, and the march will be reſumed.

When

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the oblong is compoſed of more than one battalion. Fig. 139.	Such number of central companies as are to form the front will be named—The reſt of the body on each flank will place themſelves in open column of companies behind it. As many of the laſt companies as are neceſſary will cloſe the rear of the oblong.
When the oblong is to form with the ſides ſix deep. Fig. 140.	The companies will cloſe to half diſtance when neceſſary—Wheel by half companies to the flanks, cloſe up and form ſix deep—The front and rear faces will be ſtrengthened by the grenadiers and light companies, which for that purpoſe are in the interior of the column or oblong.
When the oblong is to form in line. Fig. 141.	The named company will be placed in the intended direction; the other companies will be formed and ſtand in column—The companies of the ſame battalion as the named company will file into line—The other battalions will march in column into line and then form.
In open ground which will allow of the movement of the line in front, and when a change of poſition is to be made on a flank, or on a central point of the line, by the marching up of diviſions in front. Fig. 42.	The given diviſion is wheeled into the propoſed direction. The other diviſions of the line wheel ſeparately an equal portion of the circle, ſo as to be parallel to the given one—Thoſe that are behind it march up in front, and line anew with it; thoſe that are before it face to the rear, march, line with the given diviſion and then front. In ſome ſituations from open column, the diviſions may thus by oblique marching move up into line.

ECHELLON.

E C H E L L O N.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the battalion is marching, and the right wing is to form echellon to the rear. Fig. 79.	*The right wing of the battalion will form echellon to the rear on the 7th diviſion at half diſtance to form oblique line.*		A caution.
		Halt	The ſix right diviſions.
		Left march *Left incline* *Forward*	The ſixth diviſion, and ſucceſſively every other.
	Halt	*Halt*	Line and echellon when ordered.
When halted, and that the echellon is ordered to form oblique line to the right. Fig. 80.	*The diviſions of the echellon will wheel to the right into oblique line.*		A caution.
		Right wheel	Pivot man faces.
		March	Each diviſion wheels up.
		Halt	In the oblique line.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of: Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of: Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the oblique line is to reſume echellon. Fig. 81.	*The diviſions will form in echellon*		A caution.
		Left wheel	Pivot man faces ſquare.
		March	
		Halt	
When the echellon halted and formed to the rear is ordered to advance and form echellon to the front on the ſame diviſion. Fig. 82.	*The echellon will be advanced and formed to the front.*		A caution.
		March	The whole diviſions move forward.
		Halt	Each diviſion ſucceſſively in its relative ſituation.

CLOSE COLUMN.

From LINE to form CLOSE COLUMN—The Right in Front.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of: Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of: Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
	The line will form in cloſe column in front of the right diviſion.		A caution.

From

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From line to form cloſe column in front of the right diviſion. Fig. 45.	*To the right face.*		The right diviſion ſtands faſt, the reſt face to it. The heads of files diſengage to the left.
	March		And file into cloſe column.
		Halt	The head of each diviſion when at its point in column, and the rear cloſes in.
		Front	By facing to the left.
		Left dreſs	And cover on the pivot flank.
From line to form cloſe column in front of the left diviſion.			The ſame operation as above to the left.
From line to form cloſe column behind the right diviſion. Fig. 45.	*The line will form cloſe column behind the right diviſion.*		A caution.
	To the right face		The right diviſion ſtands faſt; the reſt face to it. The heads of files diſengage to the right.
	March		File into cloſe column.
		Halt	The head of each diviſion when at its point in column, and the rear cloſes in.
		Front	By facing to the left.
		Left dreſs	And cover on the pivot flank.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From line to form cloſe column behind the left diviſion.			The ſame operation as above, to the left.
From line to form cloſe column on a central diviſion, the right in front. Fig. 45.	*Form cloſe column on the 6th diviſion of the battalion the right in front.*		A caution.
	Inwards face		The ſixth diviſion ſtands faſt.—Thoſe on the right of it face to the left—Thoſe on the left face to the right. The heads of files diſengage to the right.
	March		The diviſions on the right to place themſelves in front. The diviſions on the left to place themſelves in rear of the named diviſion.
		Halt	Each diviſion halts, and cloſes in when it arrives at its place in column.
		Front	By facing to the proper front.
		Left Dreſs	And cover on the pivot flanks.
From line to form cloſe column on a central diviſion, the left in front.			The ſame operation as above, to the left.

To

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
To form ſeveral cloſe columns from part of the ſame line. Fig. 10.			The parts of the line which compoſe each column are named. The diviſion on which each column is to form is alſo named.—The ſeveral columns then ſeparately are ordered to form.

From Close Column, the Right in Front—To Form Line.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When from column of march of platoons the battalion forms cloſe column to deploy. Fig. 142.		*Move up to quarter diſtance*	When approaching the alignement, the head halts or ſhortens the ſtep, and the rear platoons are ordered to cloſe up quick to quarter diſtances.
			The column reſumes its ordinary march.
		Halt *Cloſe diſtance*	When the head arrives on the alignement it halts, and the rear moves up cloſe.
	Form diviſions	*Face* *Halt* *Front* *Eyes, &c.* *March* *Halt*	Diviſions are then formed by the ſecond platoon doubling up to the right or left (as proper) of its head one; and thus every other platoon. An officer is on the flank of each diviſion.
	Diviſions cloſe up	*Diviſions cloſe up* *March* *Halt*	The whole are again ordered to cloſe to the front, and the column remains ready to extend into line.

From

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From battalion column to form in line on the front diviſion. Fig. 46.	*The line will form on the front diviſion*		A caution.—The column being ſuppoſed placed on the alignement.
	To the left face		The front diviſion ſtands faſt, the others face to the left. Non-commiſſioned officers are ready to move out to ſhew the ground. The conducting officers are on the left of each diviſion.
	March	*March*	To the left parallel to the new line. The heads of files being dreſſed.
		Halt Front Eyes to the right	Succeſſively each diviſion (2, 3, 4, 5, &c.) from right to left as it comes oppoſite its point in line. The rear of the file cloſing in if neceſſary.
		March	By the flank next the diviſion of formation and directed by the right officer.
		Halt Dreſs	Each as it arrives in the new line.
			And thus ſucceſſively diviſion after diviſion from the right to the left, till the battalion is formed.
	The line will form on the rear diviſion		A caution.—The rear diviſion ſends two non-commiſſioned officers to place themſelves immediately before each flank of the front diviſion, exactly to mark the ground to which it afterwards is to move up; and the leader of the front diviſion takes his

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From battalion column to form in line on the rear diviſion. Fig. 47.			juſt points of march to the right, which are exactly aſcertained by the adjutant, or by his ſergeant, who runs along the line, and marks the point where his flank is to be placed.
	To the right face		The rear diviſion ſtands faſt, the others face to the right. The conducting officers are on the right of diviſions.
	March		The whole move except the rear diviſion. The front diviſion files to the right, exactly along the line of formation, the others move parallel behind it, their ſeveral heads dreſſing.
		March *Halt* *Dreſs* (The rear diviſion only.)	When the rear diviſion is uncovered, it alſo receives the word *march*, moves forward and halts at the non-commiſſioned officers, who mark its place in the new line.
		Halt *Front* *Eyes to the left*	When the diviſion immediately preceding the rear one has marched ſufficiently to the right ſo as to be oppoſite its ground in line, it halts —fronts—dreſſes to the left.
		March *Halt* *Dreſs*	When uncovered it marches by command from the left officer and halts in line, with the diviſion of formation which has arrived at its ground.
			And thus ſucceſſively diviſion after diviſion from left to right of the battalion till it is completely formed. When the whole, if thought proper, may be ordered to dreſs to the right.

From

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
From battalion column to form in line on the center diviſion. Fig. 48.	*The line will form on the 5th diviſion of the battalion.*		A caution.—The named diviſion ſends two non-commiſſioned officers to the front to mark the ground where it is to arrive.—The leader of the front diviſion obſerves exactly the points he is to march upon, which are marked by the adjutant, ſergeant, &c.
	Outwards face		The named diviſion ſtands faſt. Thoſe in front face to the right—Thoſe in rear face to the left.
	March		The front diviſions as directed in fig. 46. The rear diviſions as directed in fig. 47. The named diviſion remaining halted.
		March / *Halt* / *Dreſs* (The named diviſion only.)	When the named diviſion is uncovered, it moves forward to its place in line and halts at the two non-commiſſioned officers advanced from it.
		Halt / *Front* / *Eyes to the left* / *March* / *Halt* / *Dreſs*	Succeſſively the front diviſions as directed in forming line on the rear diviſion.
		Halt / *Front* / *Eyes to the right* / *March* / *Halt* / *Dreſs*	Succeſſively the rear diviſions as directed in forming line on the front diviſion.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the cloſe column halted is to take a new direction —To the left. Fig. 143.	*To the left face March*	*Halt Front Dreſs*	The front diviſion of the column will be placed in the new direction. All the other diviſions of the column. Each diviſion ſeparately, when it arrives at its point, and covers in column.
When the column is to make front to its rear by countermarching. Fig. 144.			The diviſions of the column will each ſeparately countermarch in ſame manner as directed for the open column—The diviſions are ſuppoſed at a ſufficient diſtance to allow of this operation.
When a column of march of ſeveral battalions are to form in cloſe column, and from thence extend into line. Fig. 49.			The column marching by platoons cloſes to the front to quarter diſtance—The whole halt when near the new line. The ſeveral battalions diſengage from a named one, and ſtand in an echellon poſition. The named battalion, as well as all the others, advance, and halt on the given line of formation, with an interval of two platoons betwixt each. Diviſions are formed by every other platoon doubling up to the left of the one preceding it, and the rear diviſions move up cloſe. The diviſion on which the line is to be formed is named—The reſt of the diviſions and columns face outwards from it, march to the flanks, and ſucceſſively deploy into line, as they arrive at their ſeveral points of formation.

If ſeveral cloſe columns are halted at accidental diſtances, but with their heads dreſſed, and are ordered to form in one line.

Fig. 49, 52, 68.

At whatever diſtance the heads of cloſe columns are halted from each other, the ſeparate battalions will firſt move up into line—The point and diviſion on which the whole are to form will then be named.—The whole will extend from it.—The diſtances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, ſo that the outward battalions may move ſucceſſively, as it becomes neceſſary to preſerve their diſtances from the inward ones.—The flank points of halting and forming for each battalion will be aſcertained by the adjutants, from the named one, as ſoon as poſſible.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Fig. 49.	*The column will cloſe to the front to quarter diſtance*	*Take quarter diſtance*	The front of the column either halts or ſhortens its ſtep, and the rear platoons cloſe up quick to quarter diſtance; an interval equal to the front of a platoon is reſerved betwixt each battalion, and the column when cloſed reſumes its ordinary march.
	The column will halt	*Halt*	When arrived within about 200 yards of where the line is to be formed—The head halts, and all diſtances are cloſed up to the front.
	The battalions will form echellon on the 3d battalion		The third, or any other battalion is thus named, as that on which the column is to deploy, and the points in the alignement are already marked out.
	Battalion Face		The third battalion ſtands faſt, each other one is ſeparately ordered to face.—Thoſe in front of the third battalion to the right, thoſe in rear of it to the left.

When

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When a column of march of five battalions forms cloſe column, and then extends into line. Fig. 49.	*March*		Each marches quick to the flank, without opening out.
	March		The named batt. only. When the third battalion is uncovered it moves forward to its place in line, and halts at its given points.
	Halt		
	Dreſs		
	Halt		The battalions that are marching to the flanks, as ſoon as they have acquired an interval of two platoons from each other, will ſucceſſively halt, front, dreſs inwards, march, halt, and dreſs with the third battalion which has advanced and halted.
	Front		
	Eyes to the		
	March		
	Halt		
	Dreſs		
	The platoons will form diviſions	*Left face*	The battalions being thus placed on the alignement with the above intervals in column of platoons at quarter diſtance, are ordered to double up, each other platoon to the left, to form diviſions.
		March	
		Halt	
		Front	
		Eyes to the right	
		March	
		Halt	
		Dreſs	
	Form cloſe columns	*Cloſe to the front*	The whole cloſe up to the head of their reſpective battalions.
		March	
		Halt	
	The line will be formed on the 5th diviſion of the 3d battalion		A caution.—Points, &c. being all aſcertained.
	Outwards face		The two right battalions and the front diviſions of the third to the right, all the reſt to the left.

Nature of Movements.	Commands given by Leaders of Battalions.	Commands given by Leaders of Diviſions.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Fig. 49.	*March*		The whole move to the flanks except the named diviſion, which advances into the alignement, and the third battalion proceeds to make a central formation on it.
	Halt *Front* *Form in line, &c.*		The other battalions continue their march till they arrive at the points where their inward flanks are to be placed, they then ſucceſſively halt, front, and deploy on whatever diviſion of each (head or rear), is to be there fixed when in line. The other attentions already ordered, muſt be exactly obſerved.

When two columns are to form in line in any given poſition.

Fig. 51, 53.

Points are prepared—the colums cloſe up—halt—diſengage the battalions—march into the new line—the diviſion or diviſions of formation are named, and all the others relatively deploy into line. Or, when the ſeveral battalions are diſengaged from the general column, their heads may be directed to their ſeveral prepared points, where they take diſtances, wheel into line, and form.

Formation from columns in two lines.

Fig. 52.

If there are two columns, compoſed each of part of two lines—The battalions of the ſecond line will halt at a proper diſtance from the firſt, and deploy or form in line, in the ſame manner as the firſt does.

Formation

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Formation in one line from ſeveral columns. Fig. 54.	When more than two columns are to form in the ſame line—The intermediate diſtances betwixt their heads when halted, will be filled up by the whole or parts of the interior columns as is ſeen neceſſary, and every thing elſe will deploy outwards.
When the cloſe column halted is to form in line to the left, in the prolongation of that flank, and on the rear diviſion, by taking diſtances. Fig. 145.	The rear diviſion remains halted—The others in front of it move on, and halt diviſion after diviſion from the rear, as they get their wheeling diſtances—When the whole or part is thus in open column, the diviſions wheel up and form the line.
When the cloſe column halted is to form to the left, in the prolongation of that flank, and on the front diviſion, by taking open diſtances. Fig. 146.	The front diviſion remains halted—the others face to the right about—march, and halt ſeparately as they acquire wheeling diſtances from their then rear—Face to the right about, and when the whole or part is thus in open column, the diviſions wheel up and form in line.
When the cloſe column halted is to form in line to the left, in the prolongation of that flank, and on a central diviſion, by taking open diſtances. Fig. 147.	The central diviſion is named—The diviſions in rear of it face to the right about—The whole then march and halt ſucceſſively, as they acquire wheeling diſtances from the central diviſions—The rear diviſions again face to the right about, and when the whole or part is thus in open column, the diviſions wheel up and form in line.

When

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When the cloſe column halted is to form in line to the right, by deploying in the prolongation of that flank, or obliquely on any given diviſion. Fig. 148.	The head diviſion will be placed in the new direction—The named diviſion and all ſuch as are in front of it will then file and cover it in ſuch new direction—The rear diviſions of the column remain halted. The front diviſions will then deploy to the right on the named diviſion; and thoſe in the rear will march on and wheel ſeparately to the right, each as it comes oppoſite to its ground, and march into the new line.
When the cloſe column halted is to form in line to the left, by deploying in the prolongation of that flank, or obliquely on any given diviſion. Fig. 149.	The front diviſions will be wheeled to the left, placed, and deploy to the right as before. The rear diviſions will file to the left in maſs into the new line—They will then face to the right about—march on in the new direction—take wheeling diſtances from their then rear—face ſeparately to the right about, and form in line by wheeling to the left.
Fig. 143.	If on the above occaſions, the whole cloſe column can be firſt placed in the new direction, it will then as uſual deploy into line.
When the battalion is to form in double column of attack from the center. Fig. 151.	The two center companies ſtand faſt, the others in each wing face inwards, diſengage, file to the rear, and place themſelves in column at half or quarter diſtance, as ordered—The grenadiers taking the front, and the light infantry the rear of the column.

Double

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
Double column of ſeveral battalions. Fig. 152.	If the column of attack is compoſed of ſeveral battalions, they may draw up behind each other—Then ſeparately form as above, and in this manner advance. Should the front of the column of attack be increaſed, the depth will be proportionally diminiſhed.
When the double column is to extend into line. Fig. 153.	The rear companies deploy and line with the center, either by filing, or in ſome caſes by a ſharp incline, where it can be done.
When the battalions of the ſecond line are to form in double column on the center companies. Fig. 154.	They form in ſame manner as the double column of attack—The diviſions are at half diſtance, and the grenadiers and light infantry may be in the rear—In that ſituation they are ready to deploy into line, or to allow a paſſage to the firſt line if it retires, or to take up any ordered poſition, or to form the oblong if neceſſary.
When the companies of the ſecond line double, to allow the firſt line to paſs through. Fig. 155.	If the firſt line is obliged to retire—The left companies of the ſecond line may be timeouſly ordered to double behind their right ones, will allow the firſt line to paſs through, and will then reſume their places in line.

When

Nature of Movements.	Circumſtances of Execution.
When a line is to retreat in ſeveral ſquares or oblongs. Fig. 156.	The ſeveral brigades may naturally and ſeparately compoſe the ſquares or oblongs—The central companies which form the front of each will be named, the others will be placed in open column from each flank behind them—The grenadiers and light company will be in the interior, to be applied according to circumſtances—The companies in column will be at half or whole diſtance as is thought neceſſary; ſome one body will be named as the regulating one, and in this order will the whole retire, and be prepared at any inſtant to form into line.
When to retire part in line, part in column. Fig. 157.	Such battalions or portions of the line as are ordered, may form columns behind their given diviſions—In this order the whole will retire, partly in line, partly in column, ſufficient diſtances being preſerved for the columns to extend into line when thought neceſſary.
When the ſolid column is to make front on all ſides. Fig. 158.	When the column is cloſed up, the two front and two rear diviſions will face outwards—The interior diviſion will alſo face outwards, dreſs the head of their flank files; and the drums, muſic, &c. will find place in the center of the column. The five firſt ranks all round the column will face outwards—The two firſt will kneel, and preſent bayonets—The three next ranks will fire ſeparately by ranks, if neceſſary to repulſe the attack of cavalry.

The general PRINCIPLES that ſhould direct the movements of all bodies, great or ſmall, having been fully detailed; the following application of them to the formal parts of a REVIEW or INSPECTION, is meant not (unneceſſarily) to vary from the cuſtomary practice, and is therefore given as an example of what may be expected on that occaſion from one or more battalions. Such particular movements are alſo ſuperadded as are ſimple, eſſential, and ſufficient for taking up any poſition in the field, which may be required from the battalion or line in any ſituation.

ORDER of REVIEW for a battalion of infantry, conſiſting of ten companies.

Receiving the general.

The BATTALION aſſembles on its parade, is formed, and there told off—Marches to its review ground, in column of companies or platoons, and there again forms in cloſe order.

Before the reviewing general arrives, firelocks are ſhouldered, bayonets are fixed, and the battalion takes open order as directed in the formation of the battalion.

In this diſpoſition, and the whole dreſſed to the right, the general is awaited. He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as ſet forth in the regulation of military honours.

Given by	Words of Command.	
Commanding officer.	*Preſent your arms*	When he approaches the right of the regiment, the word of command is given; and the inſtant the men have performed the laſt motion of the reſt, the muſicians and fifers begin to play, and all the drummers to beat.

The officers are to ſalute ſingly—each one endeavours to time the firſt, in ſuch manner, as juſt to have finiſhed the laſt motion when the general is oppoſite to him, viz. Standing ſalute.

Staff, who take off their hats.
Major.
Grenadier officers.
Battalion officers of the right wing.
Colonel, lieut. colonel (and colours if proper).
Battalion officers of the left wing.
Light company officers.
Adjutant.

Commanding officer.	*To the left, face*	When the reviewing general is arrived on the left of the battalion, and turns in order to paſs along the left flank, the command is given; on which the regiment faces to the left.
	To the left, face	As ſoon as the general has paſſed the left flank of the regiment, and is in the rear, the command is given; on which the regiment again faces to the left.
	To the left, face	The ſame word is repeated when the general, after having paſſed along the rear rank, comes upon the right flank of the regiment.
	To the left, face	The ſame a fourth time alſo, which brings the regiment to its proper front, after the general has gone quite round it.

Facings of the battalion.

During

Given by	Words of Command.	
		During this operation of parade, and in order to add to appearance—The ſergeants may be directed to fall back and form in a fourth rank in the rear at four paces diſtance; and in ſuch caſe they will perform the ſame motions with their halberts and fuſils in the facing, as their reſpective officers do. Sergeants.
Commanding officer.	*Shoulder firelocks* *Rear ranks cloſe* *March*	While the general is proceeding to place himſelf in the front—The words of command are given.

Commanding officer. Leaders of diviſions.	*By grand diviſions to the right wheel* *March* *Halt*	The battalion is now formed in cloſe order, and prepared to march paſt the general. The grenadiers, the four grand diviſions, and the light company, wheel ſeparately a quarter of the circle to the right, and halt. The colonel moves to the head of the firſt grand diviſion. The lieut. colonel to the rear of the fourth grand diviſion. The major to the head of the grenadier company. The adjutant to the rear of the light company. Staff officers do not march paſt. Muſicians are four paces before the colonel. Pioneers place themſelves in a ſingle rank ten paces before the grenadiers. Drummers and fifers are in the rear of their reſpective diviſions.

N. B. The march by grand diviſions is cuſtomary, otherwiſe that by companies would be preſcribed, and the deſirable circumſtance of equality of diviſions in the column thereby preſerved.

Poſt of field officers, &c. in order to march paſt.

Given by	Words of Command.	
		As the grenadiers and light company are out-flanked after the wheel by the grand diviſions, they will ſhift to the left, that the pivot flanks of the whole may cover.
Commanding officer.	*March*	The whole column is now put in march; at this word of command, dreſſing is to the left, the proper pivot flank. — March of the column.
Leaders of diviſions.	*To the left—wheel*	The grenadier company when it has marched ſufficiently to the flank, and then each grand diviſion and the light company in ſucceſſion, as they come up to the ground on which the grenadiers wheeled.
	Halt	
	March	
	To the left—wheel	The grenadiers, grand diviſions and light company ſucceſſively, when they come near to the line in which they are to march paſt the general.
	Halt	
	March	

In this ſecond wheel, the leading grand diviſion will obſerve to begin its wheel, as much ſhort of the ground on which the grenadiers wheeled, as will at the concluſion of it, bring all the right flanks to line inſtead of the left ones: But the light company will move on to the exact ground of the grenadiers before they wheel.

After the front diviſion has made this wheel, ſhould the column have been marching in quick time, it will be halted, and march off in ſlow time.

When

Given by	Commands.	

When the diviſions have arrived on the line in which they are to march paſt the general, and are within fifty or ſixty paces of him, they will ſucceſſively prepare to paſs in parade. — Marching paſt the general.

Leaders of diviſions.

Eyes to the right — On which the diviſion dreſſes to the right, being before this dreſſed to the left.

Rear ranks take open diſtance — The rear ranks take their open diſtance, by allowing the front rank to move on—drummers ſhift to the left flank of their diviſions—officers move out three paces to the front—ſergeants move into the places of officers in the ranks.

In marcing at open ranks the leading officer of each is reſponſible for the proper diſtance being kept from the front rank of the diviſion preceding him. His own front rank muſt invariably preſerve its fixed diſtance of three paces from him. The rank of officers dreſs to him; eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground in order to cover the front of their diviſions.

The battalion officers when they arrive at a proper diſtance from the general, muſt prepare to ſalute, viz. — Marching ſalute.

When oppoſite the general. — Major.

When within ſix paces of the general, and trail their fuſils when ten paces paſt him. — Grenadier officers.

When he has ſaluted at the head of the battalion, places himſelf near the general. — Colonel.

When within ſix paces of the general, and recover ſwords when ten paces paſt him. — Battalion officers.

Same

Given by	Commands.	
		Same as battalion officers. — Lieutenant colonel.
		Same as the grenadier officers. — Light company.
		Same as the major. — Adjutant.
		After paſſing the general, they draw up oppoſite to him, and continue playing till the regiment is paſt. — Muſic.
Leaders of diviſions.	*Rear ranks cloſe to the front.*	After having paſſed the general, the officers commanding diviſions will ſucceſſively cloſe the rear ranks, before they make the firſt wheel. Thoſe at the head of the leading ones taking care each in his turn, not to give the word, till the diviſion next ſucceeding has marched paſt the general. When the ranks cloſe up, each individual is to reſume the ſame poſt he held when the column was firſt put in march.
		When the rear ranks cloſe, or open on the march—In the one caſe they will run up, in the other they will ſlacken their pace, till the due diſtance is attained; in both caſes the front rank continues to proceed at its then rate of march.
Leaders of diviſions.	*To the left—wheel* *Halt* *March*	Each diviſion ſucceſſively when oppoſite the ground where the left of the regiment ſtood.
		The leading diviſion muſt take care not to march too faſt, till the laſt diviſion has paſſed the general, and cloſed ranks.—When that is done, column of companies will then be formed in order to march paſt in quick time; if ſuch operation is thought proper.

Leaders

Given by	Commands.	
Leaders of diviſions.	*Left companies.*	The left companies of the grand diviſions allow the right ones to advance clear of them, they then incline to the right, cover the right ones, and divide the former interval.
	Double	
	Companies to the left.	The column is now ordered to dreſs to the left, the proper pivot flank, and officers poſt themſelves accordingly.
	Dreſs and cover	
	Halt	Repeated ſucceſſively from the front diviſion to the rear.
	Quick. March	The officers commanding all the diviſions from front to rear, immediately repeat the ſame, and the whole move on in quick time (gaining any diſtance that may have been loſt in marching paſt) till the front arrives on the left of the original ground. **Marching paſt in quick time.**
	To the left—wheel	Leading diviſions followed by the others ſucceſſively, and the column proceeds along its original line.
	Halt	
	March	
	To the left—wheel	When the front diviſion has arrived at the point where the right of the battalion firſt ſtood, it wheels, and is followed by the reſt of the column.
	Halt	
	March	
	To the left—wheel	When the front diviſion arrives on the line in which it is to paſs the general.
	Halt	
	March	
	Right—dreſs	Each diviſion forty or fifty yards before paſſing. If firelocks have been ſloped, they are ordered to be carried.

March paſt the general in quick time. Officers do not ſalute, or pay any compliment, but are attentive to preſerve the proper intervals betwixt the diviſions—The major ſtill leads the grenadiers—The colonel the battalion—The adjutant in rear of the light company—The colours in front of the fourth company—The muſic in front of the grenadiers **Paſs in quick time.**

Given by	Commands.	
		diers—The pioneers in front of the whole—The drummers on the left of their companies.
Leaders of diviſions.	*Eyes to the left*	The ſeveral companies after paſſing will ſucceſſively dreſs to the left, the proper pivot flank.
	To the left—wheel	The column will continue its march. The head diviſion will make its two wheels to the left, followed ſucceſſively by each other one, and march with juſt diſtances along the line, on which it is to form.
	Halt	
	March	
	Halt	When the grenadiers are arrived at their ground, the major halts them, and each other diviſion will halt inſtantly by order of its own leader, at its juſt diſtance. **Forming the battalion.**
		The major now carefully corrects the pivot flanks in an exact line previous to forming.
Commanding officer.	*To the left wheel and form battalion*	The companies wheel to the left together. Halt when in the line of the ſeveral ſtanding flanks, and immediately dreſs to the right. But ſuch operation of dreſſing only regards the internal parts of the company, for the pivot men, who before the forming in line were placed critically true, muſt remain immovable. At the foregoing word march, every individual moves to his proper place in cloſe order, in which ſituation the battalion is now halted.
	March	
	Halt	
	Right—dreſs	
Commanding officer.	*Rear ranks, take open diſtance*	Open order is now taken.
	March	
	Preſent your arms	General ſalute.
	Shoulder	

The

Given by	Commands.	

The detail of each motion in the different ſalutes, and poſitions of the ſword and fuſil, are according to regulation.

Major.	*Manual*	The major comes forward in front of the center—Unfixes bayonets—proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation.

After the manual—The battalion is again formed in cloſe order, and the major returns to his poſt in the rear.

Commanding officer.	*Prime and load*	The commanding officer orders the battalion to prime and load.

The regiment is now prepared for ſuch firings, movements or manœuvres mixed with firings, as the general or commanding officer ſhall determine, and are conſonant to the principles eſtabliſhed by regulation.

Among others the following are pointed out, to be varied, to follow, and to be applied according to circumſtances of ground, and the intention of the commanding officer.

By { Grand diviſions / Companies / Platoons } from { Flanks to center or Center to flanks.

By { Wings / Battalions } to the { Front. / Oblique.

By { Files from the right of companies.

Theſe firings ſeem to comprehend all the variety that is neceſſary. The execution of them muſt be particularly detailed, and they will be applied as thought proper to the movements, and ſituation of the battalion.

MOVEMENTS and MANOEUVRES of the Battalion.

THE following manœuvres are ſuch as include the various movements that can be required from a battalion; the detail of their execution is pointed out under the articles of the line, the column, and the echellon—They are here arranged as following each other, but they may be any otherwiſe claſſed or ariſe from different ſituations, by adding or altering the connecting circumſtances.

Firings. The firings may be applied to moſt of thoſe movements as ſhall be thought proper.

Filings. The filings and breakings of the battalion by companies, are in general the moſt eligible, as the men receive commands from the officers, to whom they are moſt accuſtomed.

Commanding officers. The commanding officer mounted is in front to lead and determine the movements, and will fall into the rear, or diſmount while the battalion is firing.—The other mounted officers will aſſiſt in directing the march, correcting diſtances, and dreſſing the pivot flanks of the column in all ſituations.

Light company. The light company and grenadiers are ſuppoſed acting in line with the battalion.

The

The light company may be occaſionally placed, half of it behind each flank of the battalion—In that ſituation it is ready to cover the front, rear, or flanks of the column when in march; to protect the forming of the line, or to cover its retreat—For theſe purpoſes it will be detached from time to time, and act in diviſion or individually as circumſtances require.

1.—The battalion will move forward.

Halt.
Fire.

Advancing.

Fig. 162.

2.—The battalion will retire.

Front.
Fire.

Retiring.

3.—The battalion will wheel to the right, into open column of company or platoons.

March in column.
Halt.

From open column forming line to the flank.

Form in line by wheeling up to the left.

Fig. 163.

4.—The battalion will form in cloſe column of companies the left in front, and behind the left company.

Face, to the left.
March, to the flank.
Halt.
Front.

Forming of cloſe column and line.

Fig. 164.

Form the line on the 2d battalion company.

5.—The battalion will march from the right to the front in open column of companies.

From column of march forming line to the front.

Fig. 165.

The leading company will wheel on a new direction oblique to the right, and halt when the 3d company has entered it.

The rear companies will then file to the left, and place themſelves in the new column.

The line will be formed oblique with reſpect to its original direction, by wheels of the quarter circle to the left.

From column of march forming line to the rear.

Fig. 166.

6.—The battalion will march from the left, to the rear in open column of companies.

The leading company will wheel to the right and halt.

The rear companies will then file to the left, and place themſelves in the new column.

The line will be formed, by wheels of the quarter circle to the right.

N. B. If the line is to be formed fronting to the rear—The leading company of the column will wheel to the left; when it halts the others will file to the right, and the line be formed by wheels of the companies to the right.

From column of march forming line on a central diviſion.

Fig. 167.

7.—The battalion will march from the left, to the front in open column of companies.

The column will halt.

The 3d company will wheel to the left perpendicular to a new direction.

The front diviſions will file to the left and rear, the rear diviſions to the right and front, and place themſelves a-new in column.

The line will be formed by wheeling to the right.

From column of march forming cloſe column and line.

Fig. 168.

8.—The battalion will form column at half intervals, the left in front of the 4th company.

The companies will counter-march.

The column retires.

Halts.

The companies will counter-march.

The column will march to the right in file.

Halt.

Front.

Form

Form close column to the front diviſion.
Form in line on any diviſion ordered.

9.—The battalion will wheel by diviſions to the left.

Face to the right.
March in file to the front.
Halt.
Face to the left.
Wheel to the right into line.

The diviſions of the column filing to the front and forming in line.

N. B. In the courſe of the march the diviſions if ordered may fall into ſingle file, each center, and rear rank man doubling behind his front man, and again moving up to their compleat file, before the column halts to form in line.

Fig. 169.

There may be occaſions where the diviſions marching in file to the front will halt, and the line be formed, by each man at once moving up to his neighbour.

10.—The battalion will wheel by diviſions to the right.

Face, to the right
File, to the rear
Halt
} The diviſions may fall into ſingle file, as before mentioned.

Face to the left.
Wheel to the left into line.

The diviſions of the column filing to the rear and forming in line.

Fig. 170.

N. B. The right is the leading diviſion from which diſtances are kept, and with which heads of files ſhould line.

11.—The battalion will form close column on any named company, the right in front.

The front company will wheel into a new direction.
The rear companies will file, and cover it.
The line will be formed on any named company.

The close column taking a new direction and forming in line.

Fig. 171.

12.—The companies will each wheel $\frac{1}{8}$—$\frac{1}{16}$ or ſuch part of the circle as will bring them parallel to the original front, and place them in echellon poſition.

Face

From position in echellon, the battalion dreſſes to the rear diviſion.

Face to the right about.

March
Dreſs
Front
} To the company moſt retired, and which does not face or move.

Fig. 172.

The companies retire from the left in echellon, and form in line on a center diviſion.

13.—The right company will ſtand faſt, the others go to the right about, retire; and each faces when at half diſtance from the one to the right of it. The whole in echellon poſition.

The 4th company will ſtand faſt and the others will dreſs in line to it—By the left advancing and the right retiring and fronting.

Fig. 173.

The echellon formed from each flank to the rear.

14.—The 3d company ſtands faſt—The others retire from right and left beyond each other, halt, and front at half diſtance.

The whole retires.

Halts.

Fronts.

Fig. 174.

The right companies in echellon cover to the left, each the 4th file of the one preceding it.

The left companies advance into line with the 3d company, and the right companies wheel to the right, and cover that flank.

The echellon advanced, formed from the right, and an oblique poſition taken.

15.—The right companies wheel up to the left.

The whole advances
The whole halts
} Part in line, part in Echellon.

The right companies move on and paſs each other, forming echellon advanced to the front at half diſtance, and the right file of each covering the 4th of the one preceding it.

Fig. 175.

The right companies wheel to the left, and form oblique on that flank.

16.—The left companies wheel each a ſmall part of the circle to the left, and halt.

March.

March.
Line with the right ones, and front. — The line formed.

17.—The alternate and left companies of the battalion retire one hundred yards and halt, making a degree of wheel on the left company, and alſo inclining during the movement to give the line a new direction. — Retreat by alternate companies.

The right companies retire two hundred yards in ſame manner, and front. — Fig. 176.

The left companies retire and join in line.

18.—The battalion advances—halts—fires a volley.
The battalion advances—halts—fires a volley.
The battalion advances—halts—fires a volley.
The battalion advances—charges bayonets—halts. — The battalion advances, fires, and attacks with bayonets.

SHOULDER.

OPEN RANKS.

GENERAL SALUTE.

WHEN ſeveral BATTALIONS are REVIEWED, or ACT together in LINE.

They will be individually formed, as already directed, with an interval of twelve yards betwixt each.

Two pieces of cannon are placed in the interval on the right of each battalion.

The

Formation of the line.

The light companies will compoſe part of the general line, or may be formed in ſecond line either ſeparate or collected—The ſecond line will commonly be about two hundred and fifty yards from the firſt.

If there are cavalry on the flanks, the neareſt ſquadron will be fifty paces removed—The front rank will dreſs with the rear rank of the infantry when in cloſe order, and with the center rank when in order of parade.

The general will be received by each battalion ſeparately, and by order of its own commanding officer.

The whole line will wheel to the right into column, by ſuch diviſions as are ordered.

March in column.

The column in marching paſt, will occupy no greater extent of ground than when it originally wheeled. Its order is never to be broke or lengthned out, but when the chief commander ſo directs. No particular battalion or the artillery, are allowed to increaſe the diſtances for their own partial appearance—The battalion guns will march two abreaſt—The head of the column will take care not to hurry the rear—When in motion, the front of the column may be diminiſhed if neceſſary, and it may in like manner change its time of march.

Forming in line.

The leading diviſion after paſſing the general one hundred yards, may wheel to the left and purſue its march. Such of the rear battalions as find it neceſſary, will after paſſing, and at the proper time, break from the column of march, and point to their ſeveral places in the original line.

The battalions as they arrive at their original ground, will dreſs the flanks of their diviſions, wheel up to the left, and form ſucceſſively into line.

The manual.

The manual (when ordered) may be performed by command from the eldeſt major; each battalion will take the time from its own advanced flugel men. And the ſeveral flugel men will take their motions from a center one.

The officers of the line will go to the rear by one word of command, taken from the right.

After

After the manual, rear ranks will close, and officers take their posts in battalion separately, by one word of command.

Except the manual, all other operations or movements of the line, will be performed by the battalions successively.

In all situations, some one particular battalion is named to regulate the whole as to pace and direction; each battalion in line moves by its own center; and the leaders conform to that of direction, which is generally a flank one. General attentions.

The commanding officer of the line or column, should always address his orders to the commander of the regulating battalion of the line, or head of the column; what he directs, the others will immediately repeat and take up from him.

The movements and halts of battalions and divisions, though successive, should and may be almost instantaneous, if officers are quick, observing, firm, and decided in their words of command.

The general firings should be executed separately by each battalion.

The manœuvres of the line are similar to, and derived from the same general principles, as those of the single battalion; they may be compounded, varied, and applied according to the ground, other circumstances, and the intentions of the commanding officer. The greater the body, the fewer and the more simple ought to be the manœuvres required of it.

When the line breaks into several columns, distances and dressing are taken from one of the outward columns. General movements.

No considerable body should ever be formed without a proportion of it being placed in reserve or second line; and more or less strong, according to circumstances.

The movements of such second line or reserve, will always correspond to that of the first line.

The cannon, whether in line or column, will accompany the movements of their proper battalions.

ORDER of REVIEW for a BODY of TROOPS, conſiſting of ſeveral BATTALIONS and SQUADRONS—For example, ſix Battalions, and four ſquadrons.

1.—The ſix battalions are formed in one line, and divided into two brigades.

Two pieces of cannon are on the right of each battalion.

Two ſquadrons of cavalry are on each flank.

The line formed.

The light companies are formed in ſecond line, each one hundred and fifty paces in rear of its own battalion.

The whole are in order of parade, in the ſame ſituation in which they afterwards receive the general.

2.—The right troops, and companies of regiments and the cannon remain on their ground.

Each regiment forms in column.

Each regiment forms in ſolid column of companies and troops behind its own right.

Fig. 177.

Each light company advances one hundred and fifty paces in front of its battalion, and halts.

The whole remain in this order to wait the approach of the general.

3.—When the general (ſuppoſing him entitled to the ſalute of cannon) arrives oppoſite the left, or center, the firſt gun is ordered to fire; and there will be an interval of ſix ſeconds betwixt each gun.

The line is formed from column to receive the general.

At the firſt gun, each regiment by command, deploys into line, the light companies retire through the intervals to their poſts in 2d line—Rear ranks are then opened, and the whole compleatly formed in order of parade.

N. B. All this may be quickly done—And the cannon will have finiſhed the ſalute of twenty-one guns before he approaches the right.

4.—When

4.—When the general is going along the front of the line, the muſic of the whole will play, and the trumpets and drums of the regiment he is paſſing will ſound, and beat—The officers of each ſeparately ſaluting. Receiving the general.

N. B. During this operation the whole of the light infantry will have cloſed into the right company, formed in one battalion and there receive the general.

5.—When the general is on his return to place himſelf oppoſite the center—The line will take cloſe order, and break to the right into column of troops and companies. The line forms column of march.

6.—When the general is near his poſition, the column will be put in motion and paſs in ſlow time—viz.

Cavalry.
3. Companies light infantry.
6. Battalions of the line.
3. Companies light infantry.
Cavalry.

The column marches paſt.

Fig. 178.

No part of the column either diminiſhes or increaſes its relative wheeling diſtances.

7.—When the head of the leading battalion of the column, has paſſed the general one hundred yards, it may wheel to the left, and proceed diagonally towards its original ground—When the head halts at its point of formation, the rear companies of that battalion will then file to the right into line, and thus each battalion will ſucceſſively arrive on its ground, and each will ſeparately wheel up to the left into line—N. B. The whole remain in column till the head halts, the ſeveral battalions then break off, each towards its point in the line; and the light companies form in ſecond line behind their proper battalions.

The line is formed from column of march.

Fig. 178.

8.—The battalions will take open order.

The line prepared for the march.

The cavalry will march one hundred yards to the rear and form.

The light companies will move upon the right and left of the infantry—Three companies on each flank.

The manual.

9.—The manual (if thought proper for a line) each battalion taking the time from its own advanced flugel man; by one of whom, the others are regulated.

10.—Cloſe order is taken.

The battalions load.

The light companies march to their original poſition.

The cavalry remain on the flanks of the ſecond line, ready to ſupport.

The right piece of cannon of each battalion moves by the rear, to the left of that battalion.

The following MOVEMENTS and MANOEUVRES comprehend the eſſential ones that can be required from a line, and are here arranged to the narrow compaſs of a review ground—They ariſe from the general rules already laid down, and are to be applied according to circumſtances of ſituation, and intention. Pointing out the nature of combined operations, they are not excluſive, but only here given as one example of the many that may be deduced from the ſame immutable principles.

The line advances, halts, and fires.

1.—The line advances one hundred yards.

Halts.

Fires by companies.

N. B. The commander of the line, orders the cannon on the right to begin—Each battalion then fires two rounds of muſketry, independent of each other. The reſt of the cannon begin and end with their own battalions, and fire as faſt as they can.

2.—The

The line advances, halts, and fires.

2.—The line advances one hundred and fifty yards.
Halts.
Fires grand diviſions by battalions.
Each light company is now divided, and covers the right and left of its battalion, at fifty paces in the rear.

Retire by alternate half battalions of the line, and again form in one line.

Fig. 176.

3.—The right half battalions fire in ſucceſſion from the right—face about—march fifty paces lining to the right—halt—front—load—The cannon of the ſtanding half battalion keeping up a fire, (while the others retire;) and alſo the right light infantry diviſions, which run up and cover the interval.
When the right half battalions have fronted and loaded—the left fire—retire—front when in line with the others, and load.

Retire by alternate half battalions of the line, and again form in one line.

Fig. 176.

4.—When the left half battalions are loaded, the right again fire, &c. &c. till the whole arrive and are formed in one line, on the firſt ground.
N. B. The cannon fire, and retire with the half battalions they belong to—Thoſe that are advanced and whoſe front is clear, keep up a conſtant fire. The cavalry remain on the flank of the retreating half battalions. The light infantry cover the front of their proper half battalion while retreating, when it fronts and loads, they immediately return to its rear, not to interrupt its fire.

The three left battalions take an oblique poſition.

Fig. 179.

5.—The right company of the fourth battalion wheels $\frac{1}{16}$, or any ſmall portion of the circle to the right.
The other companies of the left wing, wheel each the ſame portion.
The companies of the left wing move up, and line to the right.
N. B. The right wing having remained on its ground, the left wing is now formed in oblique poſition, advanced, and facing to the right.

6.—The

The right wing is thrown back to line with the left wing.

Fig. 179.

6.—The right wing goes to the right about.
Each company wheels $\frac{1}{16}$ of the circle to the right.
Marches to the rear.
Halts and fronts.

N. B. The light companies and cavalry accompany and precede theſe movements.

The line formed from column of march to the front.

Fig. 180.

7.—The line breaks into column of march to the left.
The head takes a new direction by a ſmall wheel to the left.
The head, and ſuch part of the column as is in the new direction, halts.
The rear battalions of the column diſengage, and march into the new direction.
The line is formed on the original ground by wheels to the right.

From columns of march, the line forms part to the front, and part oblique to the rear, covering the right flank.

Fig. 181.

8.—The line marches to the front in open column of companies from the right of each battalion, diſtances and lining preſerved from the right.
The light infantry cover the heads of the columns, and the cavalry follow the flank battalions.
In the courſe of marching, the two right columns are ordered to be retired fifty and one hundred yards behind the others.
The columns halt, and the diviſions of each cloſe up to their proper front ones.
The heads of the two right columns, wheel each a ſmall part of the circle to the right, and the rear of thoſe columns immediately conform.
The whole deploy on the third company of each battalion. The four left battalions in parallel line, and the two right battalions oblique to the rear, covering the right flank—The light companies continue to cover their proper battalions; and the cavalry of the right, are ſtill on the right, or in its rear.

9.—The

Form in two lines, oblique to the right of the rear.

Fig. 181.

9.—The oblique battalions are attacked, and fire by ſub-diviſions.

During this, the third and fourth battalions wheel by companies $\frac{1}{16}$ to the right, and move up into line with the oblique ones. The fifth and ſixth battalions break into column of companies to the right, march and form in line behind the ſecond and third battalions. Three light companies place themſelves on each flank of the ſecond line, and one ſquadron is on the flank of each line.

Retreat of the firſt line through the ſecond.

Fig. 181.

The battalions of the firſt line, fire, file firing for about two minutes, and then ceaſe.

The firſt line goes to the right about, and retires; when it comes cloſe to the ſecond line, the companies file from their then left—paſs through the ſecond line—move on one hundred yards—halt—front—dreſs pivot flanks—and wheel up into line, under the protection of the ſecond one, which is firing by platoons.

Retreat of the ſecond line through the firſt.

Fig. 181.

10.—The ſecond line retires in the ſame manner that the firſt did; and thus repeatedly, till they are a conſiderable diſtance in the rear.

Central change of both lines.

Fig. 182.

11.—The firſt line changes its front to the left, on the right company of the third battalion, ſo as to face its original front.

The ſecond line makes a correſponding movement, by its right flank, in order to preſerve its relative ſituation.

The light companies move and cover their reſpective battalions at fifty yards diſtance.

N. B. If during the above retreat of the two lines, the left is thrown back, ſo that the original parallel poſition is gained, this central movement will not become neceſſary.

12.—The

Second line forms in column of half battalions.

Fig. 183.

12.—The two battalions of the ſecond line march to the right, cover, but out-flank the two right battalions of the firſt line, and then form in cloſe column of half battalions, behind their reſpective left companies. The right one of theſe columns, moves up to the rear of the grenadiers of the firſt battalion within ſixty paces.

Attack in echellon from the right.

Fig. 183.

13.—The whole move on fifty yards, and halt; the cannon begin to fire, and the three columns of the ſecond line deploy. The right half battalion of the firſt line, and the column behind it move on—The other three half battalions of the right wing follow it ſucceſſively in echellon, at ſixty paces from each other, and then the left wing which remains in line—The ſecond line ſupports in correſponding echellons, ſo that its right one will be about in the prolongation of the left wing.

The whole halt; the light companies are behind their reſpective battalions; the cavalry behind the flanks; and the half battalion in column deploys to the right, and out-flanks the advanced echellon.

The cannon and right echellon fire two rounds by platoons, and the file firing.

The right flank retired.

Fig. 183.

14.—The two left companies of the firſt line are thrown back on their left, ſo as to give a poſition conſiderably oblique to the rear—The center echellon of the ſecond line ſtands faſt, the other two, immediately join it—The out-flanking half battalion and cavalry ſtand faſt; the advanced echellons all retire, paſs through the ſecond line, which is fronted and halted to protect the movement, and form in line in the oblique poſition given from the left as the point d'appui, in this manner, throwing back the right of the whole. When the retiring echellons begin to paſs through the ſecond line, the whole left wing, except the two flank companies immediately faces about, and takes up the oblique poſition. The out-flanking half battalion fires when the retiring echellons arrive near it, follows them at the diſtance of one hundred paces, paſſes the ſecond line, and places itſelf in column behind the right flank.

15.—The

The lines change poſition on the center.

15.—The firſt line reſumes its original parallel front by the right moving up, and the left falling back on the center of the whole. The ſecond line takes its relative poſition—Both lines if neceſſary, take ground to the right in columns, and again form up.

Attack in line.

Fig. 184.

16.—The whole advance—The right wing and ſecond line in front; and the left wing follows the right one in echellon of half battalions.

The whole halt—The right wing fires by half battalions, and that in column deploys to the right.

File firing—during which,

The left battalions move up into line.

Advance in line—charge bayonets—halt—light infantry purſue towards the center—cavalry charge in front of the flank.

17.—Half battalions of the ſecond line, march and cover the ſecond and third battalions—The cavalry return and form on the flanks of the firſt line—Three light companies form on each flank of the ſecond line.

The whole advance—halt—take open order—ſalute.

Idea of MANOEUVRE for a ſmall Corps, which marches to attack an Enemy poſted, and retires after being repulſed in the Attack.

A CORPS poſted at C, has an advanced party of light infantry in a hollow at A, from whence they firſt fire on the approaching enemy. They then retire to B; and in proportion as the enemy moves on, they
Plate 25. fall back, ſkirmiſhing with the flankers, but never croſſing the hollow till they have joined their corps at C.

The column of five battalions, and one regiment of cavalry is aſſembled at D: an advanced guard is formed of the grenadier companies—The vanguard moves from the left, forms in line when acroſs the hollow, is followed at the diſtance of three hundred yards, by the column which has marched from the right by companies; the column halts at E, and the vanguard at e, on receiving a fire from the enemy at A, who immediately falls back.

Three companies from the front of the column are ordered up to replace at e, the vanguard, which is detached to f to take poſt behind the Ravine: when the paſſage is thus inſured, the cavalry move quickly by the high road to *F*, and there form in line: the vanguard cannonades the enemy at B, and the column marches by half companies to F, where it forms in line G by extending to the left. The companies which were poſted in e, follow the rear, and join on the right; and when the column is forming into line G, the cavalry advance and cover its left flank; and the vanguard which has continued ſkirmiſhing, alſo move to their left, ſo as to arrive at g when the line is formed.

The

The line now breaks to the left by companies; the advanced guard marches to h, and the column to H, where it forms in cloſe column, and ſees the enemy poſted at C.

The column being formed with the left in front, and halted on the right of its ground, deploys into the oblique line H, on the right company of each battalion, which company is now in the rear of each.

The line advances to I, halts for an inſtant; and the vanguard ſkirting the wood moves on to i.

Each battalion wheels to its right, a ſpace ſufficient to bring it parallel to the general front of the enemy. The line advances in echellon, led by the ſecond battalion from the left; the reſt keep retired fifty or ſixty paces behind each other. They move on briſkly to the attack; the leading one when at a proper diſtance, begins to fire by half battalion, and the others (except the left one, which halts when the leading one halts, and does not fire) ſucceſſively as they come up in line with it, alſo engage at L. The van edges away to l, but does not fire; and the cannon which are with it, as well as thoſe on the left, do fire in an oblique direction.

The attack not ſucceeding, it becomes neceſſary to retreat.

The ſecond battalion from the left retires; and thus the others ſucceſſively, till the whole are in echellon, at fifty yards diſtance from each other, except the left battalion, which remains one hundred yards from its adjoining one. The right battalion, as ſoon as it has faced about and retires, wheels gradually to its left, and gains the ſkirt of the wood, where it fronts; the other battalions alſo, by gradually wheeling up to the left, Plate 25. in the courſe of their retreat, gain the poſition M, and front, being protected in this operation by the vanguard placed in m, by the cannon, and by the cavalry in L, through which part of the infantry do march. The cavalry now place themſelves on the left, and cannon are with each wing.

From the poſition M, the two battalions of the right are ordered to retire by files from the right of companies, through the wood to the open

ground at N. The three left battalions retire in line; the grenadier companies cover the right flank, and the cavalry the left.

From N, the corps retreats to O, and the cannon are poſted at O.

From O, the cavalry retire briſkly along the road; the three left battalions follow them, and are protected in this operation by the two right ones, who do not fall back, till the enemy in courſe of following the left wing, cannonade them from near S.

The whole corps now aſſembles at P, and the grenadiers preſerve their poſt at p.

The corps takes the poſition R, by marching from the right of lines.

The relative movements of the cavalry are marked at *L*, *M*, *N*, *O*, *P*, *R*; and thoſe of the van and rear guards are alſo marked, e, f, g, h, i, l, m, n, o, p, r.

A detachment x, guards the narrow paſs, and advances and retires with the corps.

When the retreat is making, the enemy detach and follow the grenadiers and the column, the rear of which they will cannonade from the height S, where the purſuit naturally ends.

The marches and formations of the battalions, ſhould be made without hurry, at a ſteady uniform pace, ſuch as is proper for a conſiderable body of infantry.

The movements of the cavalry ſhould be made with preciſion, firmneſs and due celerity.

The ground nearly repreſents part of the Phœnix Park, Dublin—The manœuvre was executed by the garriſon, September 1787. It is meant to ſhow the application of regular changes of ſituation in broken ground; and is given as an example of exerciſe that may be varied, ad infinitum.

The preciſion and exactneſs required in the MOVEMENTS laid down in the preceding WORK, and in this APPENDIX are attainable and cannot be unneceſſary to the BRITISH troops: for they reconcile order and exertion, which is the great object of all military arrangement. Where they compleatly apply to ground and circumſtances, their juſtneſs and ſuperiority will always decide: where they do not fully apply, the leſs they are departed from, the nearer to perfection will the body that they direct attain; and there is hardly any ſituation, in which the ſingle battalion, its ſubdiviſions, or even a proportion of the line, cannot be regulated by them. General concluſion.

There are unqueſtionably many occaſions, where it may be improper rigidly to follow all the formal rules of method; but it would be a bad general ſyſtem which was not built on order, and had irregularity for its foundation. Quick movements of ſmall bodies, may when neceſſary be demanded, and the troops ſhould be accordingly prepared; but great care is to be taken againſt throwing any conſiderable body of infantry into diſorder by hurrying them: in the preſence of the ſmalleſt corps of determined cavalry, it will always be fatal. Where a rabble, or a timid and inferior enemy is to be attacked, and can be got at, time often would be loſt in acting with too much regularity; ſpirit and activity are then generally ſufficient: but if ſteady troops are to be encountered, it is on firmneſs and combined exertion that we muſt depend for ſucceſs.

Should we find peculiar difficulties in the correct execution of what is here required; yet even a near approximation and application of theſe principles, would ſoon produce moſt evident advantage.

If the diviſions of a column, marching in the alignement, are not in a ſituation to halt at their juſt diſtances, all at the ſame inſtant: yet they may and ought truly to do ſo in ſucceſſion, by word from their ſeveral officers.

Should the battalions marching in line be not ſo exactly dreſſed, as to halt correctly all at the ſame inſtant: yet they may ſucceſſively be ordered ſo to do.

Should the pivots of a column marching in the alignement not exactly cover: yet the mounted officers can, and muſt dreſs them truly, before the formation of the line is attempted. General principles.

The

The indiſpenſable rule of the ſtaff officers being mounted, ſhould be revived and enforced, and the adjutants enabled to comply with ſuch rules.

The internal formation of our battalions, ſhould be deduced from principles of ſervice, and not of parade.

Our open order ſhould be aboliſhed; our files ſhould be cloſed; and the old ideas of firmneſs, compactneſs, and mutual ſupport, be reſtored and held ſacred.

The ordinary and quick ſteps of march, each uniform in its length and cadence, ſhould from habit be acquired.

The neceſſity of all bodies whatever, great or ſmall, making their marches and formations in determined lines, ſhould be inforced; and the method of taking thoſe lines with exactneſs, ſhould be aſcertained.

The importance of bodies being able to march for ſome diſtance in file, without opening out, ſhould be underſtood and practiſed; and alſo the neceſſity of inclining in a parallel line, without altering the front of the battalion.

General principles.

Officers ſhould be convinced of the propriety, and ſteadied in the practice of pivot covering, and of preſerving their true diſtances; of commands being circulated and executed quick, decided, and with preciſion; of the juſtneſs of movements and formations of the battalion, on given and determined objects, from the influence they have on thoſe of the line—They ſhould avoid hurry, but aim at quickneſs conſiſtent with order.

Our general movements and modes of execution, ſhould be ſuch as are applicable to the line, and thoſe of the battalion reconciled to, and decuced from them.

Muſic, drum, or fife, ſhould not be uſed or truſted to in the inſtruction of the recruit, officer, or battalion; nor in manœuvre; on occaſions of parade they may be permitted.

Movements and alterations of ſituation ſhould be divided into their diſtinct and ſeparate parts; ſo that one operation may be fully compleated and pauſed upon, before the commencement of another.

Fixed points ſhould be clearly aſcertained before bodies march or form upon them.

Cloſe order ſhould always be conſidered as the eſſential and fundamental one. Open order is only accidental, and for parade.

The

The ſoldier muſt not be puzzled with various and unprofitable ways of attaining the ſame end.

The ſame principles ſhould extend equally to the movements of cavalry, as of infantry.

Such among many others, are circumſtances that cannot be diſpenſed with, and which we ought to follow and eſtabliſh; their oppoſites in many inſtances prevail in our ſervice, and ſhould be diſuſed and forbid. But if ſuch obſervances are eſſential to the movements of the ſingle battalion, how much more important and neceſſary are they to the manœuvres of more conſiderable bodies of troops; and how conſpicuous would this appear if we had the ſame opportunities of aſſembly, which all well diſciplined armies annually have! for it is by ſuch means only, that in time of peace the ſoldier is at leiſure formed; that talents can be known and brought forth, and that a judgment can be made of the future abilities of the officer, when war calls him into real ſervice. On this advantage to the wiſhed for degree, we can hardly calculate; for in moſt of our foreign ſtations, in England, and in Scotland, the infantry are ſo few, or ſo diſperſed, that no means of collecting them can be expected; and it is only in the capital, Gibraltar, and in Dublin, where with any convenience numbers are aſſembled.

Neceſſity of aſſembling large bodies.

In the CAPITAL, there ſeems no military reaſon why the guards, permanently quartered, and ſufficiently numerous, ſhould not be trained on one uniform ſyſtem; and become from their ſituation, a model for the reſt of the army.

London.

In GIBRALTAR, however well calculated for forming troops to many eſſential parts of ſervice; yet the very confined ſtate of the garriſon, will allow them only to practiſe the firſt rudiments of movement; and prevents them from ſeeing the extent and conſequence of conſiderable manœuvres.

Gibraltar.

In IRELAND, they are better ſituated; for beſides the ſtations of Cork, Kinſale, and Galway; DUBLIN particularly offers every opportunity of forming troops, and of ſhowing the neceſſity of general ſyſtem.—The ground for exerciſe is varied and extenſive, the garriſon is conſiderable, for two months in each ſpring it might without much expence be increaſed, and avoiding all matters of parade, or of the drill, that period might be dedicated to give ideas of manœuvre and the movements of great bodies. In the

Dublin.

the autumn alſo the ſame exerciſes might again take place; and although formed battalions only ſhould be brought to this quarter, yet the intervening periods would give ſufficient time for whatever detailed drilling particular regiments might require—Was ſuch a mode adopted, and followed out, it muſt be attended with the moſt ſalutary effects in the courſe of a few years, as the greateſt part of the infantry of the army would circulate during that time through Dublin.

Previous ſyſtem neceſſary.

But to enable us to proceed with ſucceſs to ſo deſirable an object, it is previouſly neceſſary, that one general and detailed ſyſtem ſhould be eſtabliſhed, derived it is hoped from that which experience and ſucceſs has ſhown to be the beſt; and when ſuch is by authority preſcribed, it ſhould be implicitly followed, rigidly maintained, and no regimental deviation from it in the ſmalleſt inſtance permitted.

Conſequent advantages.

Were we once ſteadied in true principles, there can be no doubt that we ſhould arrive at the fulleſt proficiency, for an immutable line of conduct being preſcribed and followed—caprice and change would no longer exiſt—Uncertainty which is ſo harraſſing to all concerned, would ceaſe—General uniformity would take place—Much laudable zeal and ability would be directed aright—Officers no longer acting on the temporary ideas of individuals would ſoon perceive the firſt ſtages of the profeſſion, to be thoſe of ſcience, and that without their correct aid, the combinations of the general cannot be executed—The juſt execution of ſuch movements as can be required, or are really applicable to the ſervice in the field, would be unalterably eſtabliſhed—And explicit regulation inſtead of tending to confine or to cramp genius, would give fuller ſcope to military talents in the application of true principles to the boundleſs variety which time, numbers, ſituation of ground, and other circumſtances will always preſent.

F I N I S.

MVSEVM BRITAN NICVM

APPENDIX.

CONTENTS.

General CIRCUMSTANCES, WORDS of COMMAND, and PARTICULARS of EXECUTION, neceſſary in the following MOVEMENTS.

COMPANY.

Page

WHEN to march — halt — dreſs — 10

break to a flank — wheel up to form — march in file — 11

halt, and front — countermarch — incline — 12

BATTALION or LINE.

When to march — 13

halt — file — 14

incline — change direction — 15

retire — front, and dreſs — retire by files from the right of platoons — 16

Paſs an obſtacle — 17

Move up after paſſing the obſtacle — 18

Paſſage of battalions or lines — 19

Page

OPEN COLUMN.

When the battalion breaks to either flank

To march from a flank to the { front / rear } 20

To form column on a central diviſion

When the column is to { march / halt / form in line } 21

When the diviſions of the column ſucceſſively wheel — 22

Wheel of unequal diviſions in column — 23

When the head halts, and the rear files into line — 24

When the rear battalions of a column march into line — 25

Change of front by countermarch of diviſions — 27

Forming to the rear on the { front diviſion / rear diviſion } ib.

When the column files to the flank to change poſition — 28

When a conſiderable column changes poſition — 30

	Page
To form an oblique line on a central diviſion — — — — —	31
To form an oblique line on the front diviſion of the column — —	36
To form an oblique line on the rear diviſion of the column — — —	ib.
To form the ſquare — — —	38
From the ſquare to form an oblong —	ib.
From battalion in line to form an oblong	39
From the ſquare or oblong to form in line	ib.
When the column of march makes front to both flanks - — — —	ib.
When the oblong is compoſed of ſeveral battalions — — — —	40
When the ſides of the oblong are ſix deep	ib.
When the oblong forms in line —	ib.
Change of poſition by oblique marching	ib.

Echellon.

	Page
When the battalion is marching, and the right wing is to form echellon to the rear — — — — —	41
When halted, and that the echellon is ordered to form oblique line to the right	ib.
When the oblique line is to reſume echellon — — — — —	ib.
When the echellon halted, and formed to the rear—is ordered to advance, and form echellon to the front on the ſame diviſion — — — —	42

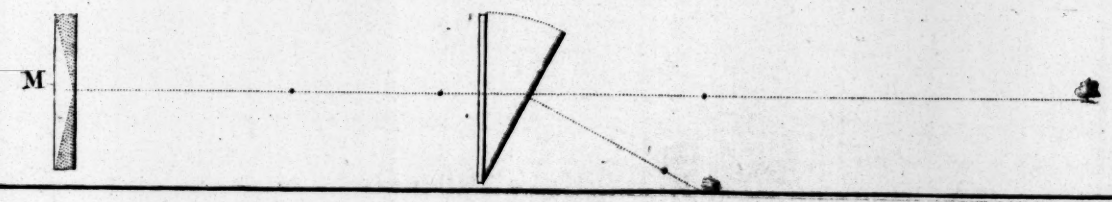
Close Column.

	Page
From line to form cloſe column — in front of right diviſion / left diviſion	43
From line to form cloſe column — in rear of right diviſion / left diviſion / on a central diviſion	44
When the line forms ſeveral cloſe columns	45
From column of march to form cloſe column — — — — —	45
From battalion column to form line on a - — front diviſion — / rear diviſion — / central diviſion —	46
The cloſe column halted to take a new direction — — — —	49
When the column countermarches by diviſions — — — —	ib.
When a conſiderable column of march, forms cloſe column, and deploys into line — — — — —	50
Formation in line from ſeveral columns -	52
Taking diſtances from the — rear / front / central — diviſion of the column	53
When the column forms line in the prolongation of either flank — —	54
When the battalion forms double column from the center — — — —	ib.
Double column of ſeveral battalions —	55
When the double column extends into line — — — — —	ib.
When the battalions of ſecond line, form double column on the center companies — — — — —	ib.
When the alternate companies of the ſecond line double — — —	ib.
When the line retreats in ſeveral ſquares or oblongs — — — —	56
When to retreat part in line, part in column — — — — —	ib.
When the ſolid column makes front on all ſides — — — —	ib.
Form of review and movements neceſſary for the practice of a ſingle battalion, and of a ſmall corps - — —	57
Idea of a manœuvre for a ſmall corps —	82
Concluſion - — — — —	85

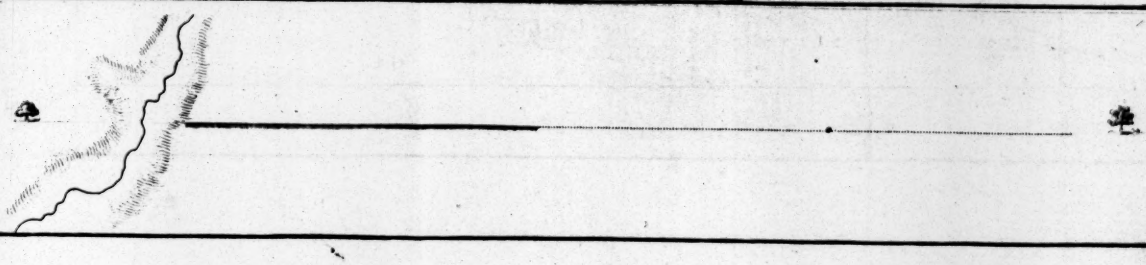
ERRATA.

Page	Line	
21	26	After—Commander of—inſert—*the*.
43	2	on margin, inſtead of Defilé, read *File*.
60	8	inſtead of company—read—*companies*.
70	4	inſtead of compoſed—read—*arranged*.
77	10	inſtead of ſtep—read—*ſtop*.
82	15	inſtead of broke—read—*broken*.
85	23	inſtead of alignemt—read *alignement*.
122	23	inſtead of ſquadron—read—*ſquadrons*.
142	26	after but—inſert *if*.
160	13	after original poſition, inſert—*O*.
221	4	inſtead of where—read *were*.
242	30	inſtead of 5th, read *1ſt*.
255	22	inſtead of briſkly, read *rapidly*.
260	8	inſtead of Guningen, read *Gruningen*.

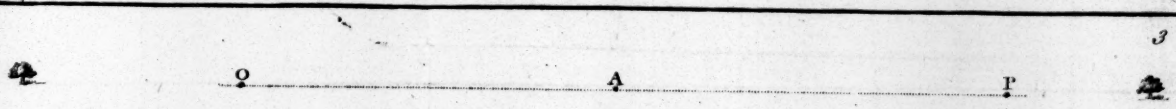
1



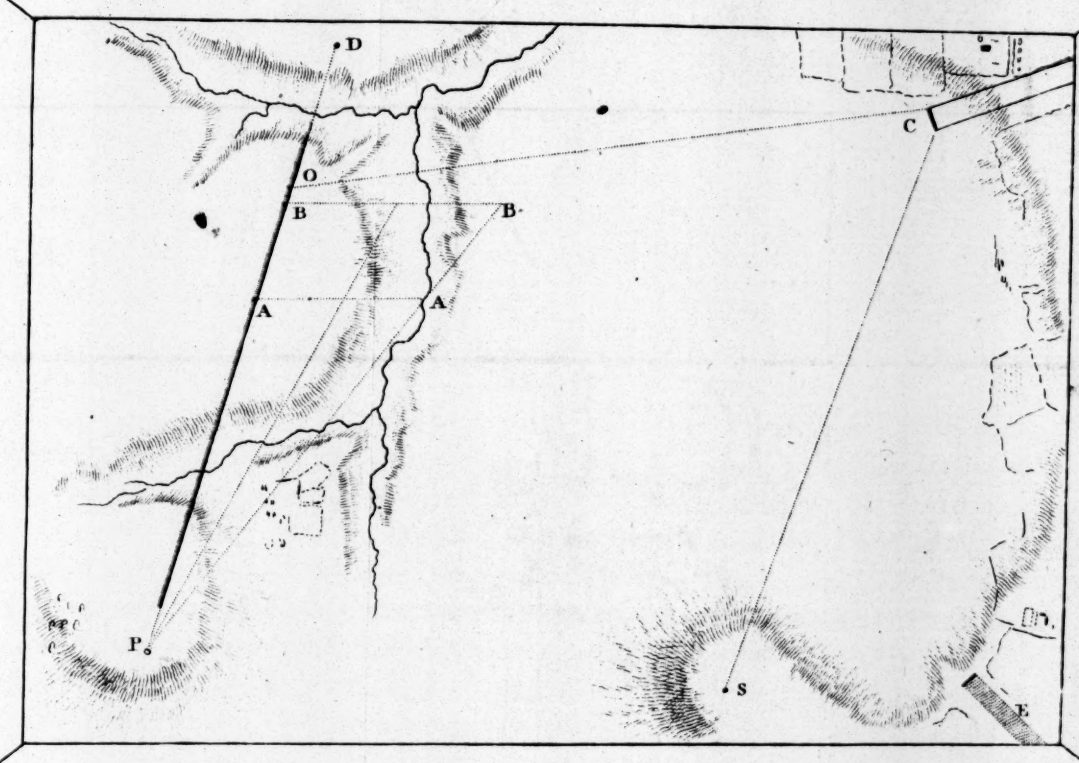
2



3



4

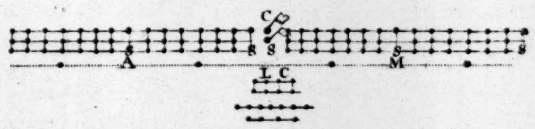


5

One Company Formed at Close Order.

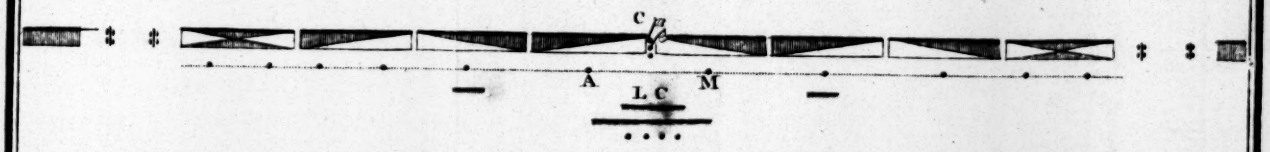


The two Center Companies of a Batt.n Formed at Close Order.



6

A Battalion Formed at Close Order.

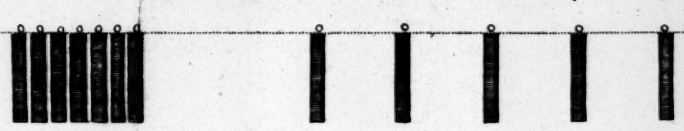


7

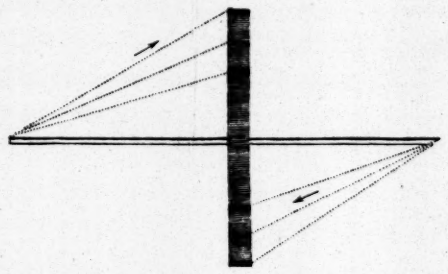


Neale sc 352 Strand

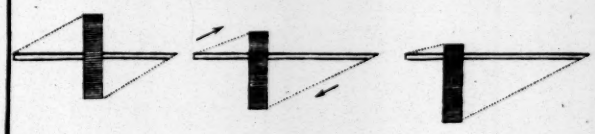
8



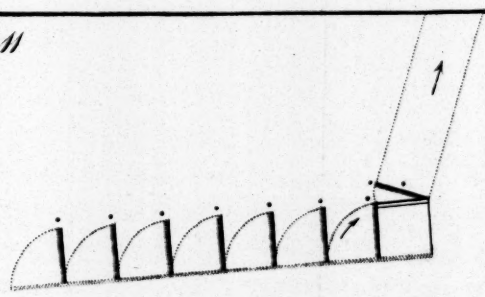
9



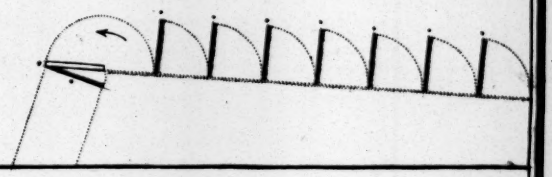
10



11



12



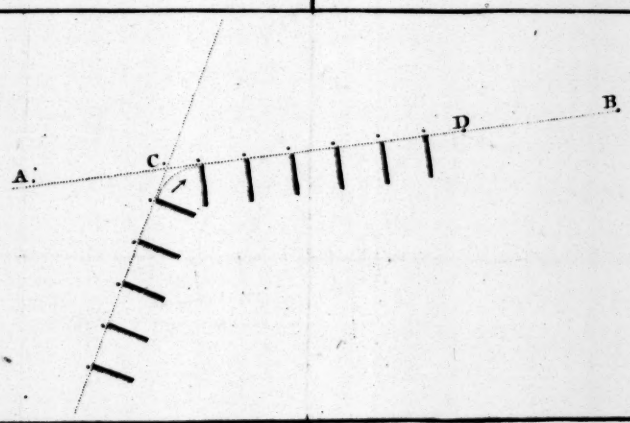
13



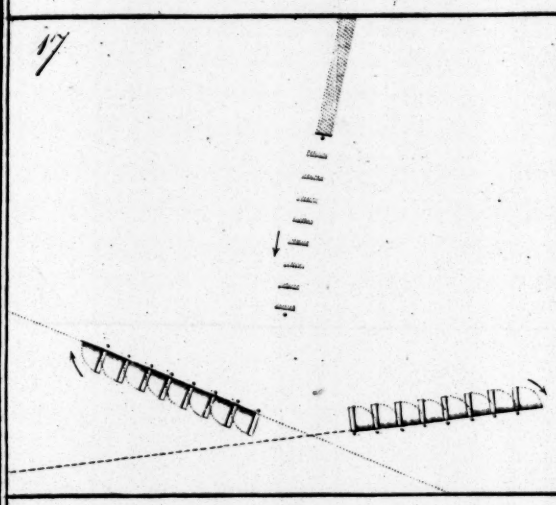
14



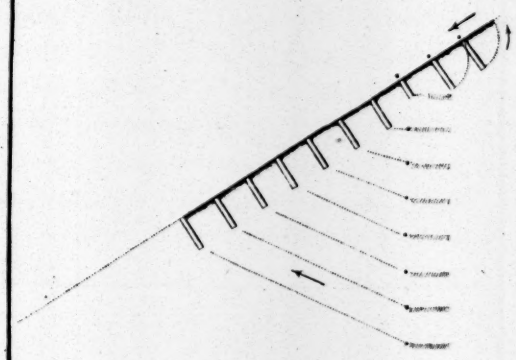
15



17



18



19

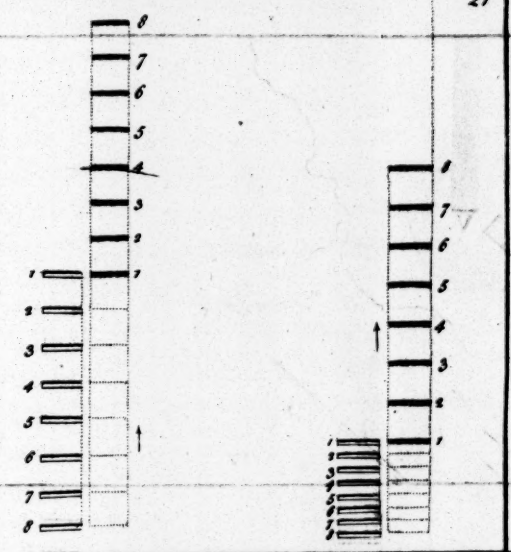


20

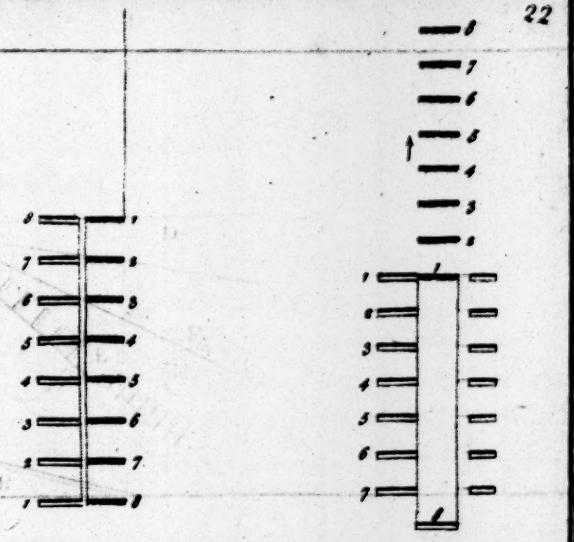


Nail. sculp. 35 St. Strand

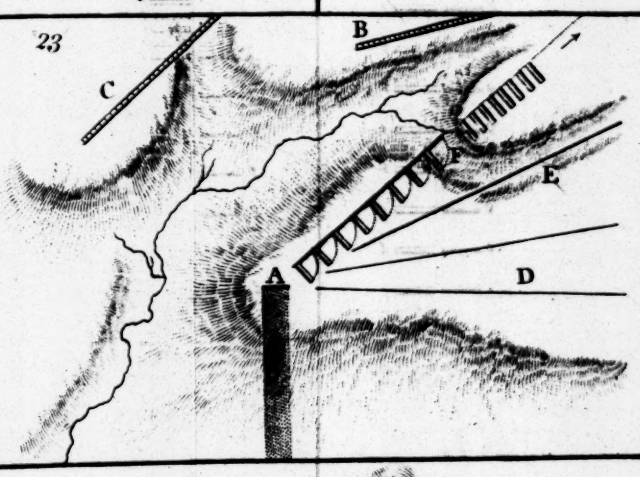
21



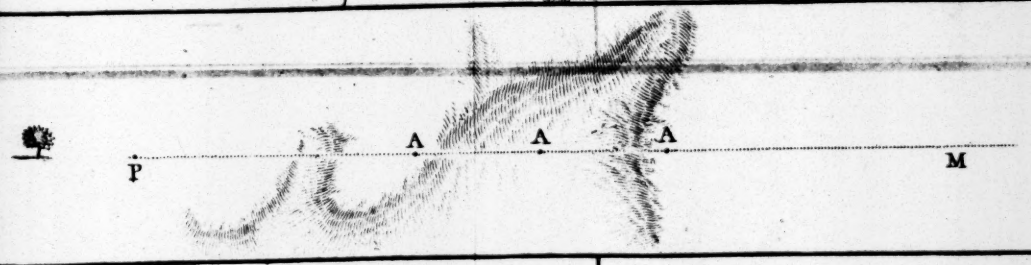
22



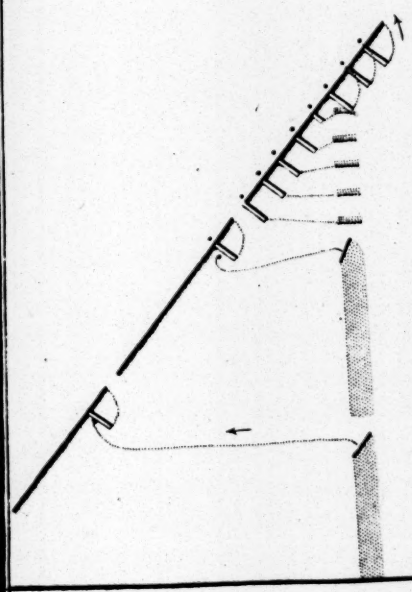
23



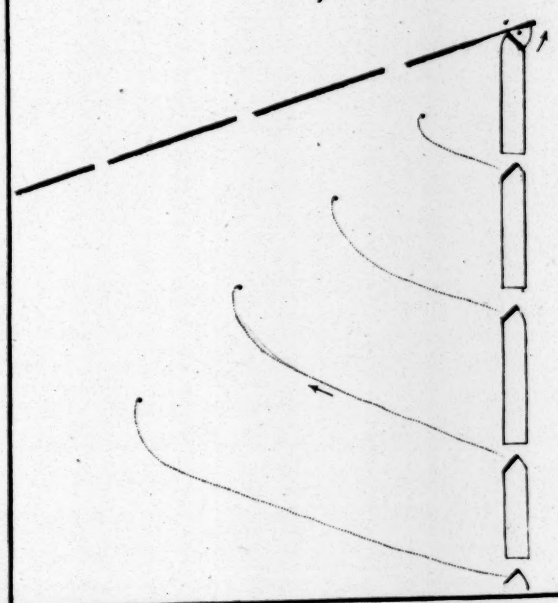
25



26



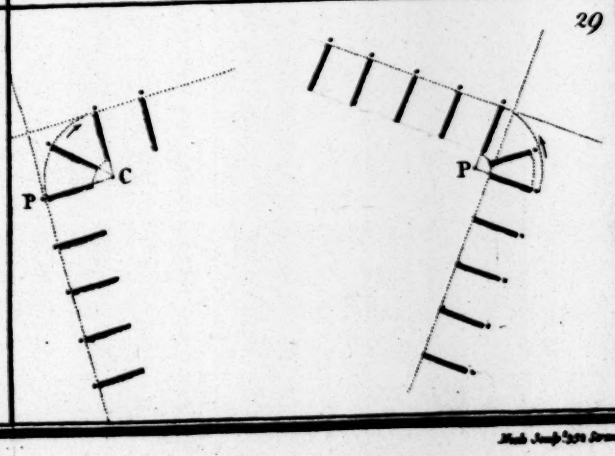
27



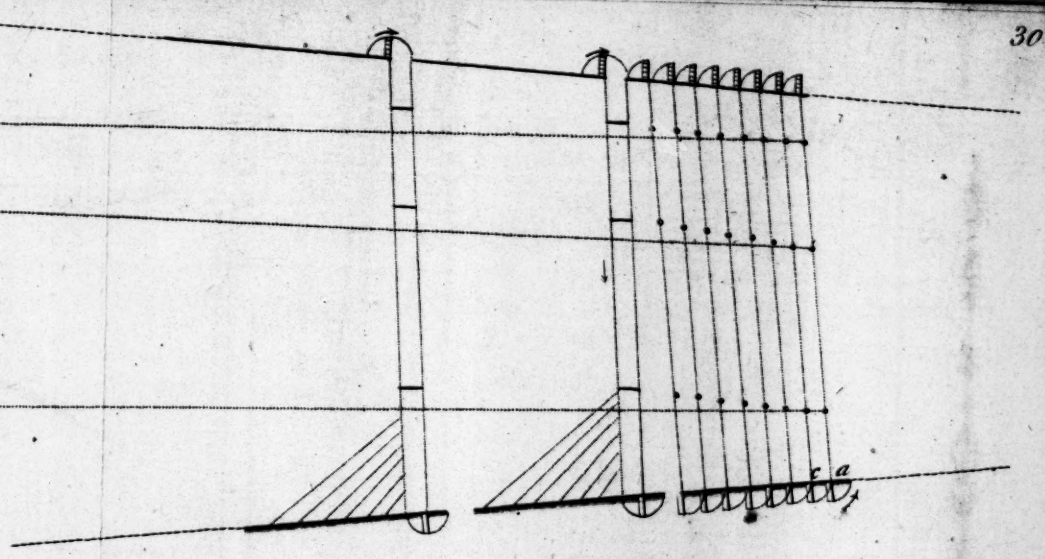
28



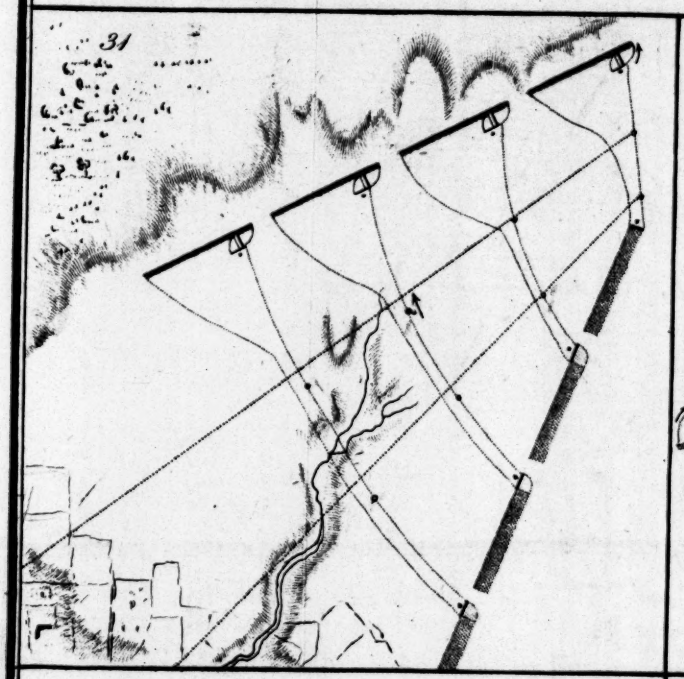
29



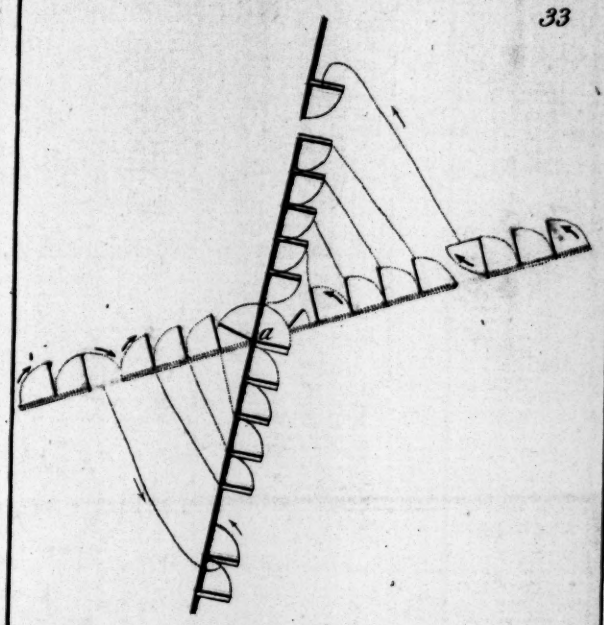
30



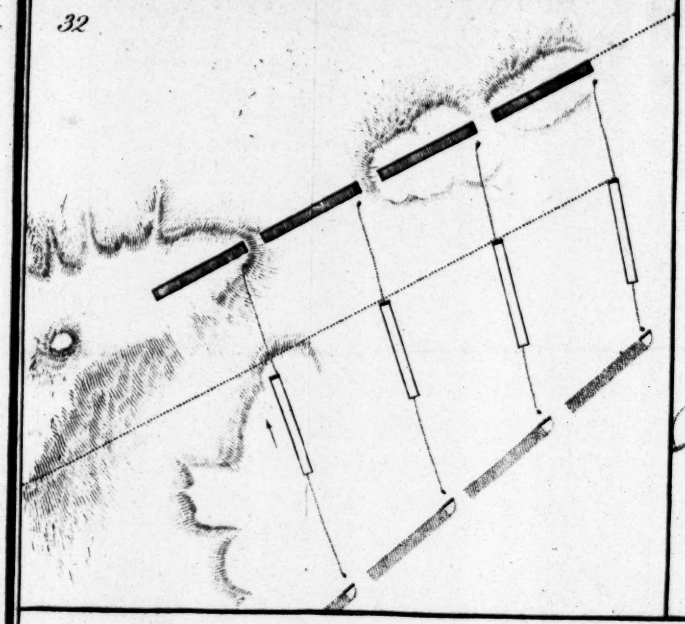
31



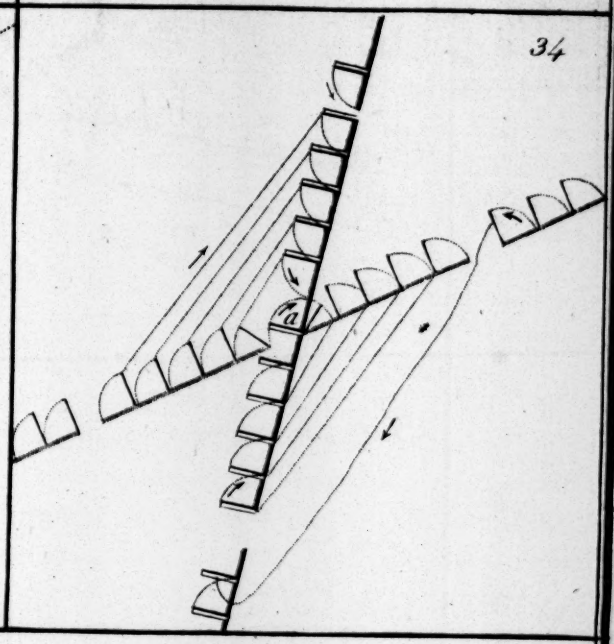
33



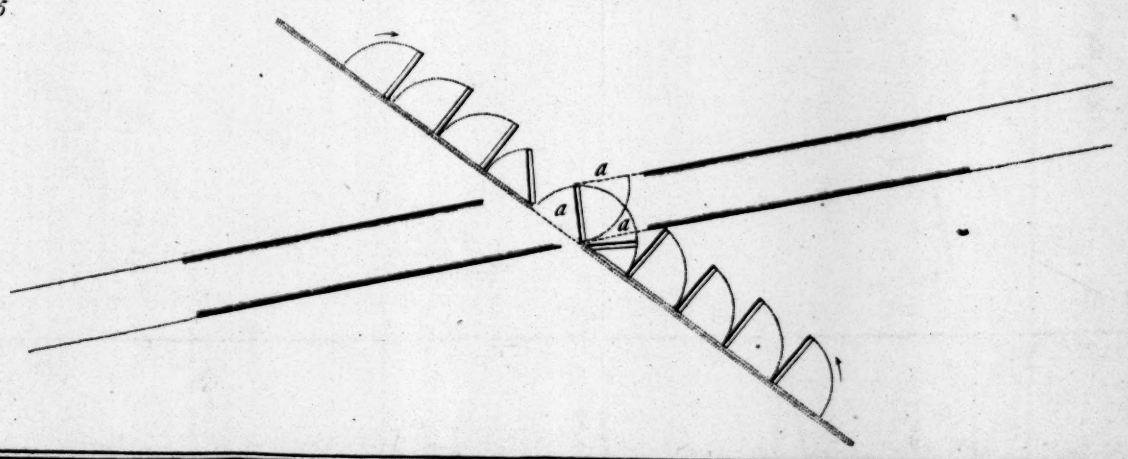
32



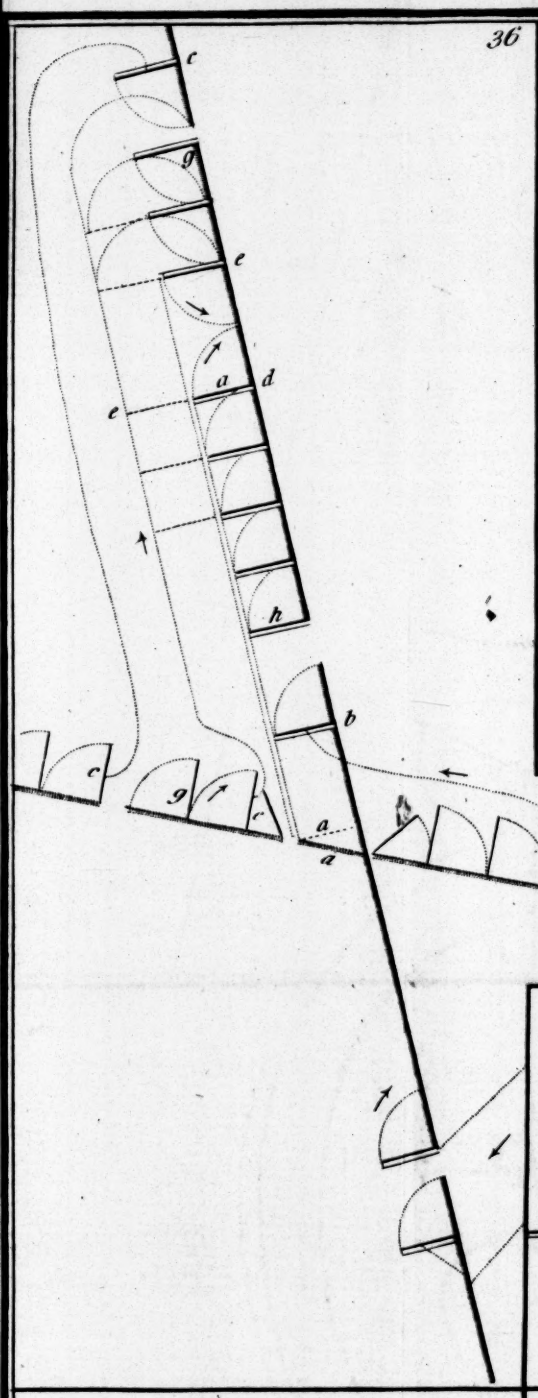
34



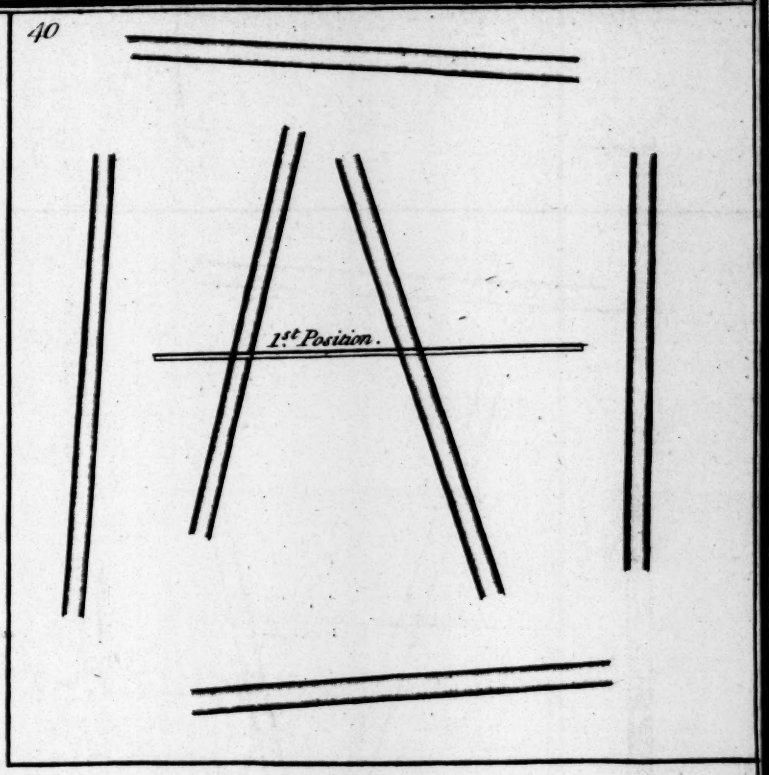
35



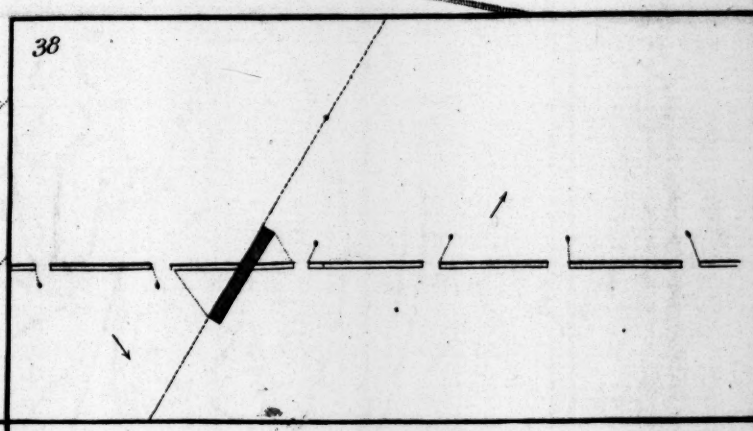
36



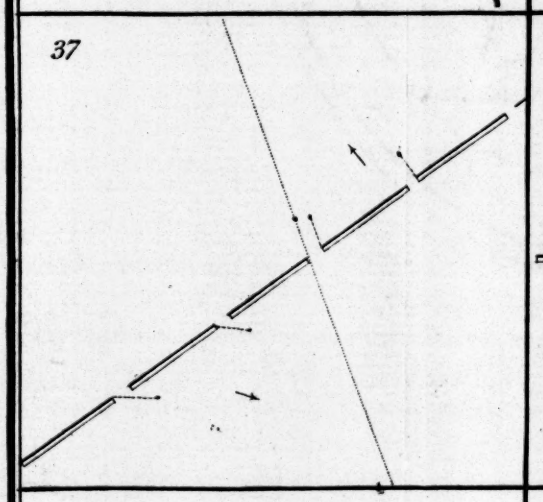
40



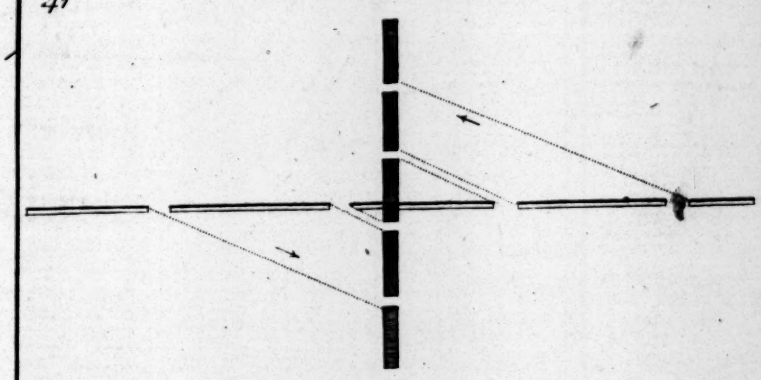
38



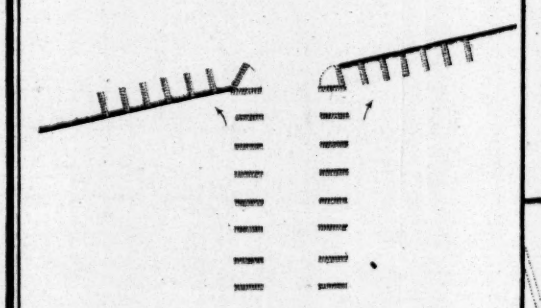
37



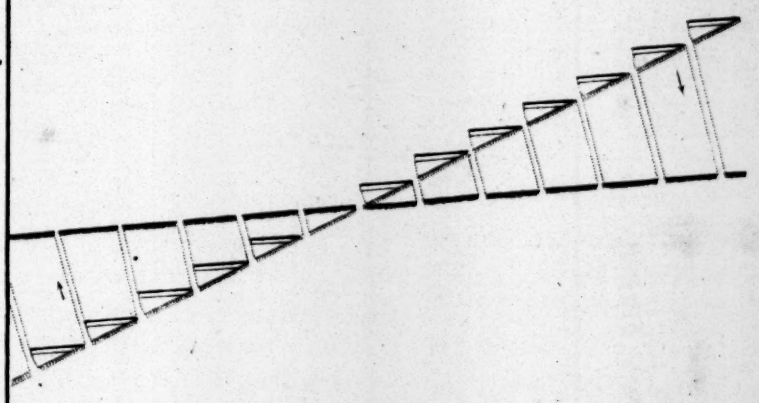
41



39



12

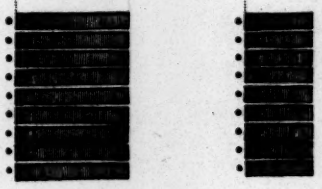


Neele sculp.t 352 Strand.

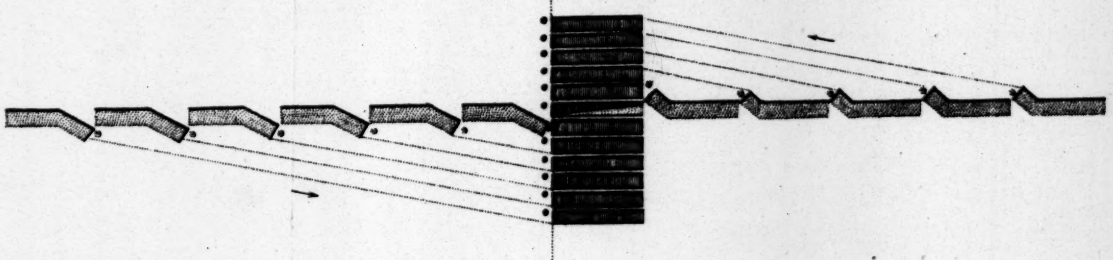
43



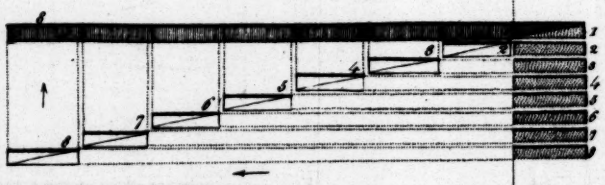
44



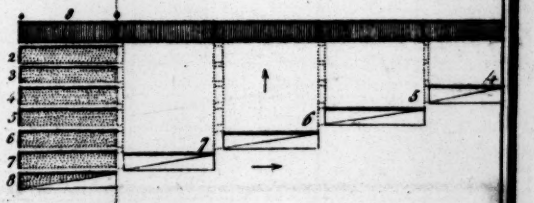
45



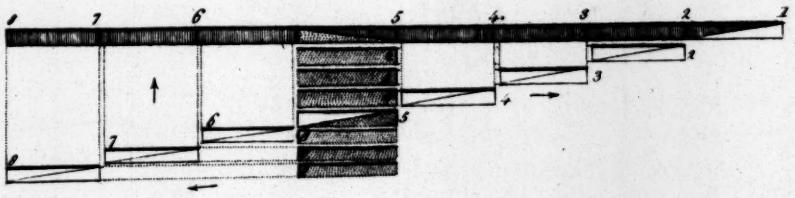
46



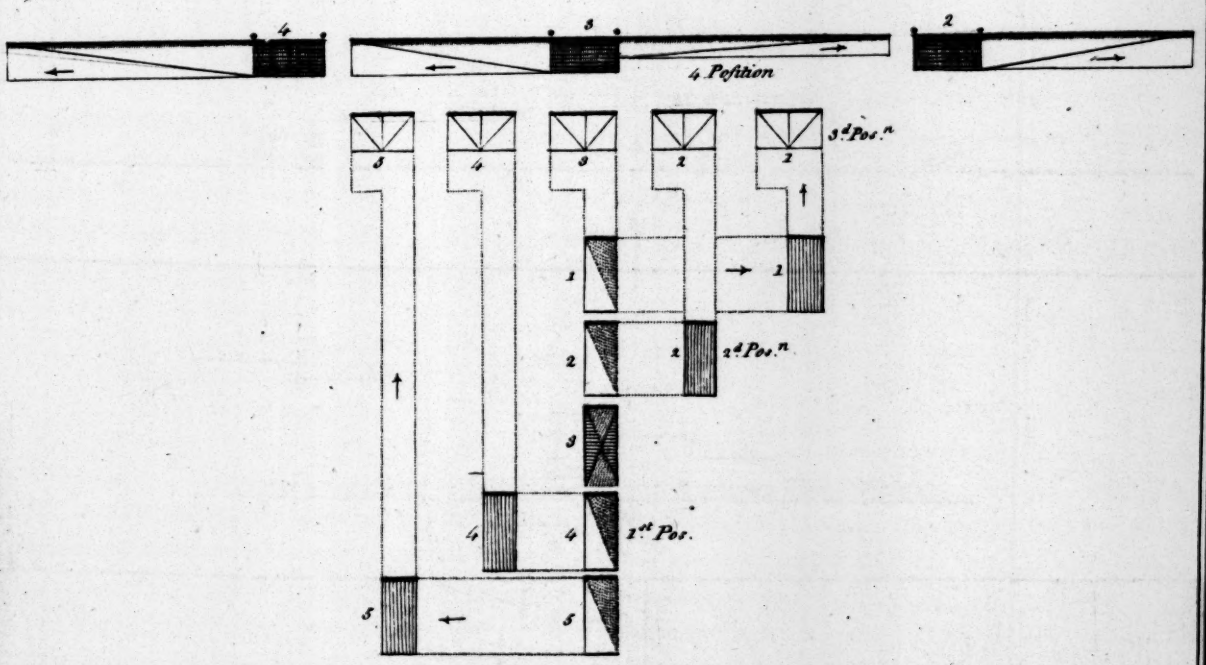
47



48

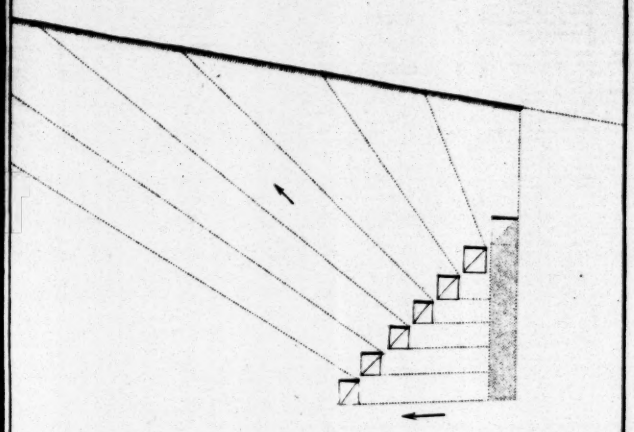


49

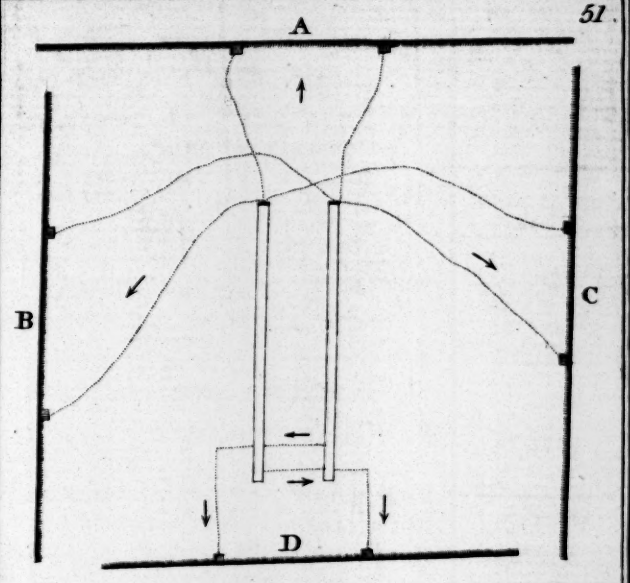


Neele sc. 352 Strand.

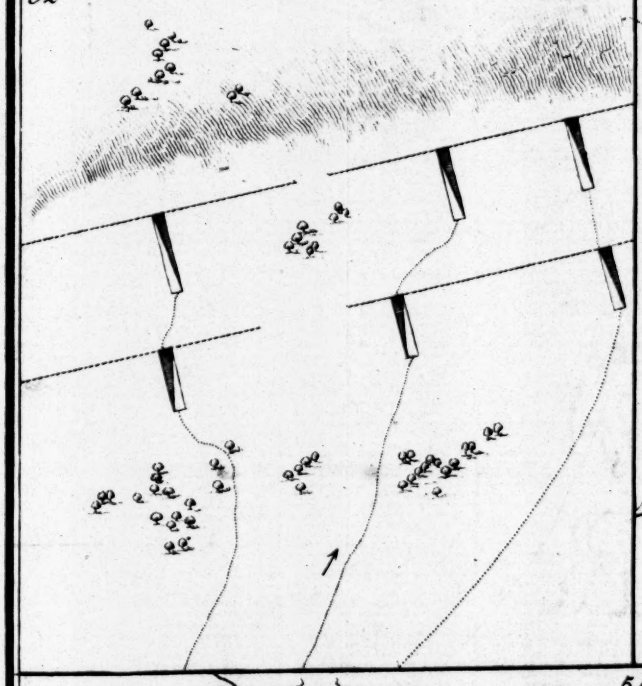
50



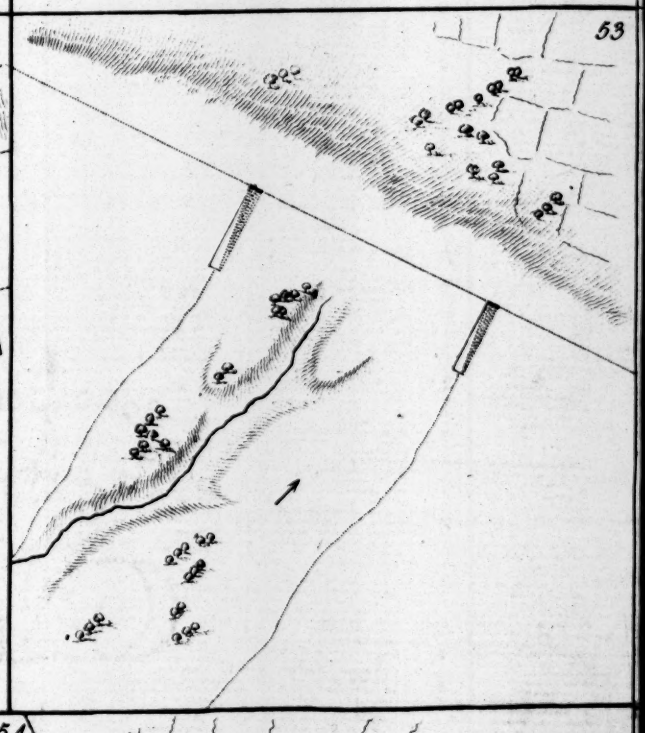
51



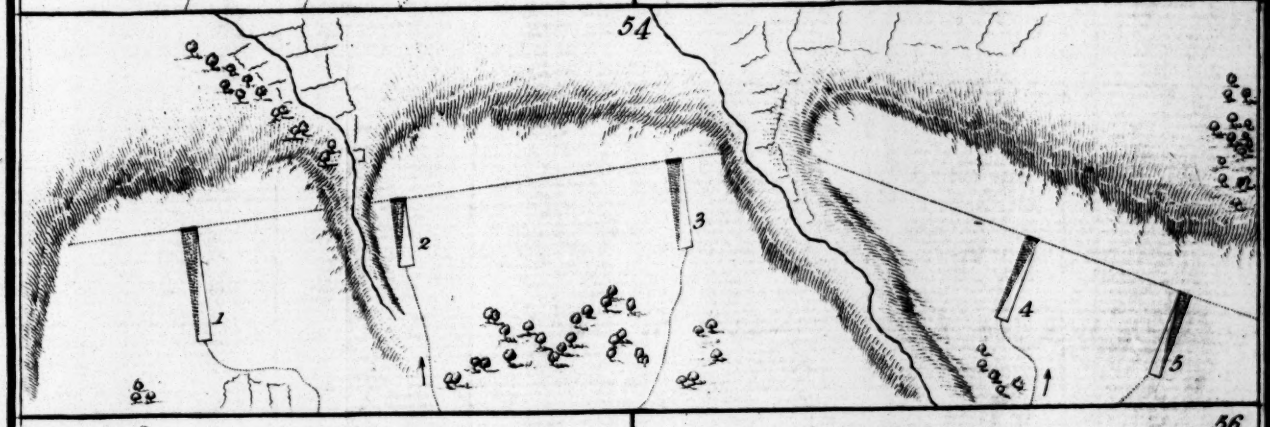
52



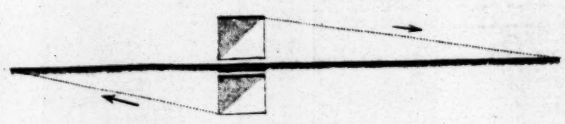
53



54



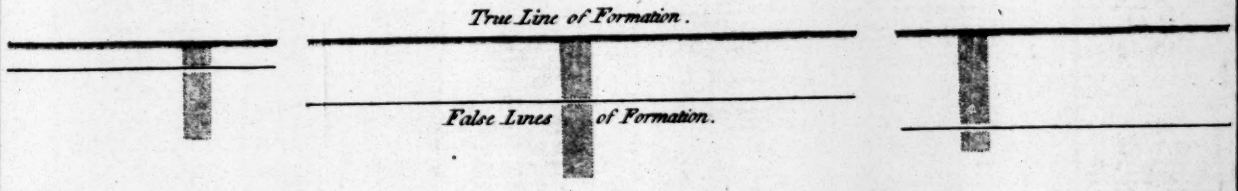
55



56

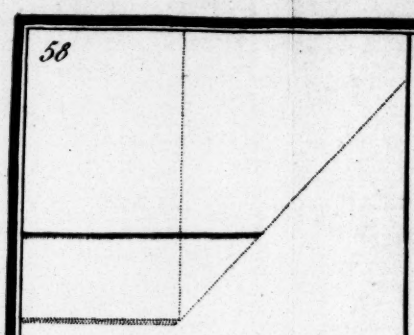


57

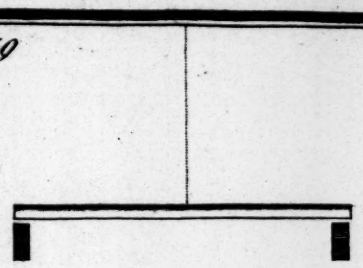


S. Neele sculp.t Strand.

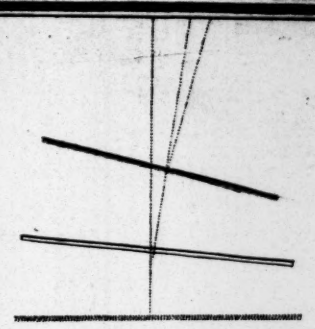
58



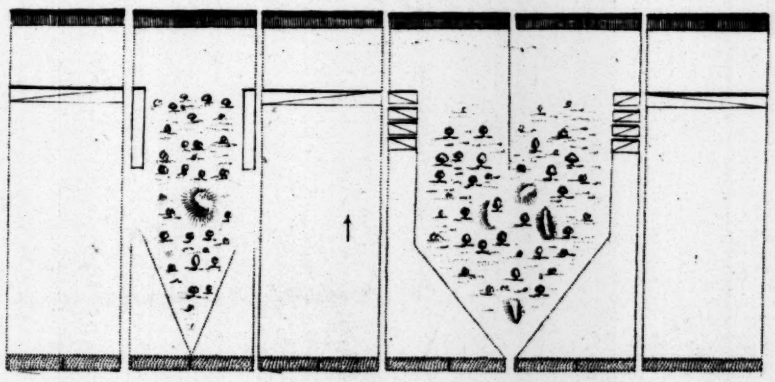
59



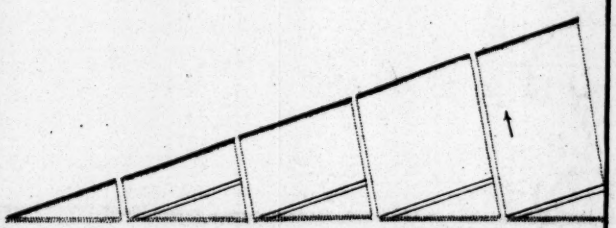
60



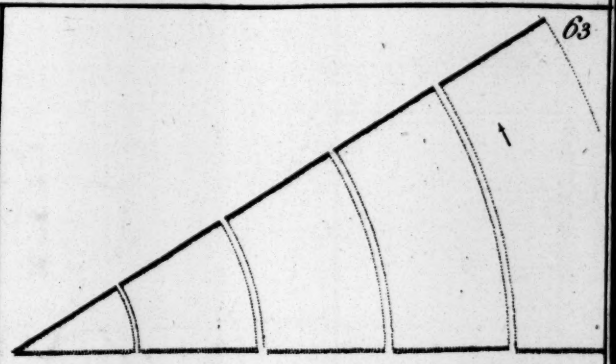
61



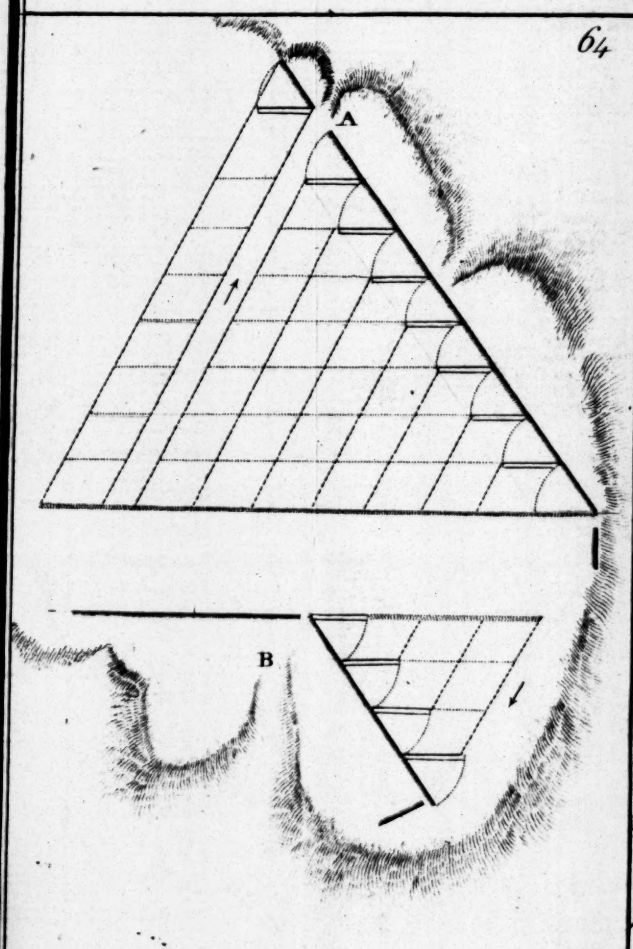
62



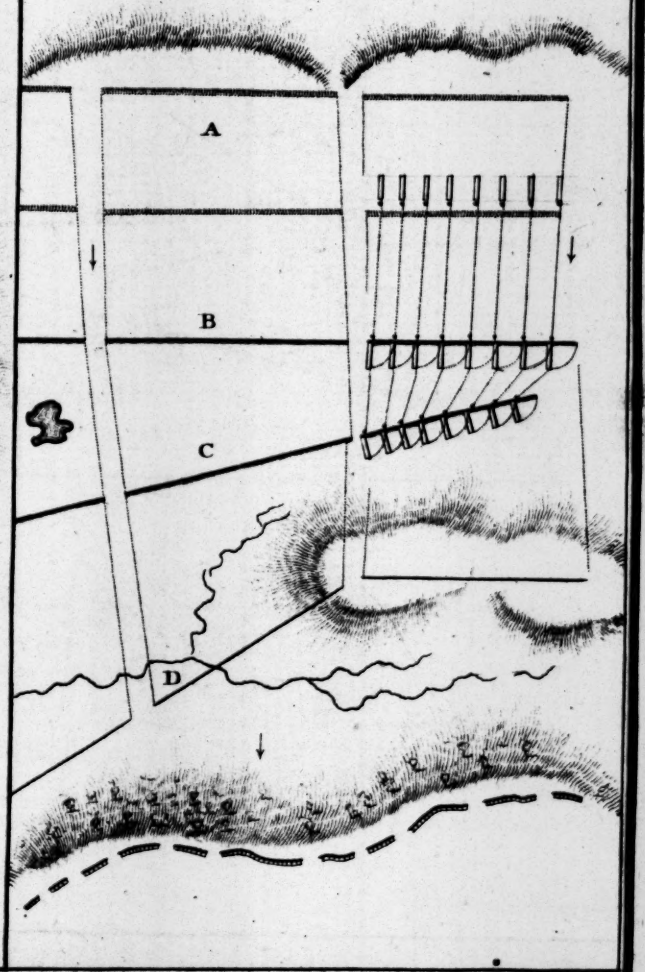
63



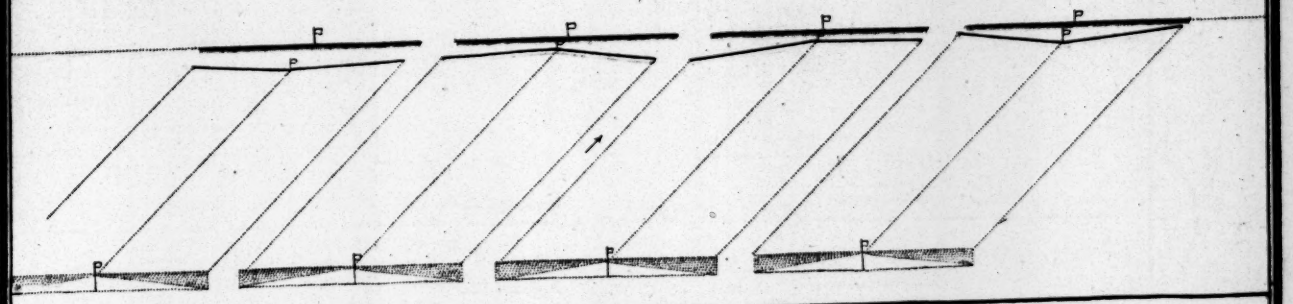
64



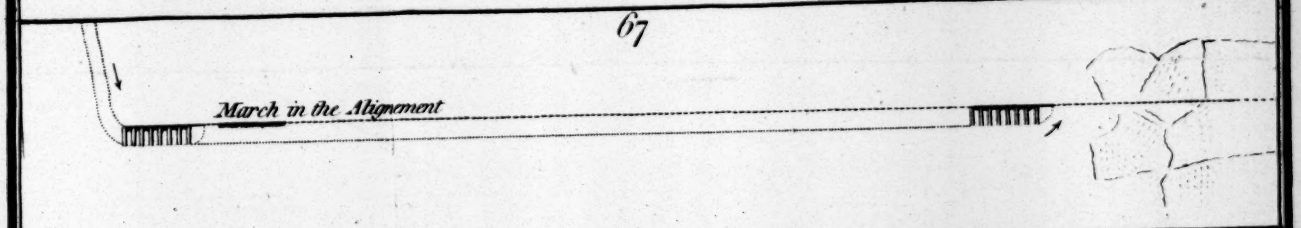
63



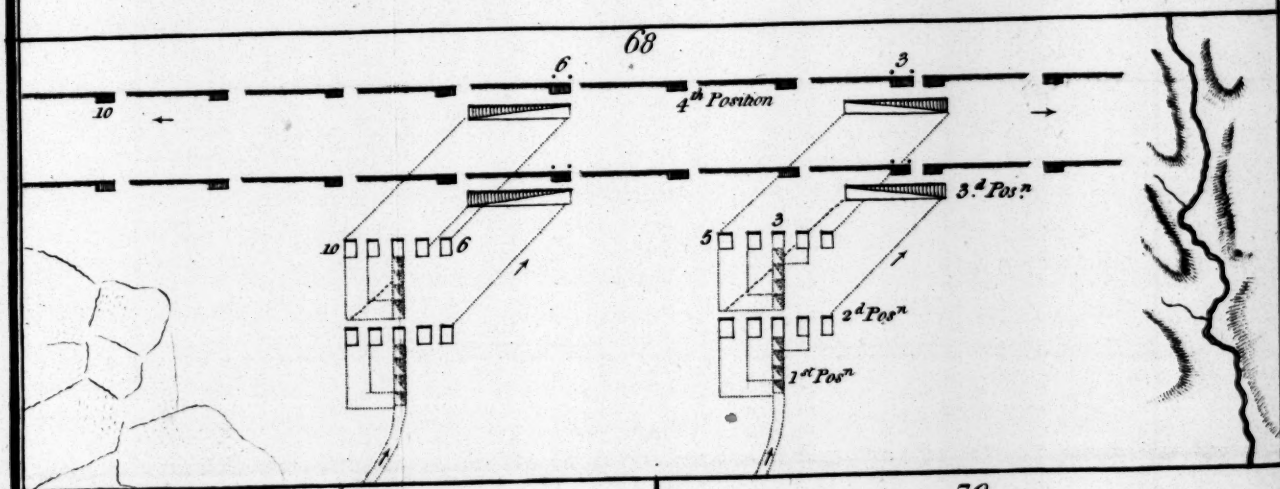
66



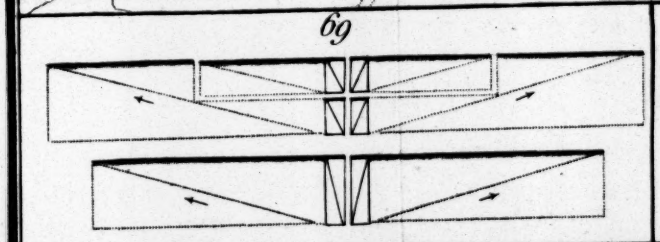
67



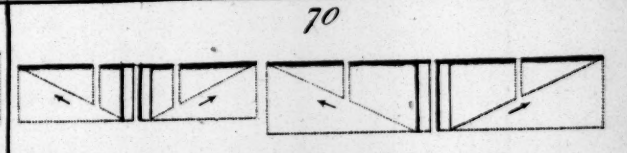
68



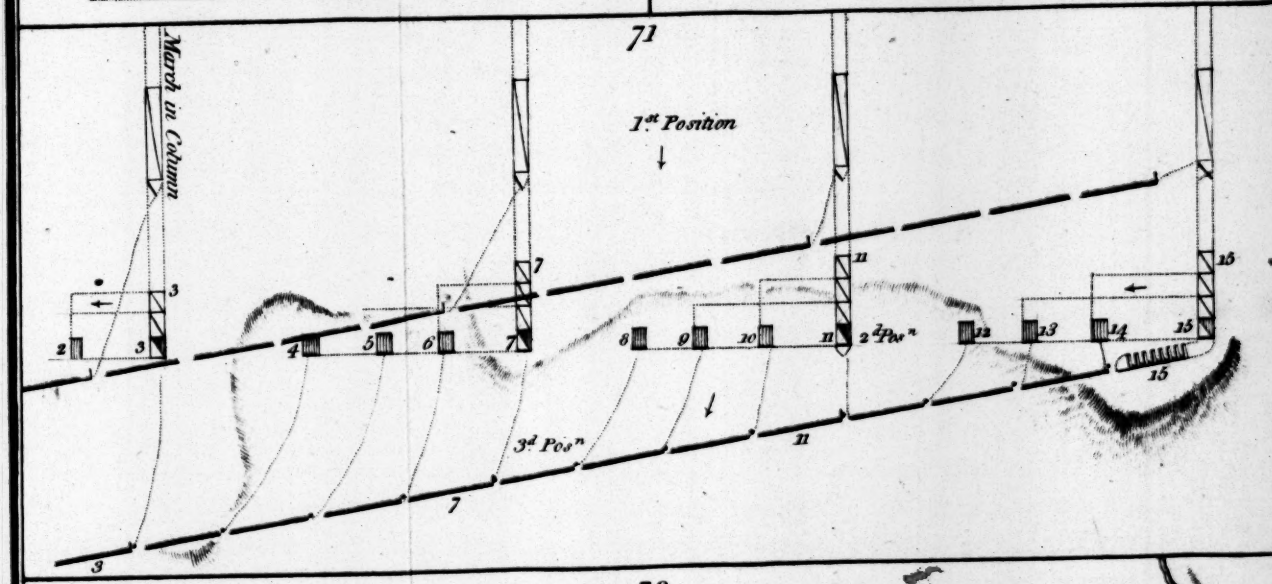
69



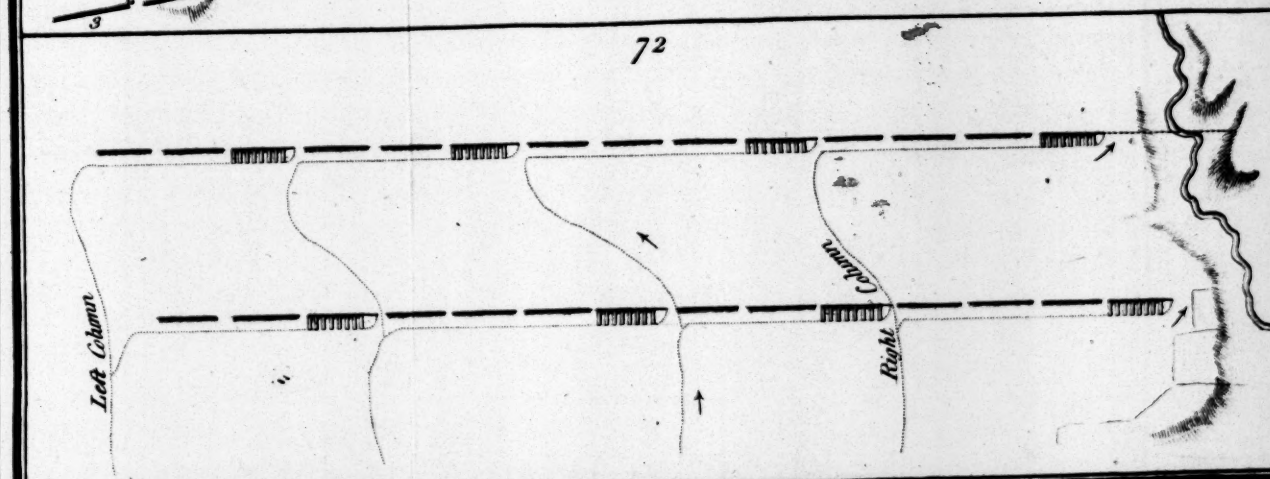
70



71

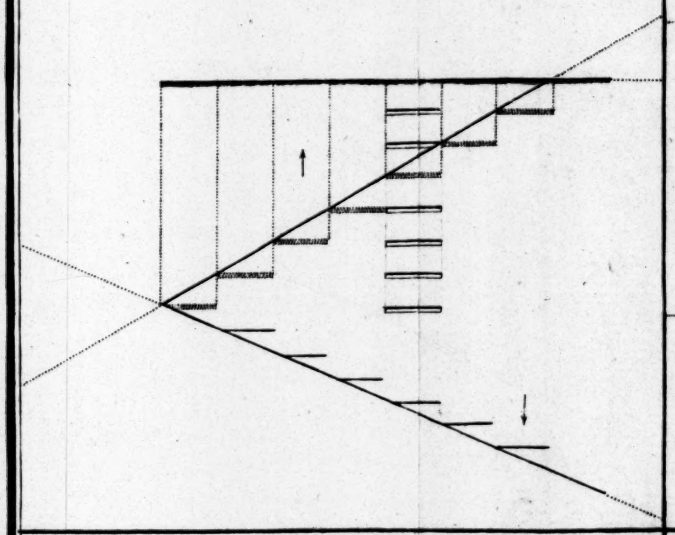


72

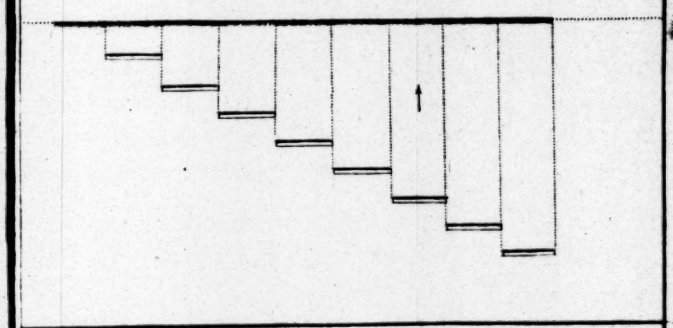


S. Neale sculp.t 35 a Strand

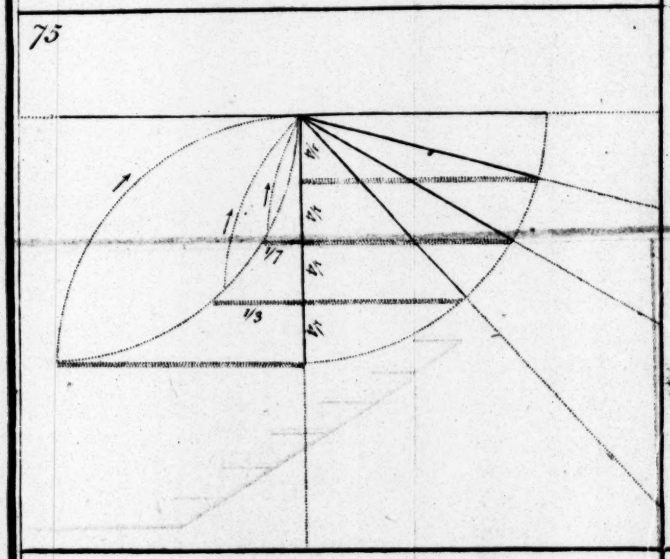
73



74



75



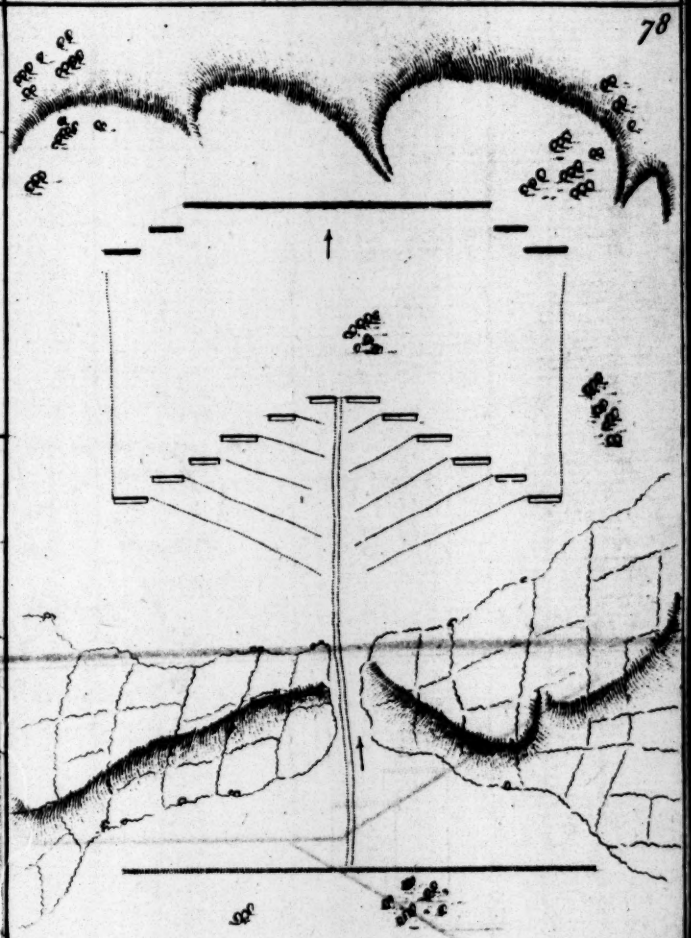
76



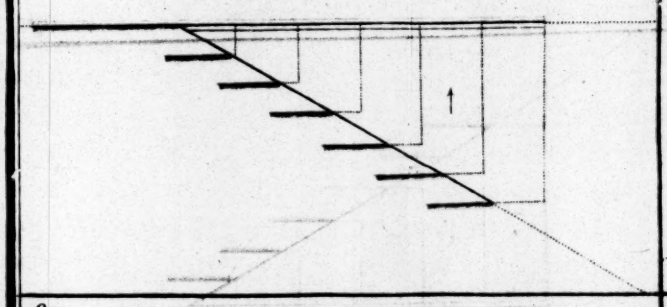
77



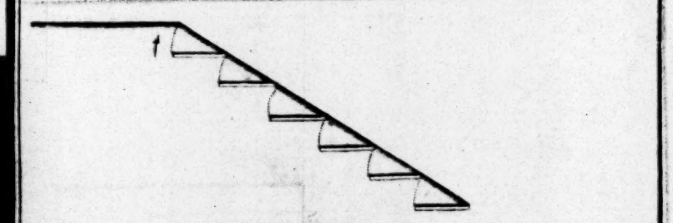
78



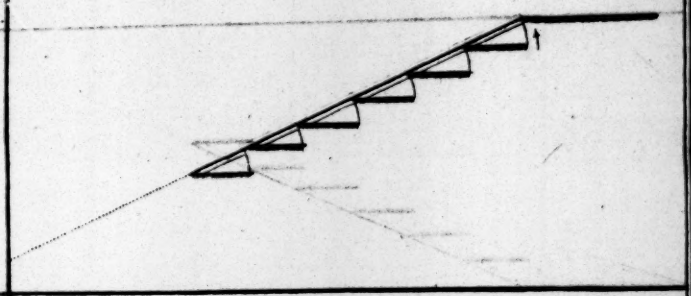
79



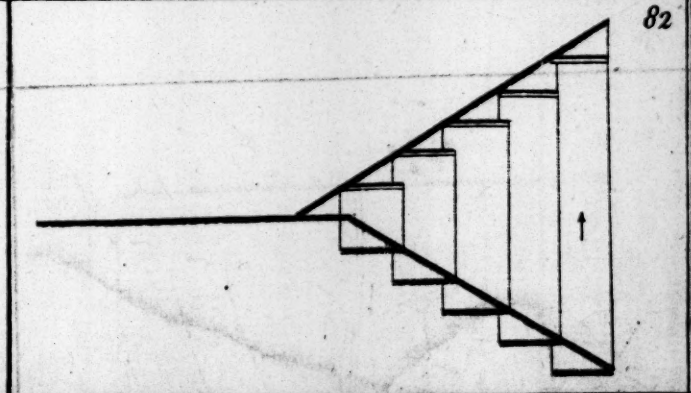
80



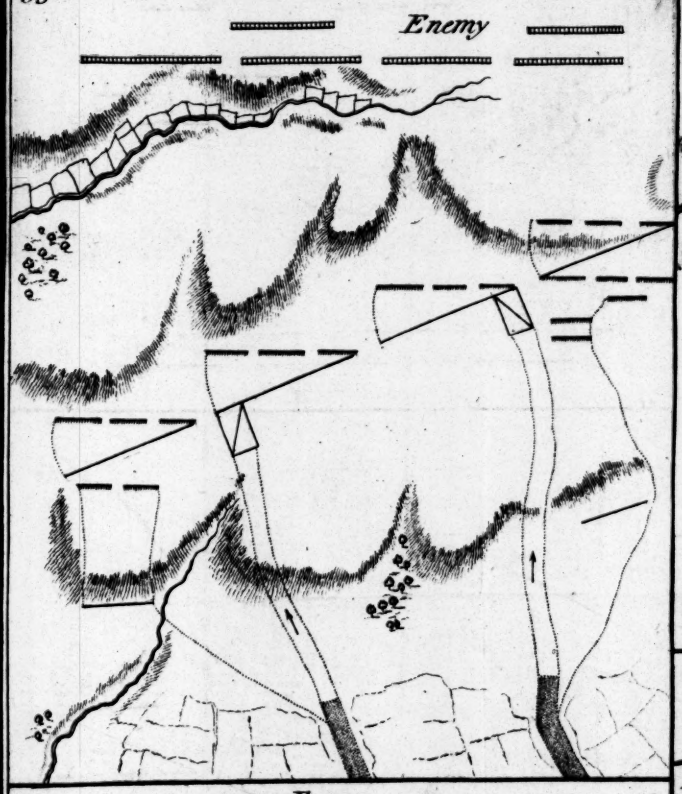
81



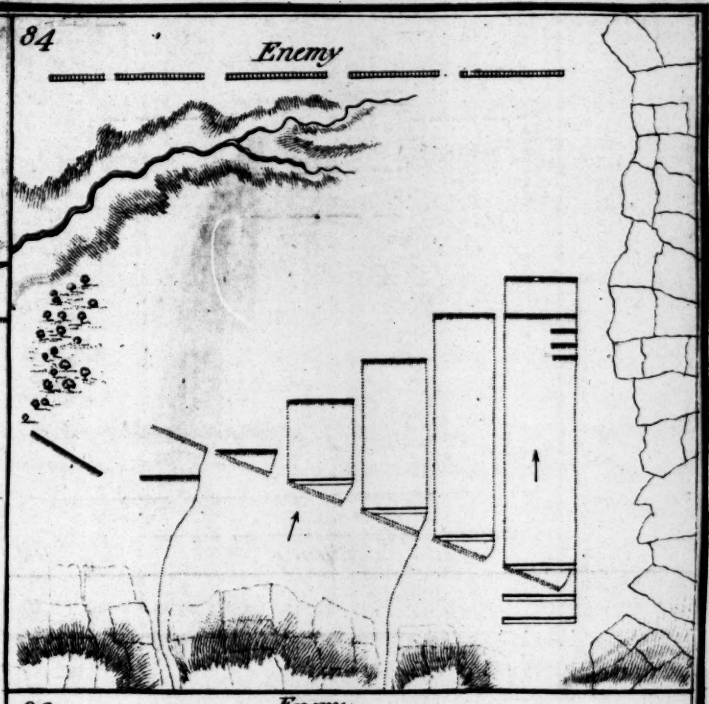
82



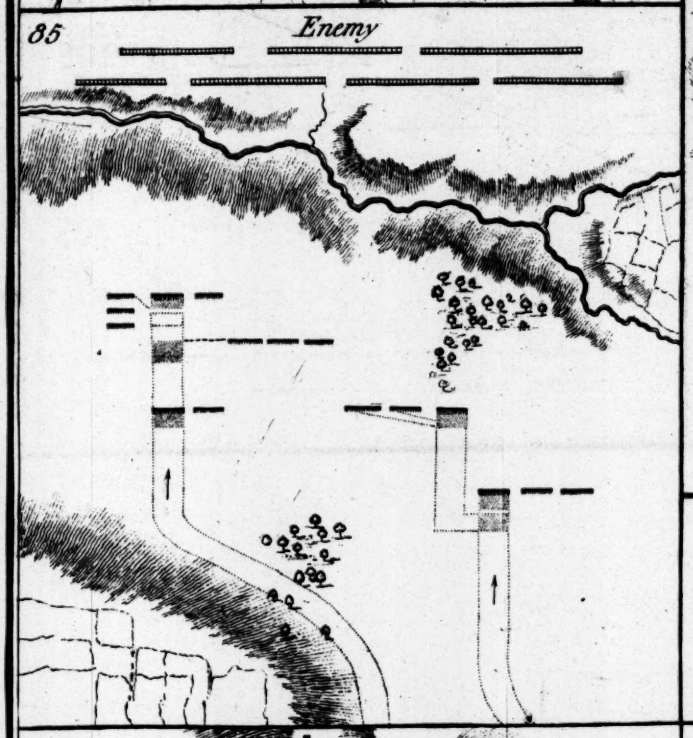
83



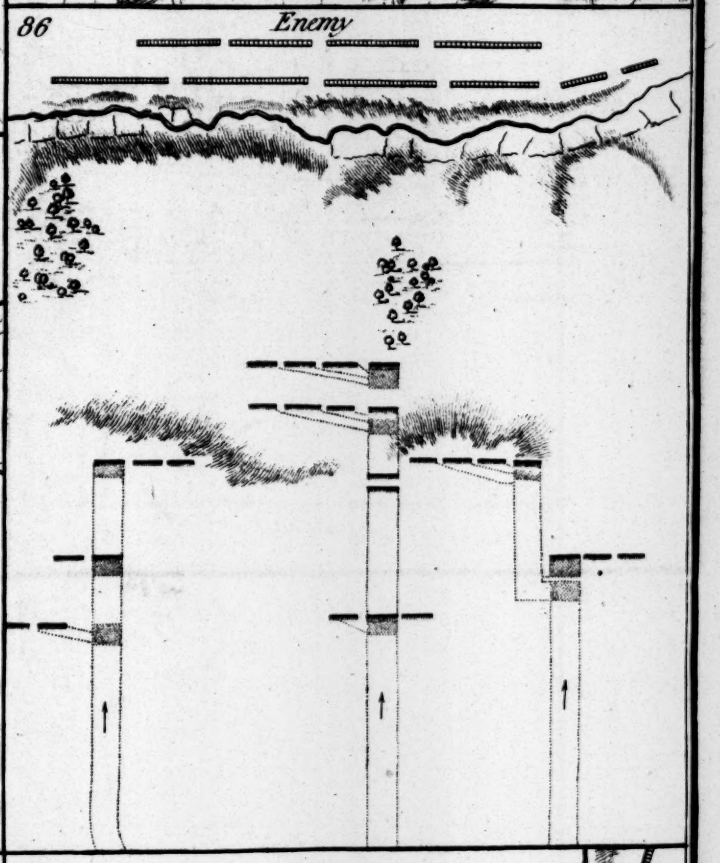
84



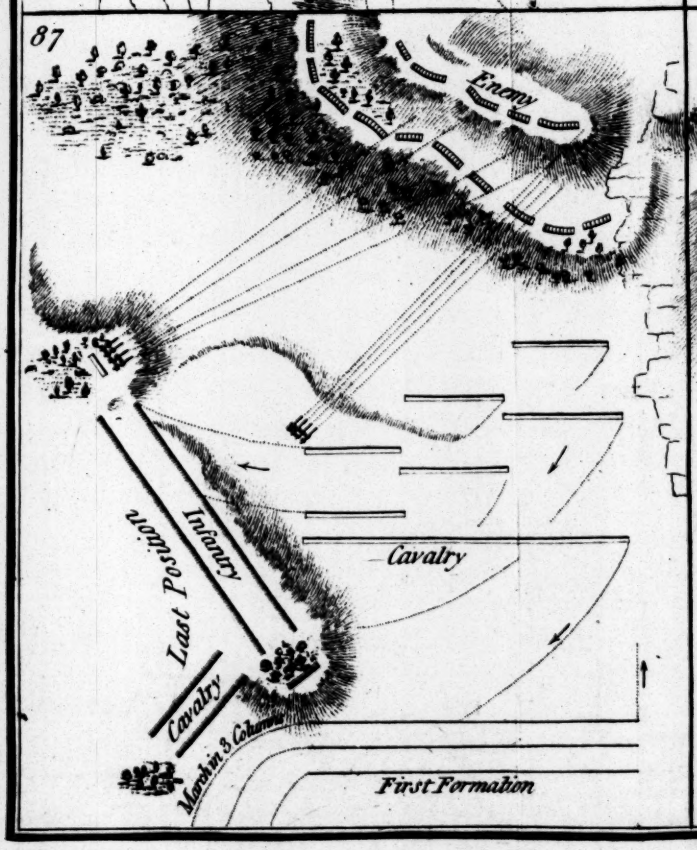
85



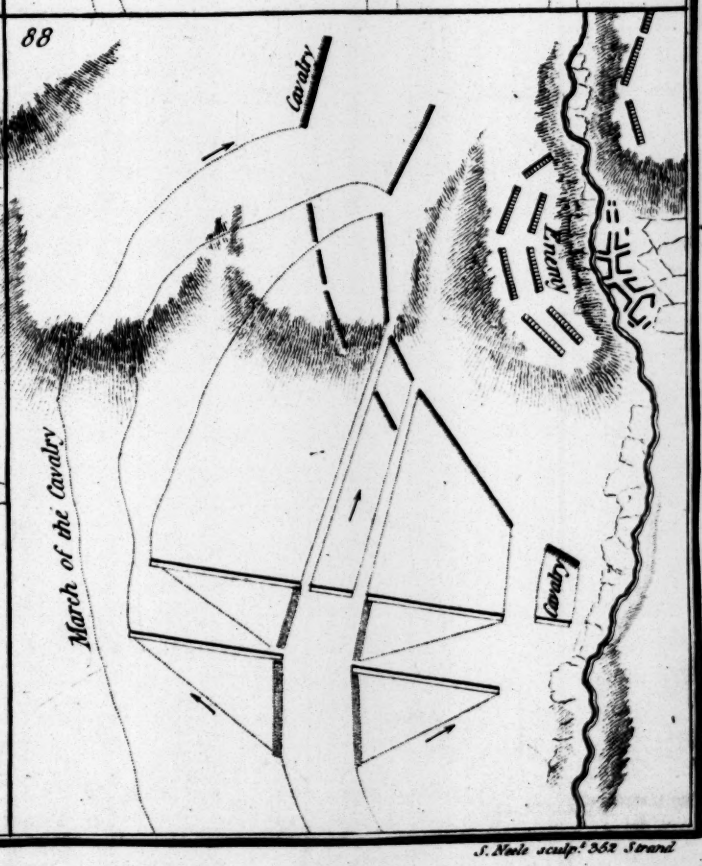
86



87

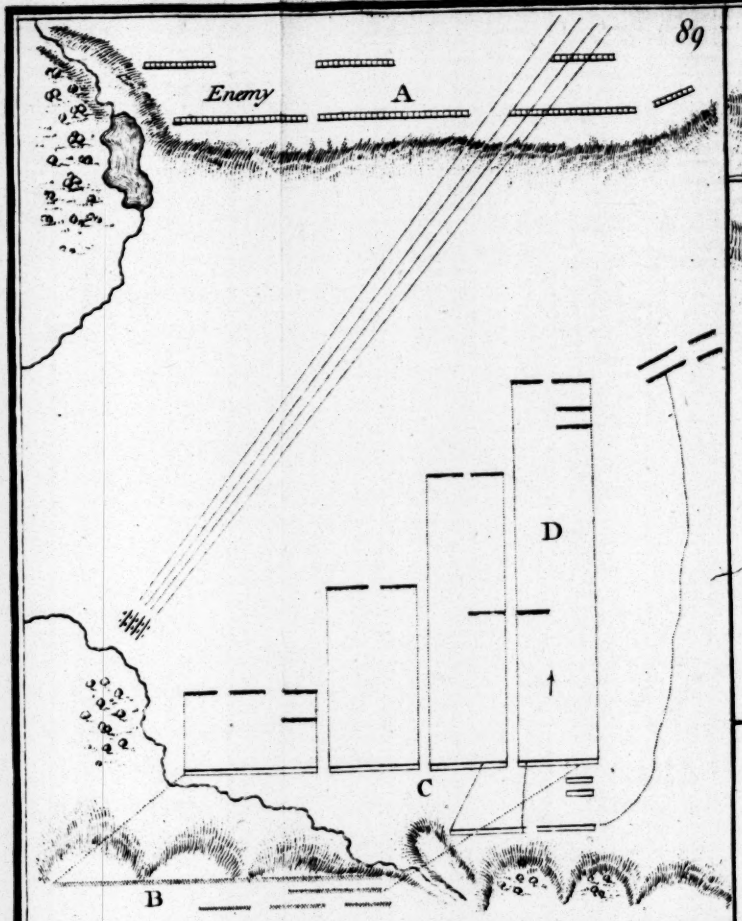


88

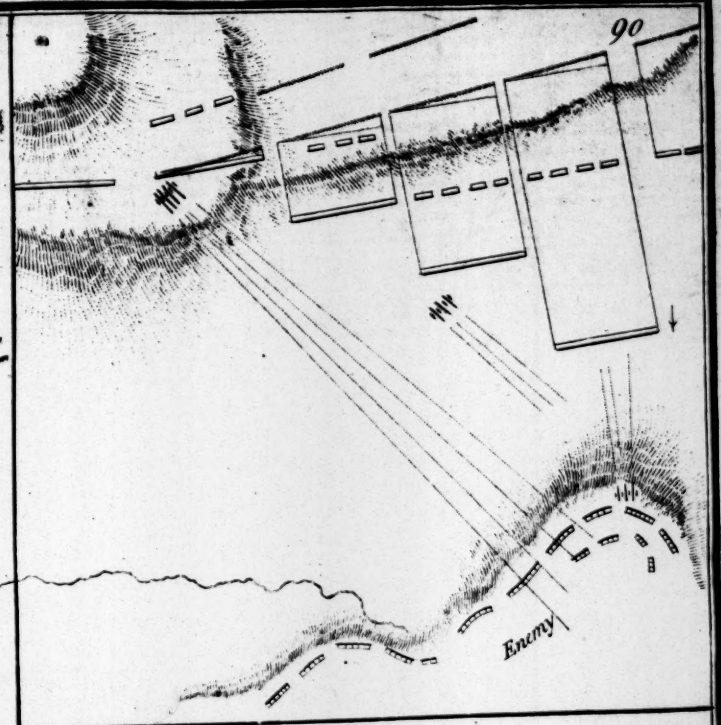


S. Neale sculp.t 362 Strand

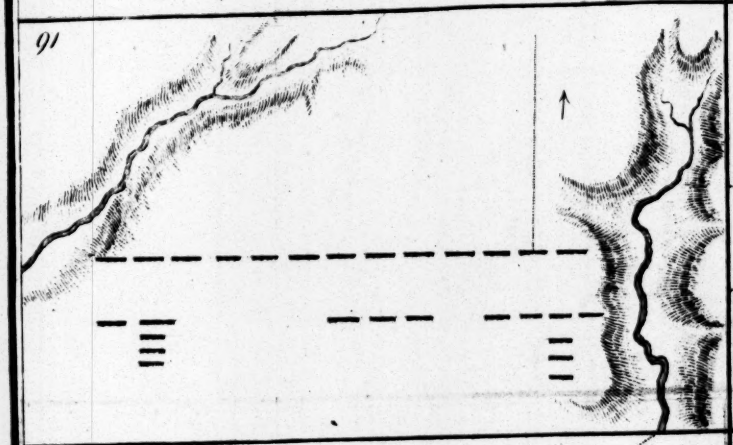
89



90



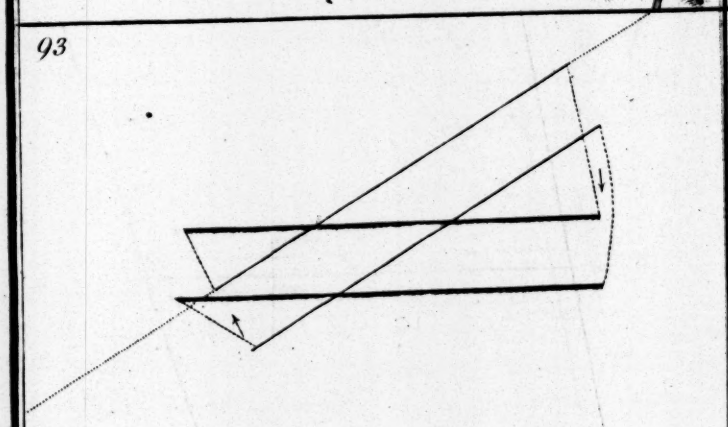
91



92



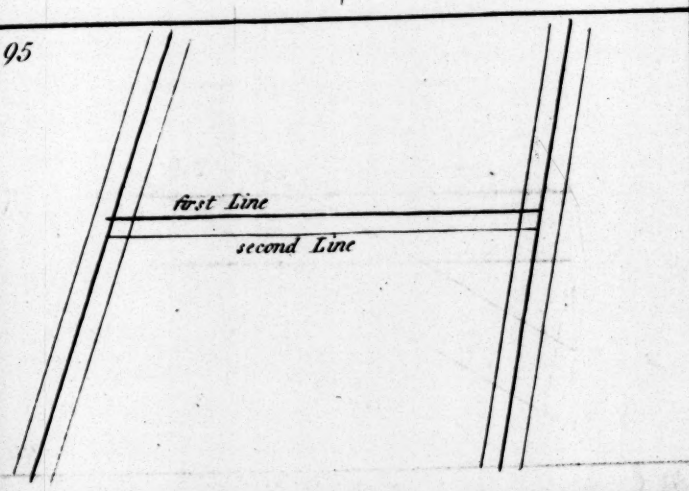
93



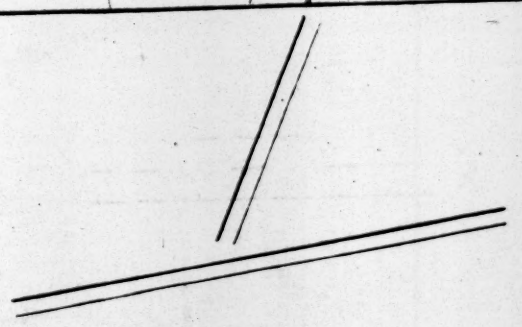
94



95



96



Neele sc. 352 Strand.

97

98

99

100

A

10

1

2

9

14

11

O

B

3

D

8

12

15

13

4

7

6

5

C

First Lines are marked Strong.
Second Lines are marked Small.

101

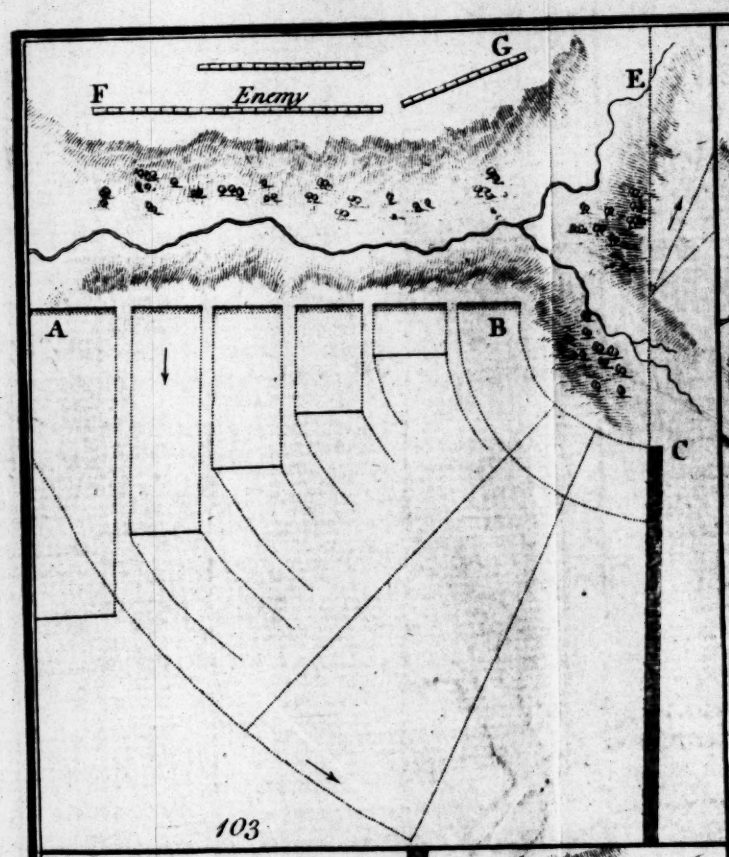
A

B

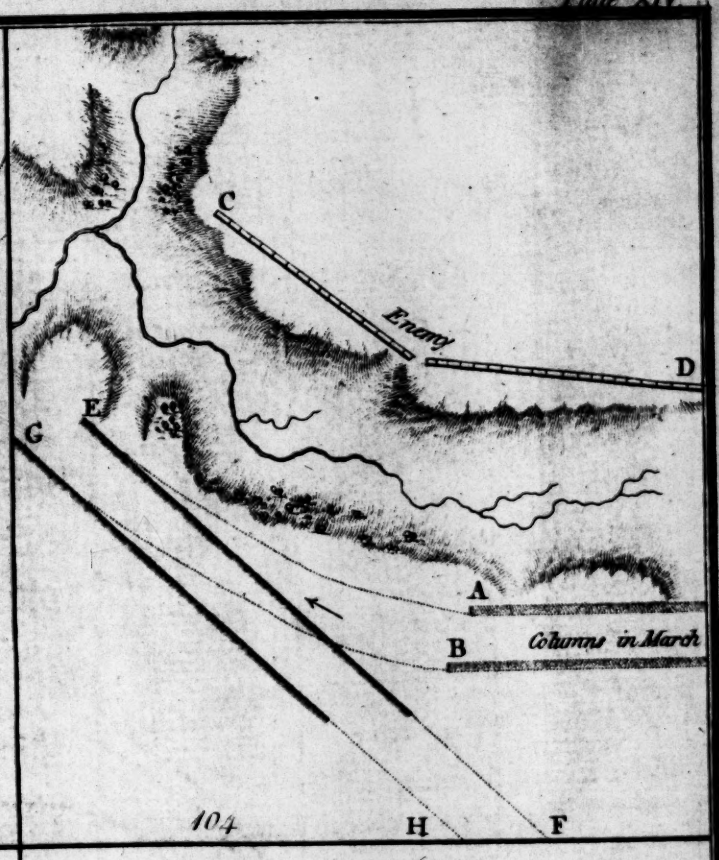
D

102

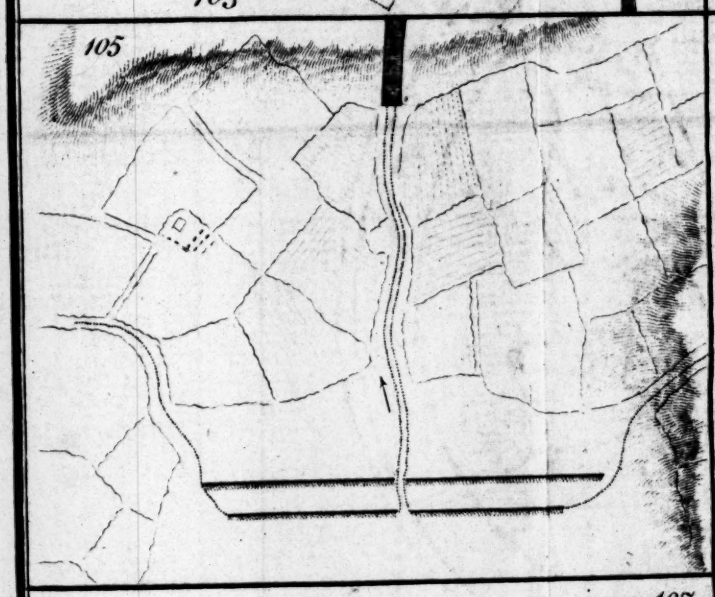
Rich. Sculp. 1790 Strand.



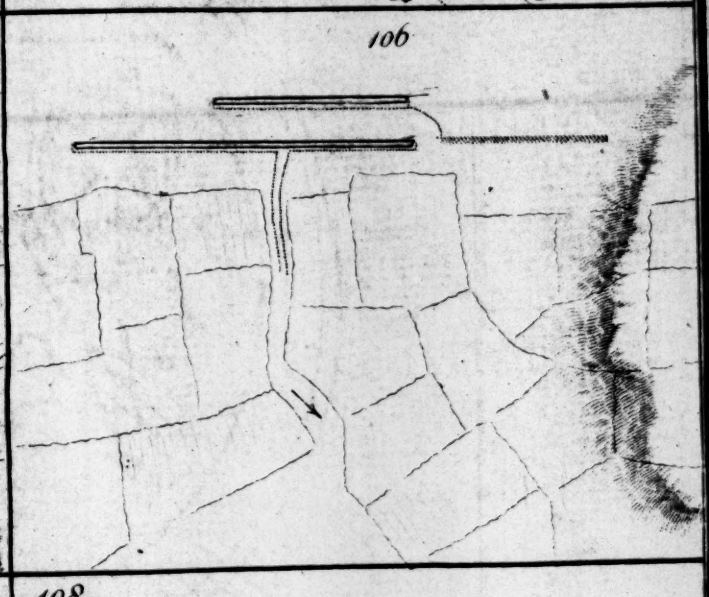
103



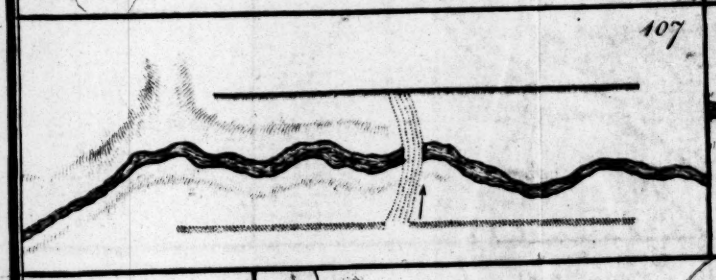
104



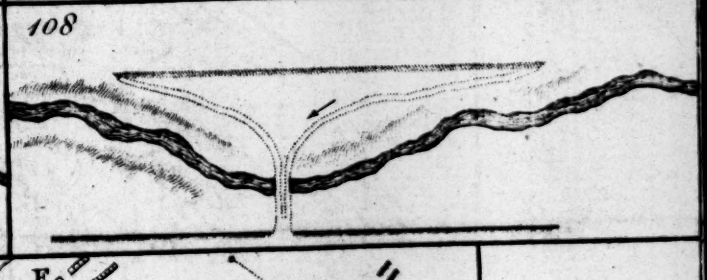
105



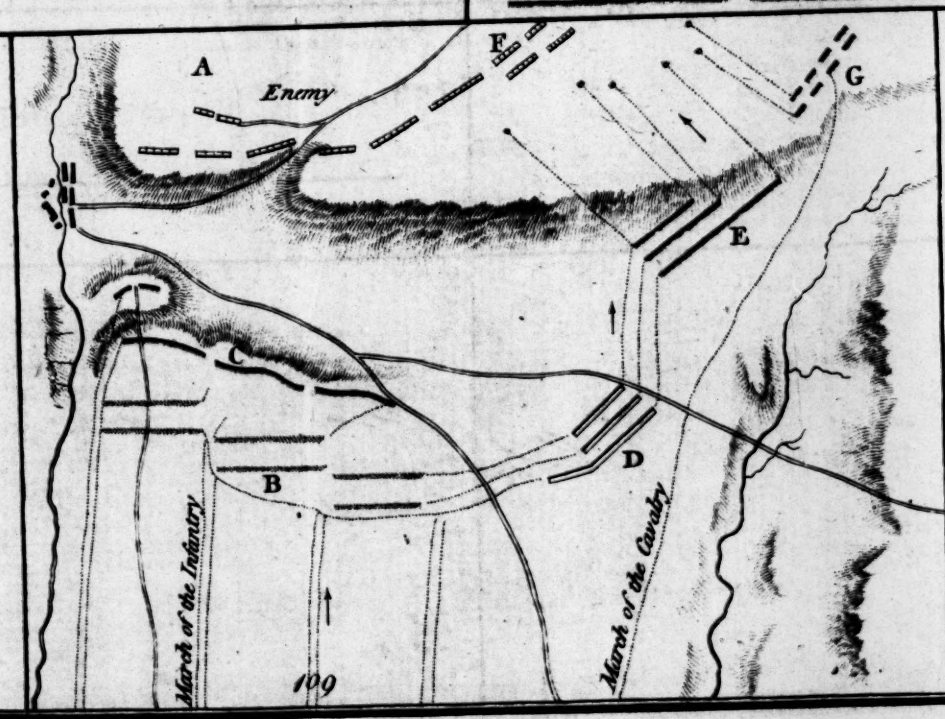
106



107

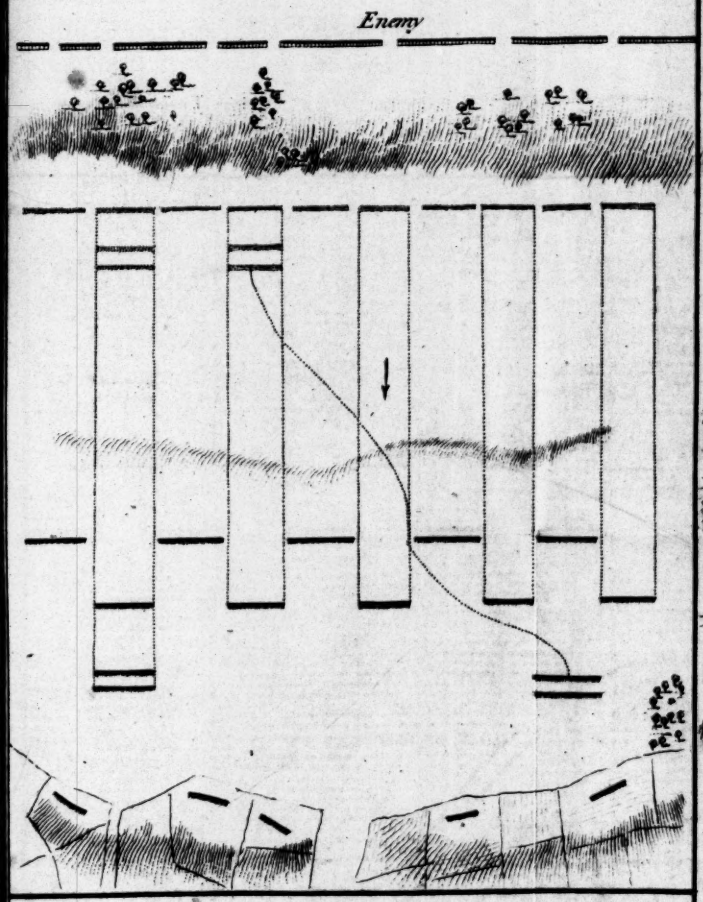


108

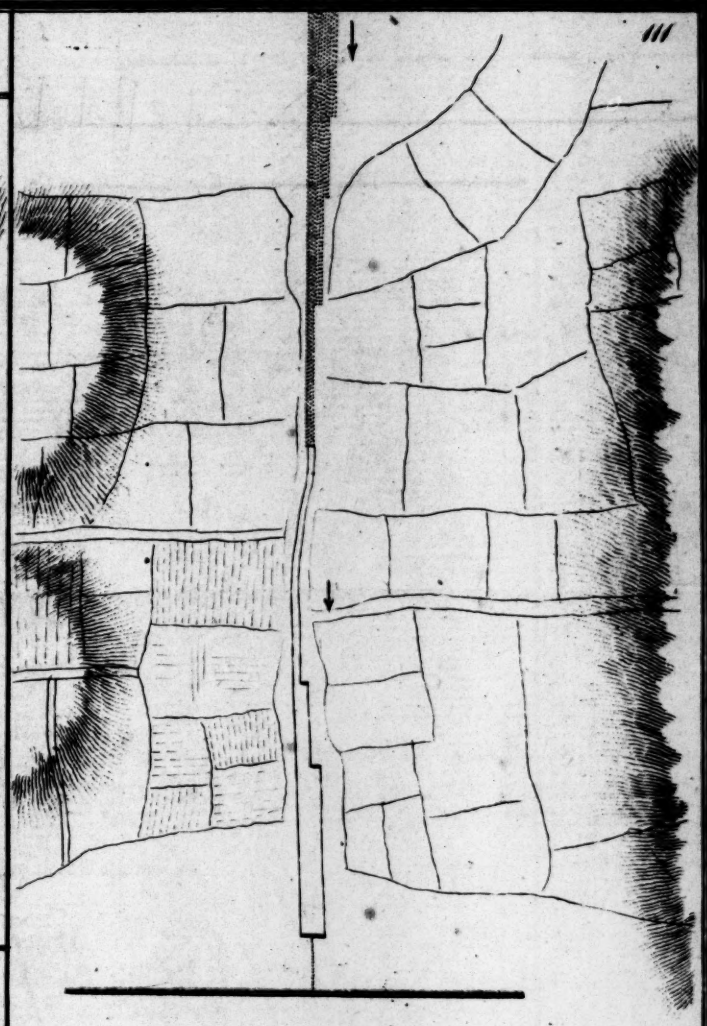


109

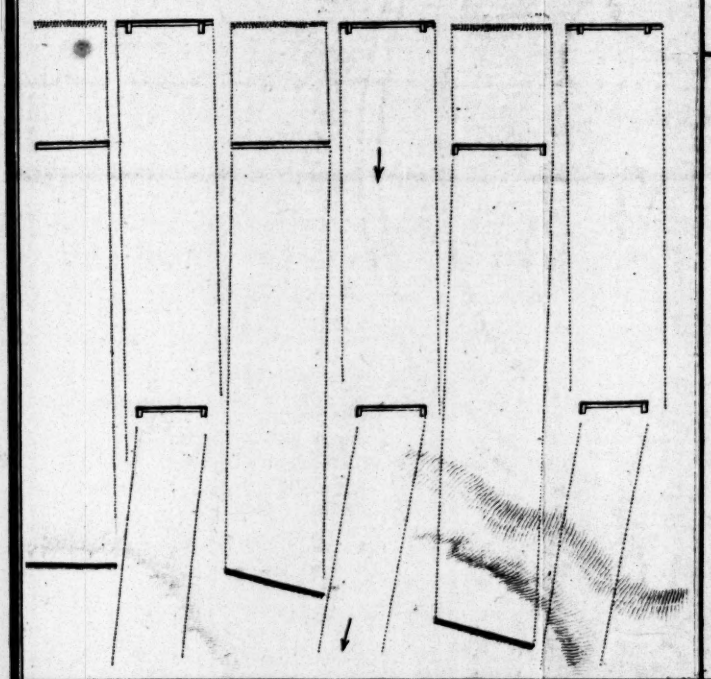
110



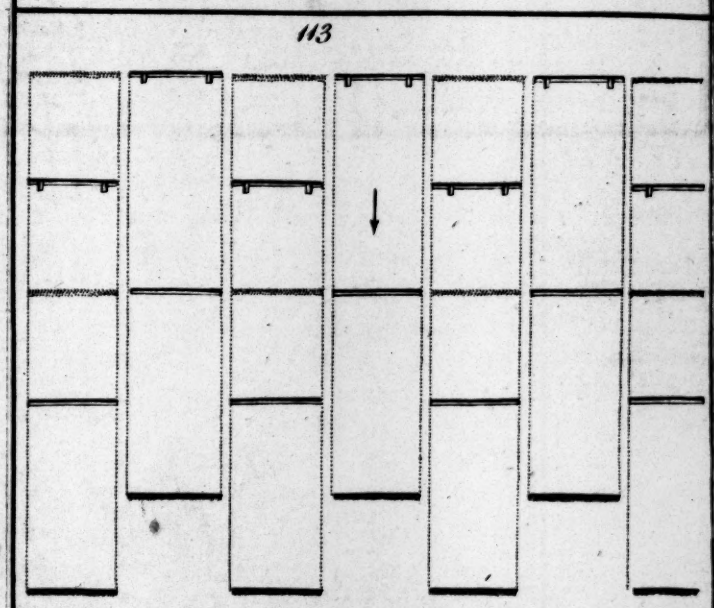
111



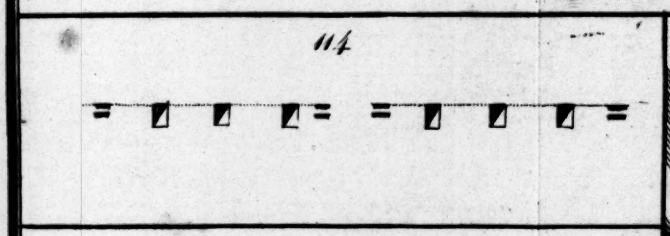
112



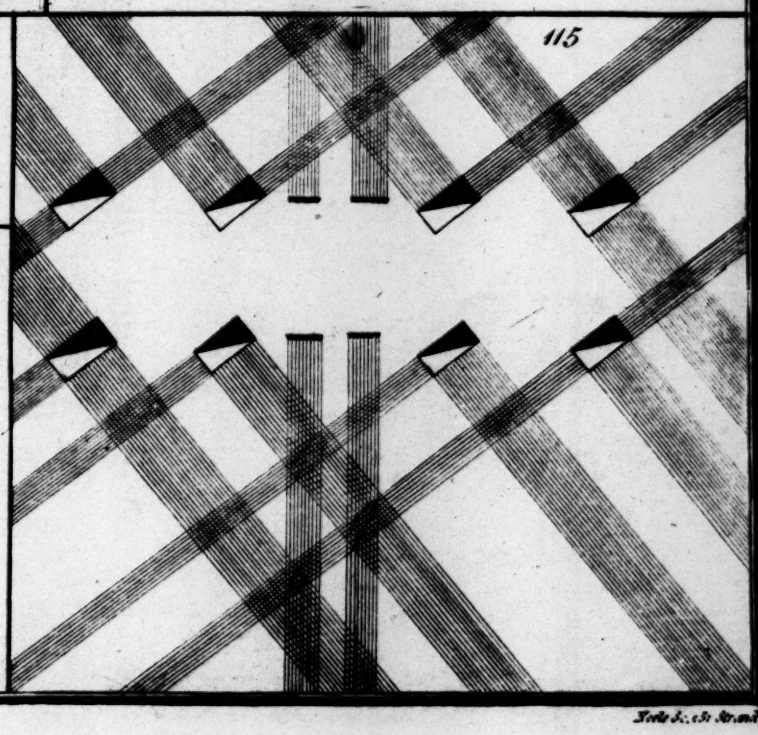
113



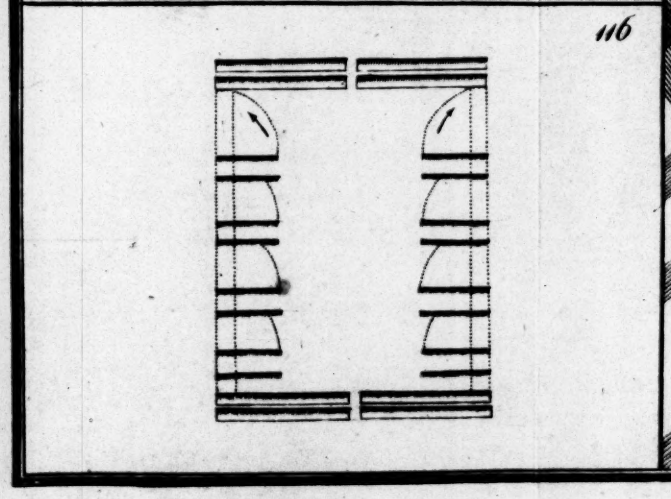
114



115

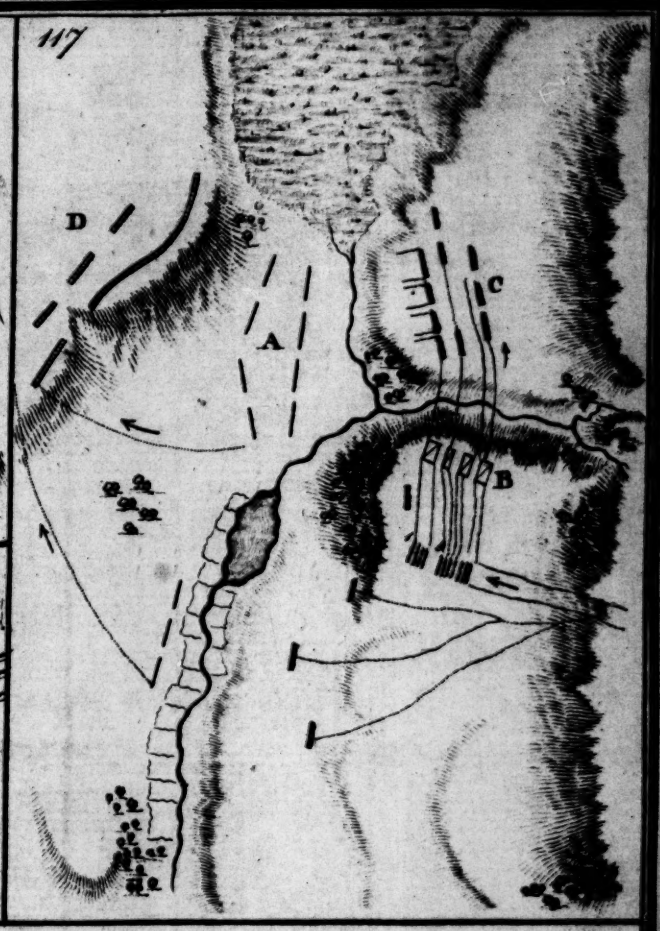


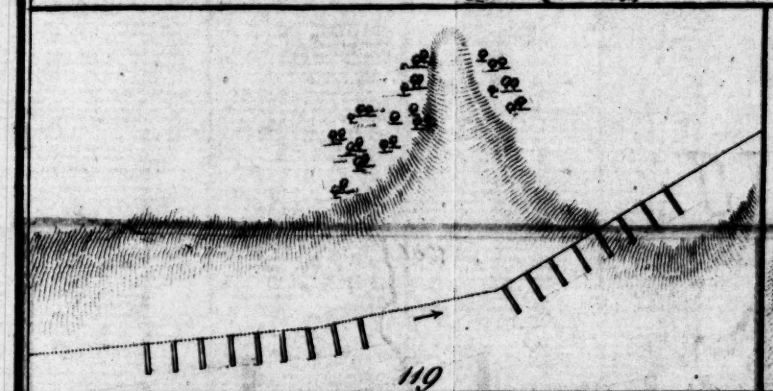
116

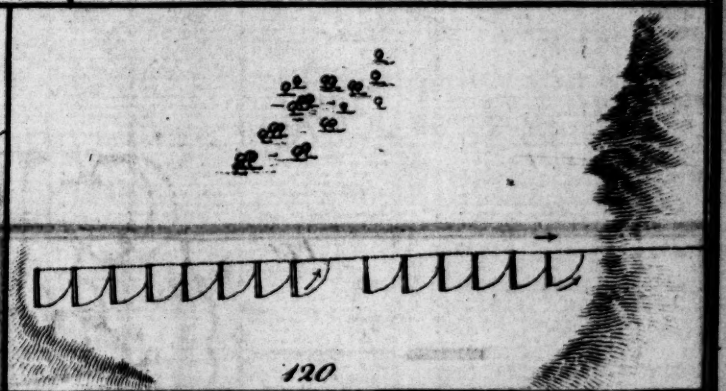


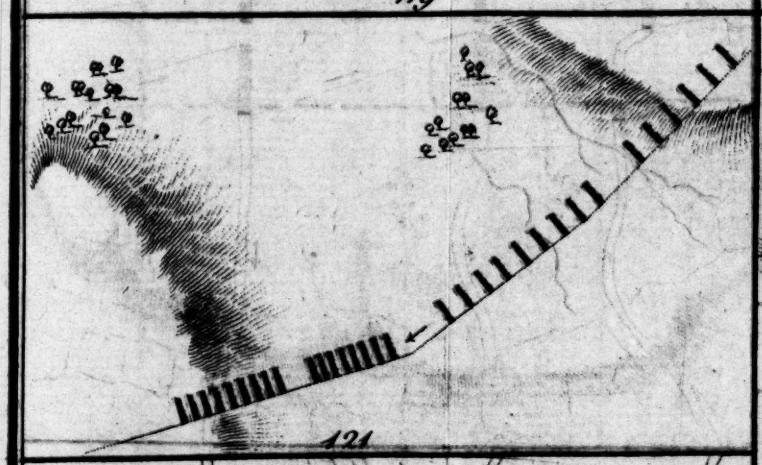
Tardieu Sc. rue St. André.

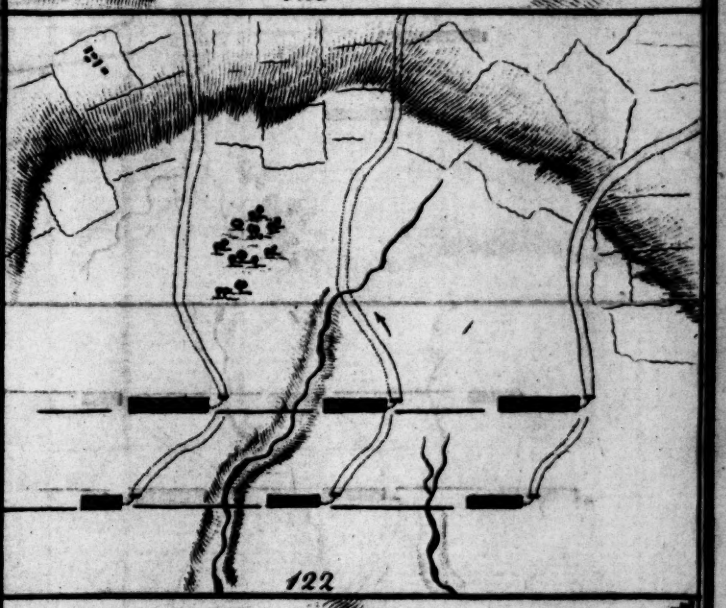


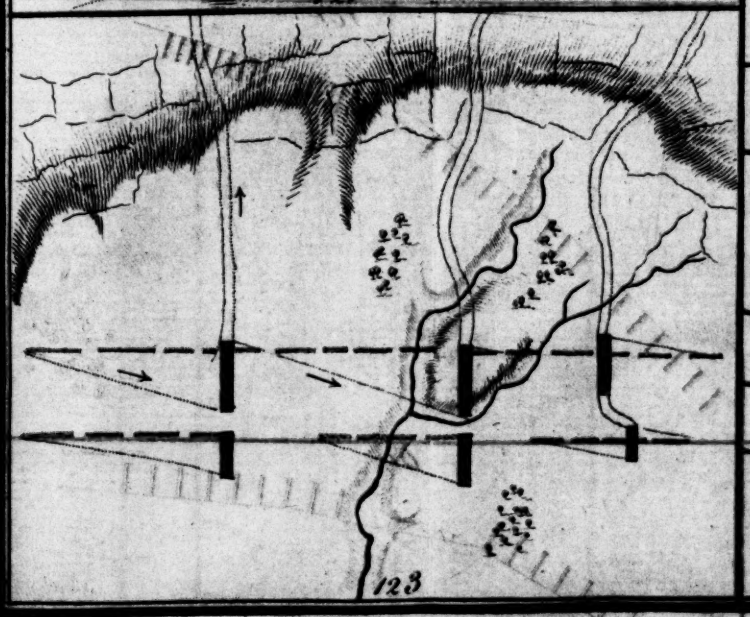


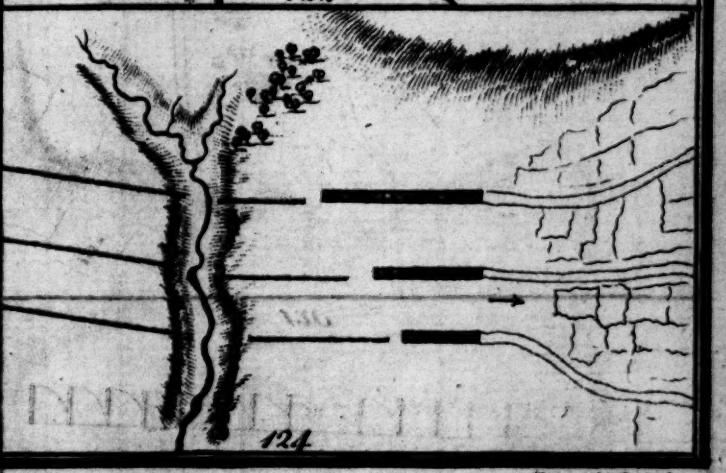




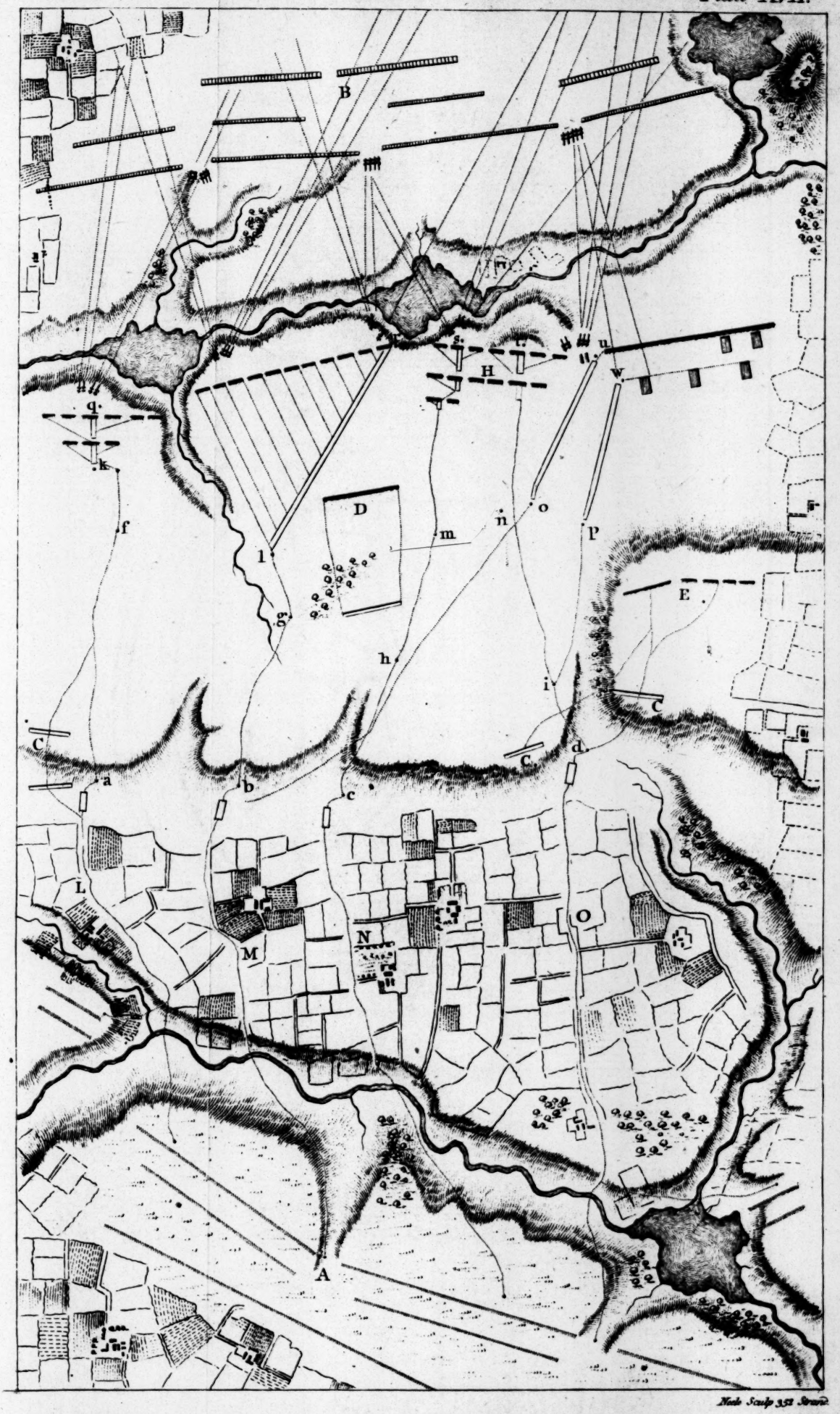








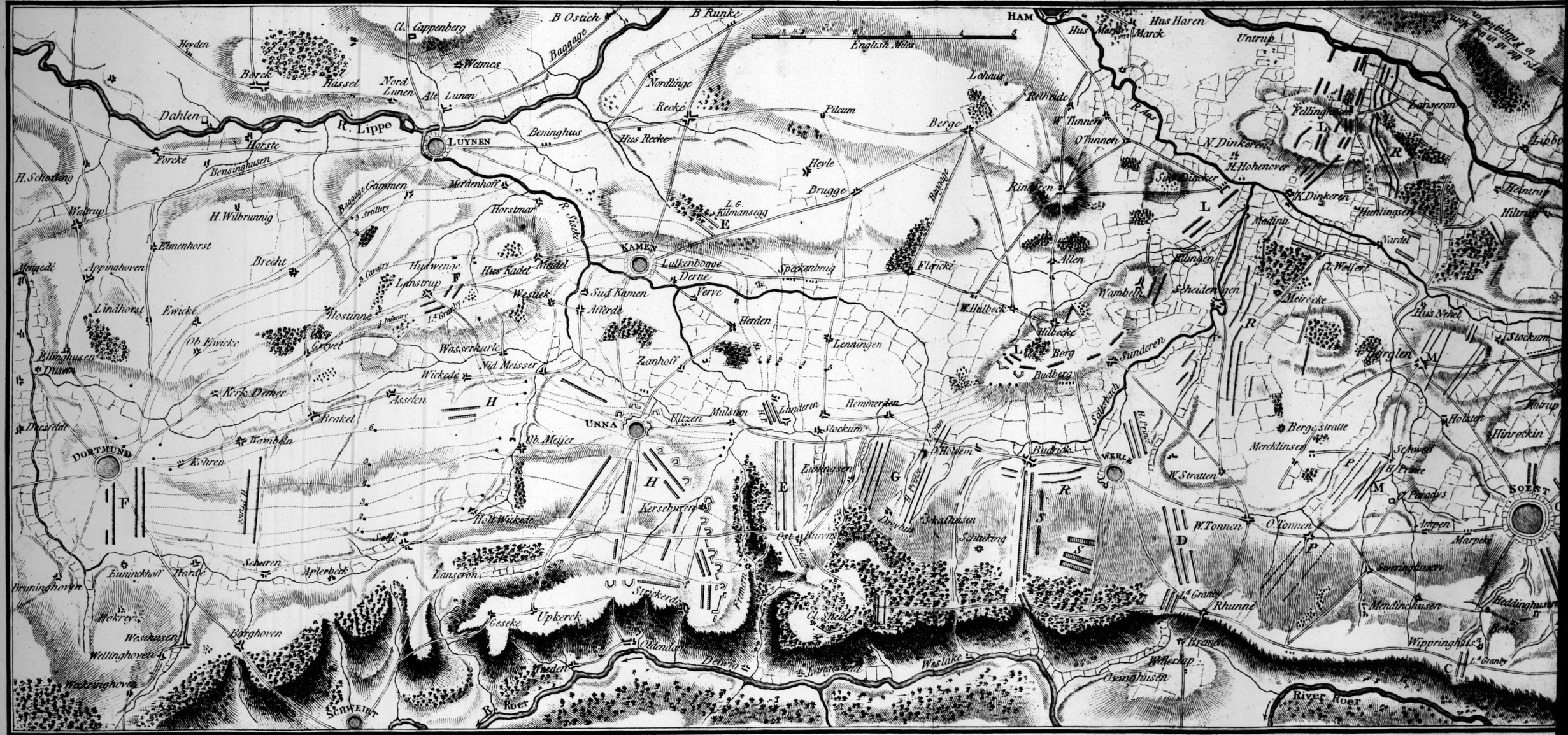
Neale sc Strand.



Neele Sculp 352 Strand

Sketch of the THEATRE of the Campaigns of the BRITISH ARMY in GERMANY.




Herden
Borck
Hassel
Cl. Cappenberg
B Ostich
Baggage
Wetmes
Nord Lunen
Alte Lunen
B Runke
English Miles
HAM
Hus Marck
Hus Haren
Marck
Untrup
Nordlinge
Lohaus
Reckè
Pilcum
Berge
Rothide
W. Tunnen
O. Tunnen
R. Aa
Fellinghausen
Lohseron
Dahlen
R. Lippe
LUYNEN
Beninghus
Hus Recker
N. Dinkeren
H. Hohenover
Horste
Forcke
Bensinghusen
H. Schorling
Heyle
Brugge
Rinkeren
Schl. Dinker
K. Dinkeren
Helntrup
Hiltrup
Hurnlingsen
Waltrup
H. Wilbrunnig
Merdenhoff
Horstmar
L. 6. Kilmansegg
E
Baggage
Artillery
Baggage Gammen
R. Sieper
Medina
Nardel
Elmenhorst
KAMEN
Lulkenbogge
Spackenbrug
Flerickè
Allen
Ellingen
Cl. Welfert
Brecht
Appinghoven
Hus Kadet
Meidel
Derne
Verve
Wambeln
Scheidingen
Meirecke
Lindhorst
Ewickè
Lahnstrup
Westiek
Sud Kamen
Alferde
W. Hilbeck
Hilbecke
Berg
Budberg
Hus Nehol
Stockum
Hostinne
Ob. Ewicke
Grevel
Herden
Lenningen
Zanhoff
Wasserkurle
Nid Meisser
Sunderen
Bergle
Billinghausen
Dusen
Wickdè
Kirk. Derner
Assden
H
Hemmerden
Mulsum
Lindoren
Stockum
Holtsten
Hinrockin
Braket
Dorstfelt
UNNA
Ob. Meijer
Berge, strutte
Mercklinsen
Schwert
Budrick
WERLE
O. Holtem
W. Strauten
SOEST
Kohren
Wambeln
DORTMUND
Hurnen
Eininghausen
Schad Hausen
Schlucking
W. Tonnen
O. Tonnen
Ampen
Marpeke
Scharingh
Scharen
Aplerbeck
Eminckhof
Hordle
Hanseron
Brüninghoven
Hokrey
Westhusen
Wellinghoven
Wickringhoven
Borghoven
Geseke
Upkerck
Stockerde
Cl. Scheidt
Rhunne
Mendinchusen
Heddinghusen
Wippringhaus
Bremen
Westlake
Wiederlap
Ovinghausen
SCHWEIBT
R. Roer
River Roer

Sketch

of the COUNTRY between the Rivers LIPPE and ROER

from near PADERBORN *to* DORTMUND

Shewing the Marches & Operations of the

BRITISH AND FRENCH ARMIES

before and after the

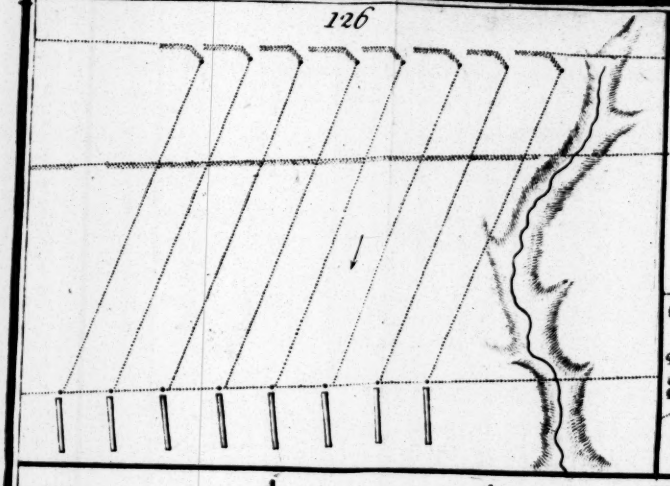
BATTLE OF FELINGHUSEN.

and from the Middle of June to the End of August 1761.

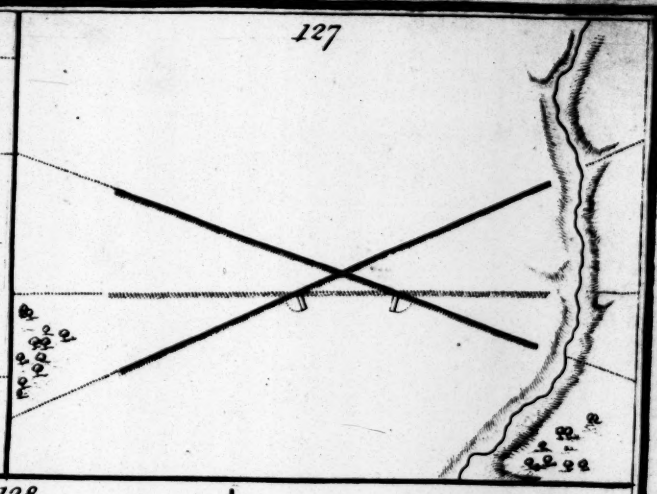
HAM
Hus Haren
Hus Mark
Marck
Untrup
Lohaus
Rothside
Berge
W. Tunnen
O. Tunnen
R. Aa
Fellinghusen
Lahseron
N. Dinkeren
H. Hohenover
Sud Dinker
Rinkeren
K. Dinkeren
Huntlingsen
Madina
Nardel
Allen
Ellingen
C. Wolfert
Meinecke
Wambeln
Scheidingen
W. Hilbeck
Hilbecke
Berg
Sunderen
Budberg
Seltbach
Lippborg
Helmtrup
Hiltrup
Hertzfeldt
Gen.l Sporken
Horestadt
L.d Granby
Eickelborn
Acslinghusen
Hus Nehel
Stockum
Bruckhusen
Oslinghusen
Weslar
Bettinghusen
Wibringhusen
Bockum
Toningsm.
Kairup
Holsten
Hinreckin
Berge Stratte
Mercklinsen
Schwert
H. Prince
W. Stratten
O. Holtem
Budrick
WERLE
Schad Hausen
Schluking
W. Tonnen
O. Tonnen
O. Paradys
Soest
Schwambrugg
Hoppe
Lohne
Horn
Mellinghusen
Stirpke
Berrenbrock
ERWITE
Smala
Fellinghusen
Borkenforde
Stormede
GESEKE
Eickelo
Boninghusen
Dellinghusen
Overhagen
Herste
Lippborg
Lippstadt
River Lippe
Lippe
Cappel
Lippe rode
L.G. Wangenheim
L.t Leesborn
Impen
Marpeke
Swartinghusen
Mendinchusen
Heddinghusen
Upmunden
Rhunne
Bremen
Wellerkap
Ovinghusen
Westake
Berlinghusen
Erlinghusen
Neu Geseke
Alt Geseke
Waltringhusen
Anrüchte
Wicke
Eyden
Ost Eyden
Berge
Eringerfeld
River Roer
D.D. Fecit

Neale sculp.t 352 Strand

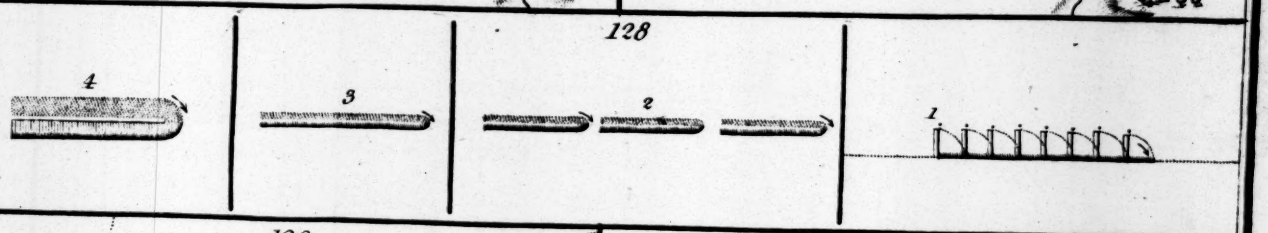
126



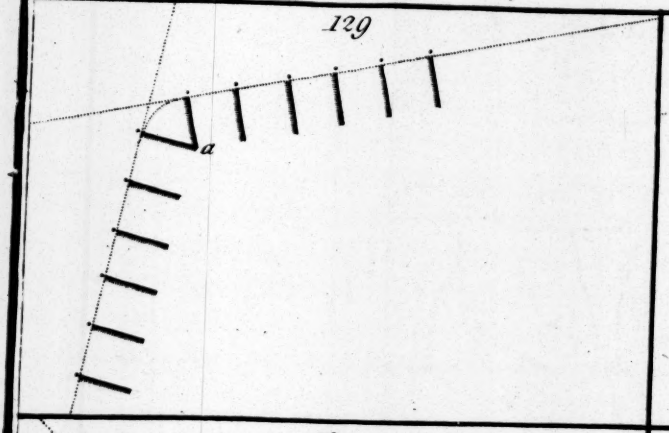
127



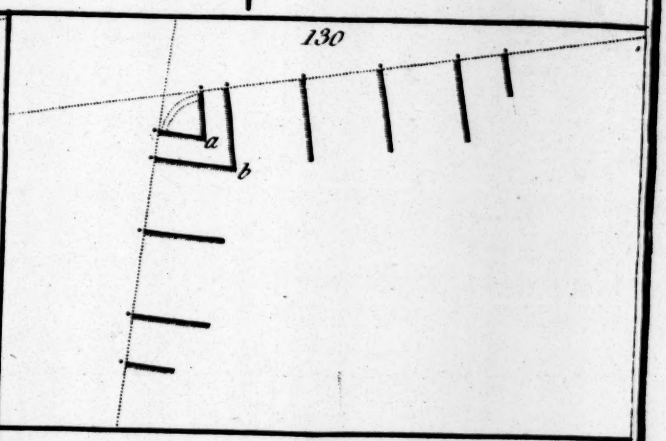
128



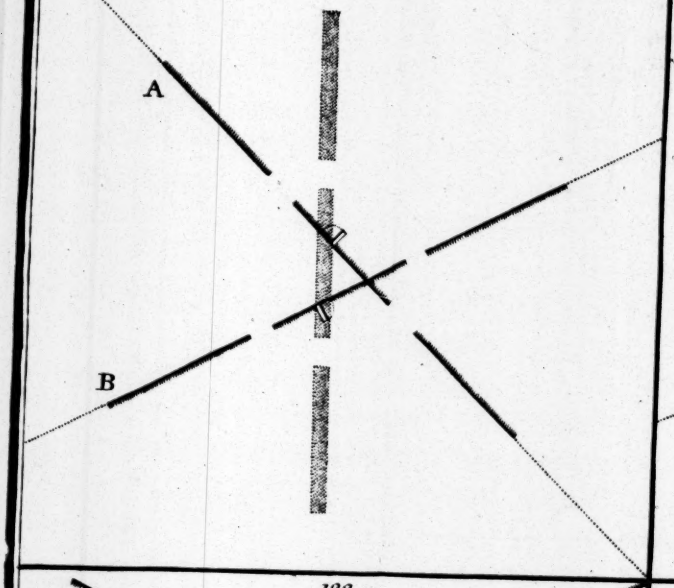
129



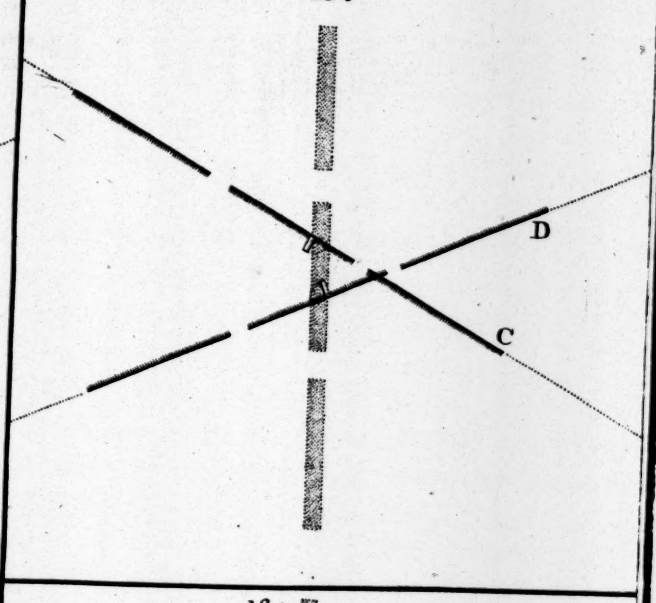
130



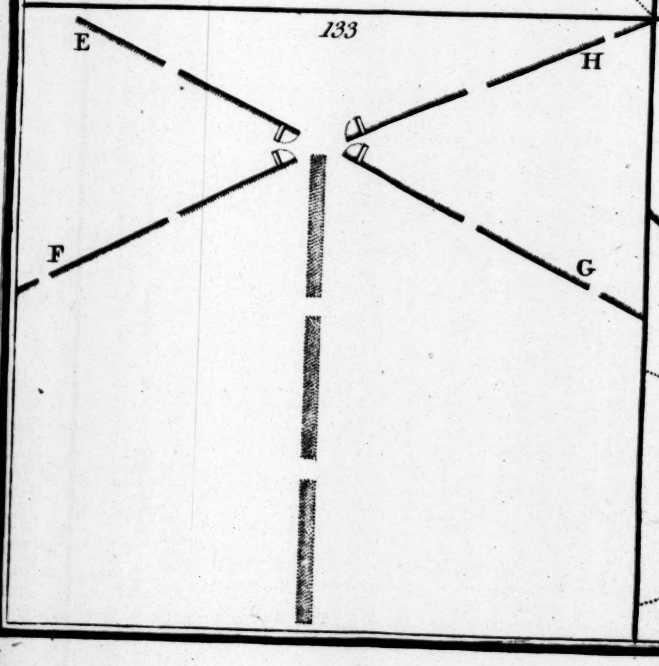
131



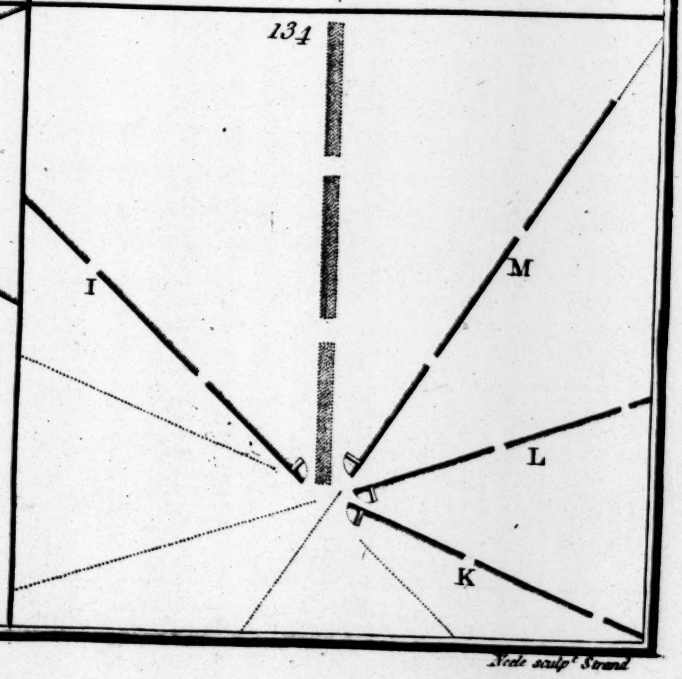
132



133

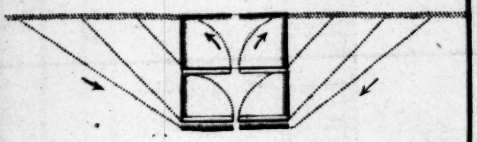


134



Neele sculp. Strand

135



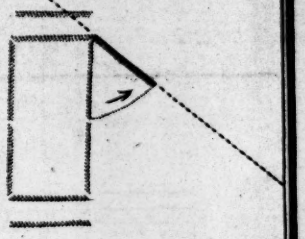
136



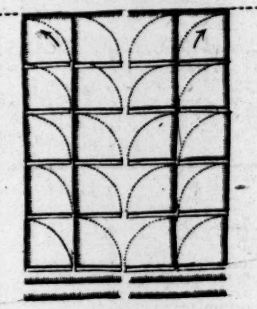
138



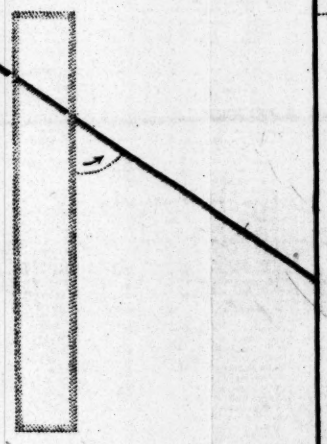
137



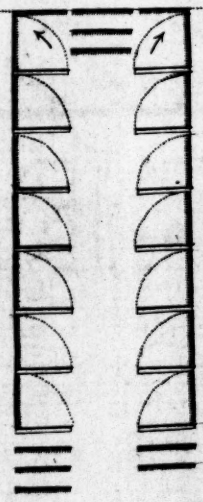
140



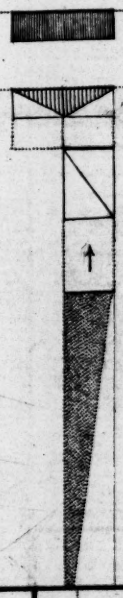
141



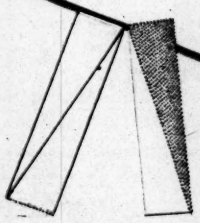
139



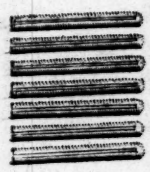
142



143



144



145



146



147



148

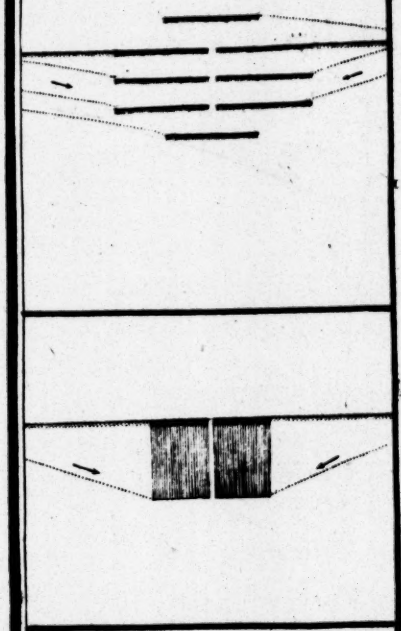


149

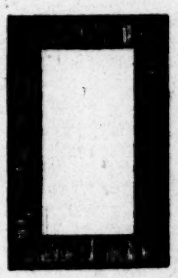


Nich. Sc. 356 Strand.

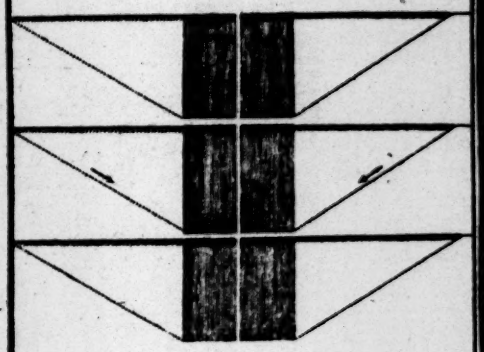
151



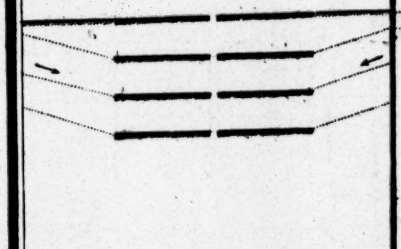
158



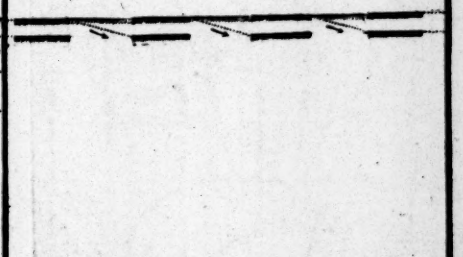
152



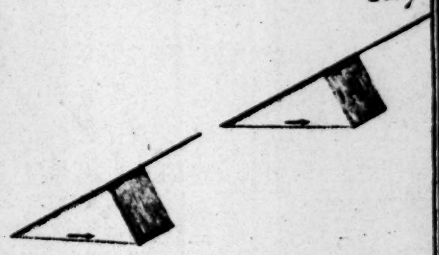
154



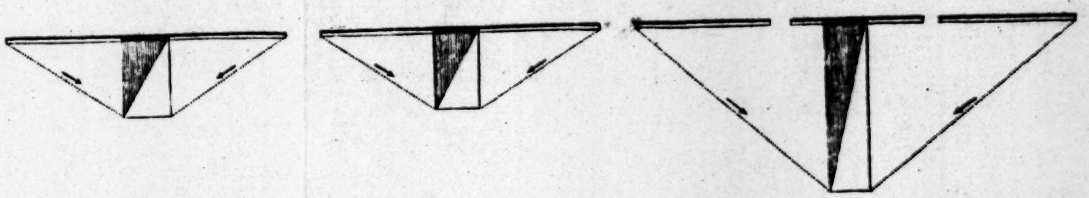
155



157



156

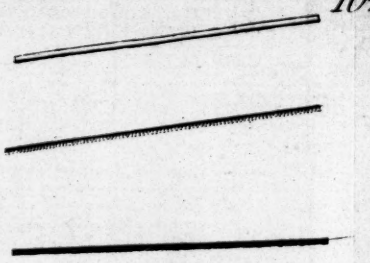


The Positions are in general Represented { The First by ..... Yellow ..... ▬▬▬
The intermediate Ones by { Blue ..... ▬▬▬ / Buff ..... ▬▬▬ / Green ..... ▬▬▬
The Last by ..... Red ..... ▬▬▬

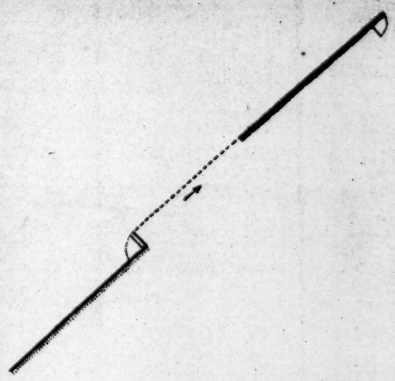
The dotted Lines and Arrows express the Direction of the Movements.

S. Neele Sculp.t 352. Strand.

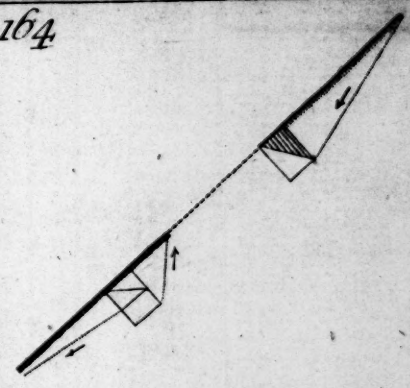
162



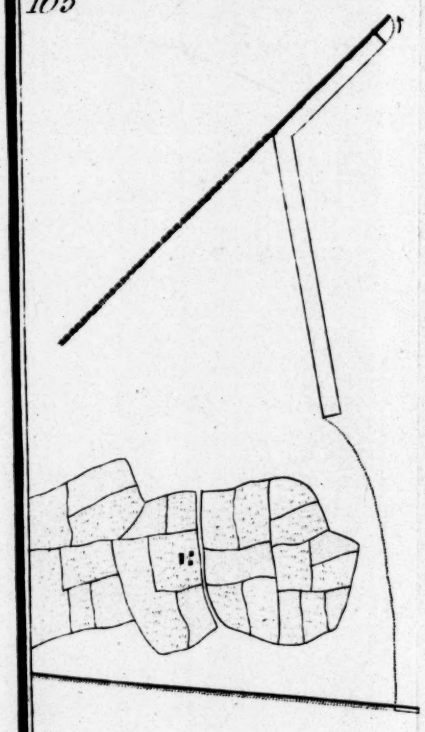
163



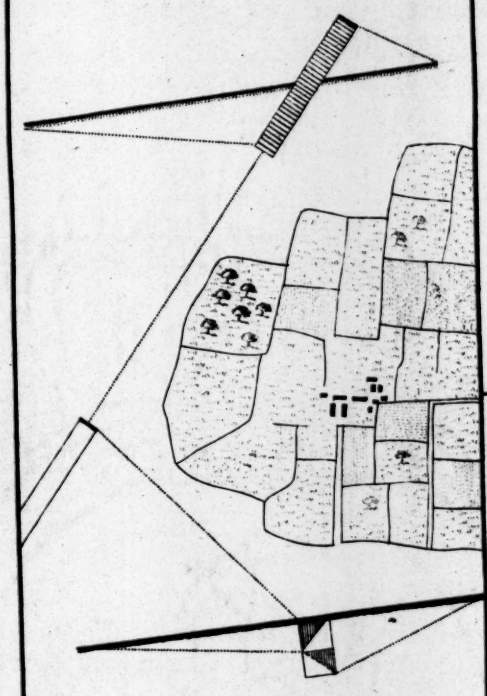
164



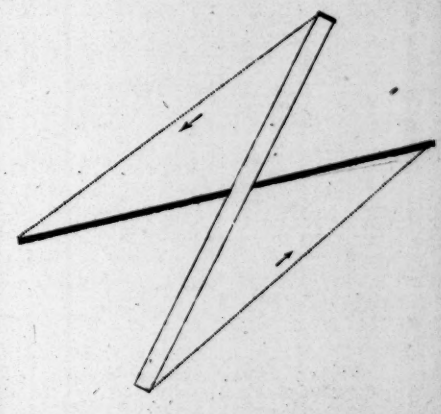
165



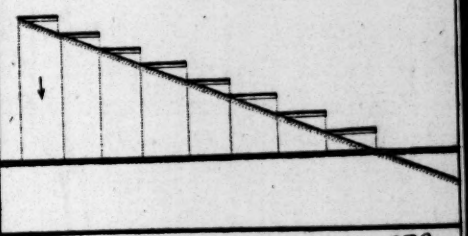
168



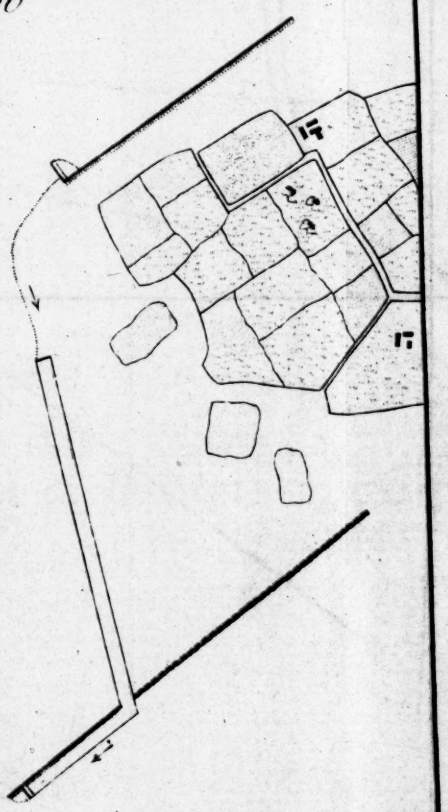
167



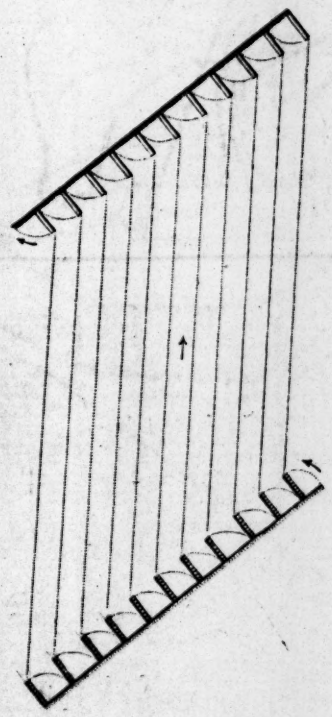
172



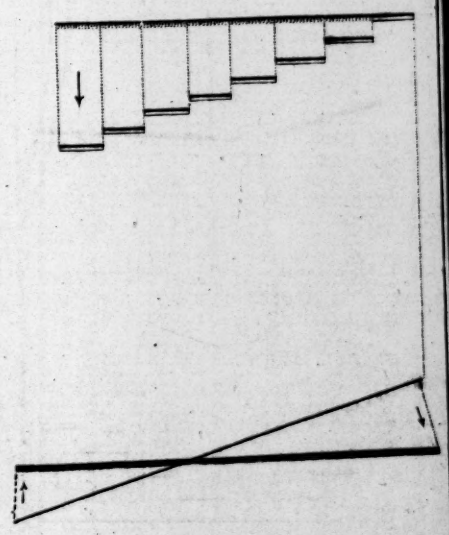
166



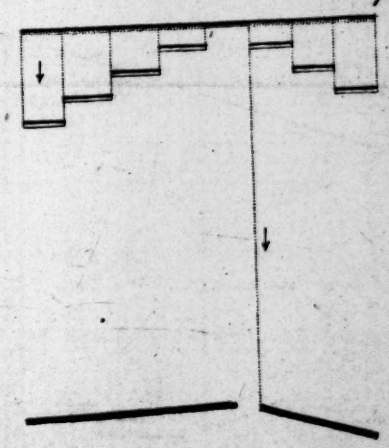
169



173



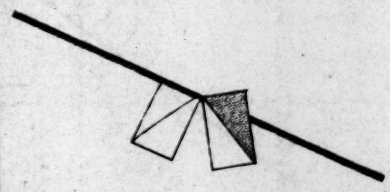
174



170



171



Neale sc. 352 Strand.

175

176

177

180

181

178

183

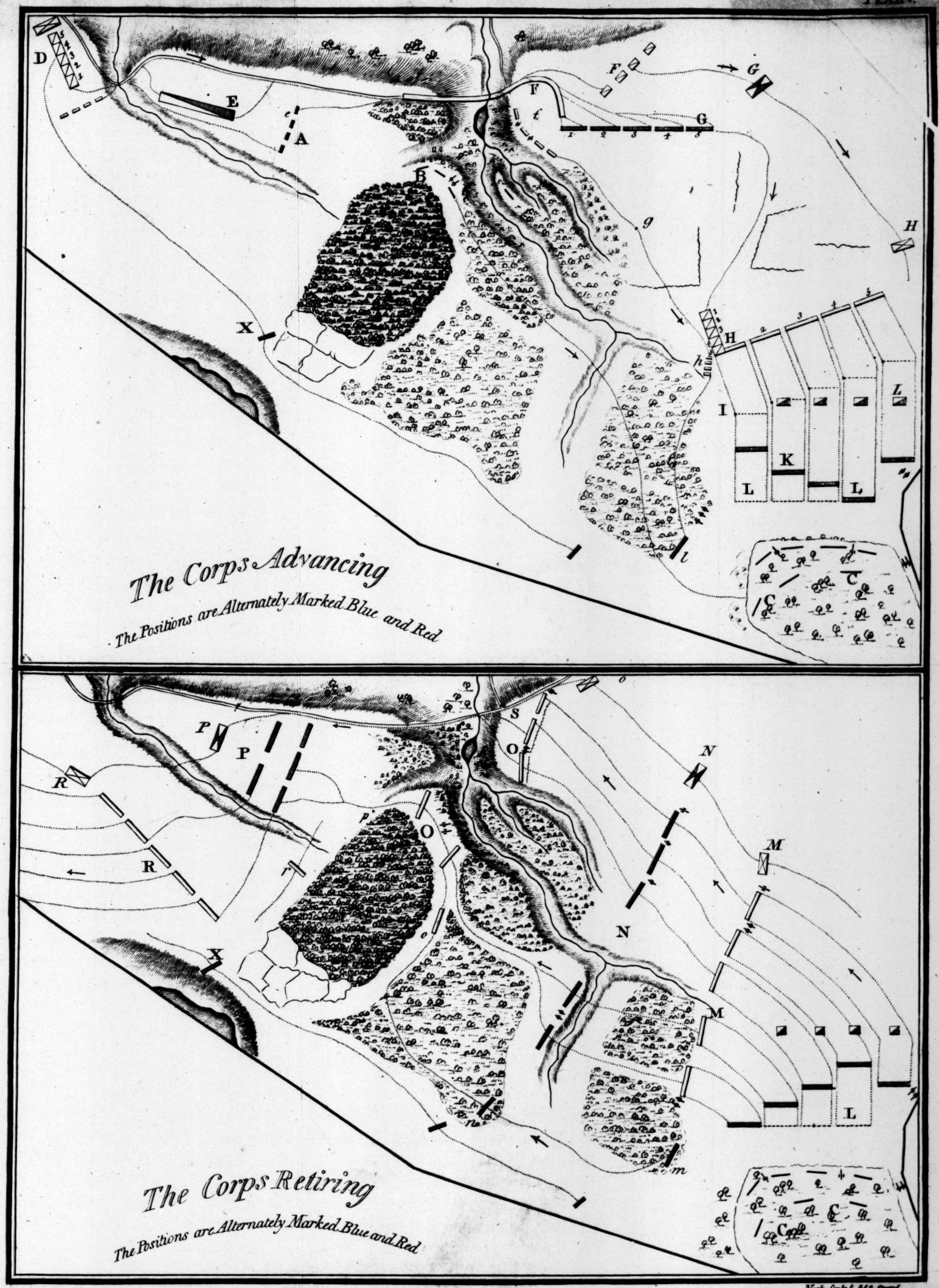
179

182

184

Enemy

S. Neele Sculpt. 302, Strand.



Neele Sculp.t 352 Strand.